English: Judges

Formatted for Translators

©2022 Wycliffe Associates

Released under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Bible Text: The English Unlocked Literal Bible (ULB)

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English Unlocked Literal Bible is based on the unfoldingWord® Literal Text, CC BY-SA 4.0. The original work of the unfoldingWord® Literal Text is available at [https://unfoldingword.bible/ult/](https://nam12.safelinks.protection.outlook.com/?url=https%3A%2F%2Funfoldingword.bible%2Fult%2F&data=02%7C01%7Cmarv_lucas%40wycliffeassociates.org%7Cab3b29dbe7fc44554aeb08d8080e8e70%7C7baa11086adb4be299cf00a4872ab1cf%7C0%7C0%7C637268205914531190&sdata=SW2KxVr%2BcxHGAgMpv602NzoYenorfHi9bOs2SNzVpR4%3D&reserved=0).

The ULB is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Notes: English ULB Translation Notes

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English ULB Translation Notes is based on the unfoldingWord translationNotes, under CC BY-SA 4.0. The original unfoldingWord work is available at <https://unfoldingword.bible/utn>.

The ULB Notes is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

To view a copy of the CC BY-SA 4.0 license visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/>

Below is a human-readable summary of (and not a substitute for) the license.

**You are free to:**

* **Share**— copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format.
* **Adapt**— remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

The licensor cannot revoke these freedoms as long as you follow the license terms.

**Under the following conditions:**

* **Attribution**— You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <https://BibleInEveryLanguage.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
* **ShareAlike**— If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.
* **No additional restrictions**— You may not apply legal terms or technological measures that legally restrict others from doing anything the license permits.

**Notices:**

You do not have to comply with the license for elements of the material in the public domain or where your use is permitted by an applicable exception or limitation.

No warranties are given. The license may not give you all of the permissions necessary for your intended use. For example, other rights such as publicity, privacy, or moral rights may limit how you use the material.



TOC \o "1-2" \h \z \uRight-click to update field (doing so will insert table of contents).

Page left intentionally blank

## Judges

### Chapter 1

**1** After the death of Joshua, the people of Israel asked Yahweh, saying, "Who first will attack the Canaanites for us, to fight against them?" **2** Yahweh said, "Judah will attack. See, I have given them control of this land." **3** The men of Judah said to men of Simeon, their brothers, "Come up with us into our territory that was assigned to us that together we may fight against the Canaanites. We in turn will go with you to the territory that was assigned to you." So the tribe of Simeon went with them. **4** The men of Judah attacked, and Yahweh gave them victory over the Canaanites and the Perizzites. They killed ten thousand of them at Bezek. **5** They found Adoni-Bezek at Bezek, and they fought against him and defeated the Canaanites and the Perizzites. **6** But Adoni-Bezek fled, and they pursued him and caught him, and they cut off his thumbs and his big toes. **7** Adoni-Bezek said, "Seventy kings, who had their thumbs and their big toes cut off, picked up food from under my table. As I have done, even so God has done to me." They brought him to Jerusalem, and he died there.

**8** The men of Judah fought against the city of Jerusalem and took it. They attacked it with the edge of the sword and they set the city on fire. **9** After that, the men of Judah went down to fight against the Canaanites who lived in the hill country, in the Negev, and the lowlands. **10** Judah advanced against the Canaanites who lived in Hebron (the name of Hebron was previously Kiriath Arba), and they defeated Sheshai, Ahiman, and Talmai.

**11** From there the men of Judah advanced against the inhabitants of Debir (the name of Debir was previously Kiriath Sepher). **12** Caleb said, "Whoever attacks Kiriath Sepher and takes it, I will give him Aksah, my daughter, to be his wife." **13** Othniel, son of Kenaz (Caleb's younger brother) captured Debir, so Caleb gave him Aksah, his daughter, to be his wife. **14** Soon Aksah came to Othniel, and she urged him to ask her father to give her a field. As she was getting off her donkey, Caleb asked her, "What can I do for you?" **15** She said to him, "Give me a blessing. Since you have given me the land of the Negev, also give me springs of water." So Caleb gave her the upper springs and the lower springs.

**16** The descendants of Moses' father-in-law the Kenite went up from the City of Palms with the people of Judah, into the wilderness of Judah, which is in the Negev, to live with the people of Judah near Arad. **17** The men of Judah went with the men of Simeon their brothers and they attacked the Canaanites who inhabited Zephath and they completely destroyed it. The name of the city was called Hormah. **18** The people of Judah also captured Gaza and the land around it, Ashkelon and the land around it, and Ekron and the land around it. **19** Yahweh was with the people of Judah and they took possession of the hill country, but they could not drive out the inhabitants of the plains because they had iron chariots. **20** Hebron was given to Caleb (like Moses had said), and he drove out from there the three sons of Anak. **21** But the people of Benjamin did not drive out the Jebusites who inhabited Jerusalem. So the Jebusites have lived with the people of Benjamin in Jerusalem to this day.

**22** The house of Joseph prepared to attack Bethel, and Yahweh was with them. **23** They sent out men to spy on Bethel (the city that was formerly named Luz). **24** The spies saw a man coming out of the city, and they said to him, "Show us, please, how to get into the city, and we will be kind to you." **25** He showed them a way into the city, and so they attacked the city with the edge of the sword, but they let the man and all his family get away. **26** Then the man went to the land of the Hittites and built a city and called it Luz, which is its name to this day.

**27** The people of Manasseh did not drive out the people living in the cities of Beth Shan and its villages, or Taanach and its villages, or those who lived in Dor and its villages, or those who lived in Ibleam and its villages, or those who lived in Megiddo and its villages, because the Canaanites were determined to live in that land. **28** When Israel became strong, they forced the Canaanites to serve them with hard labor, but they never drove them out completely.

**29** Ephraim did not drive out the Canaanites who lived in Gezer, so the Canaanites continued to live in Gezer among them.

**30** Zebulun did not drive out the people living in Kitron, or the people living in Nahalol, and so the Canaanites continued to live among them, but Zebulun forced the Canaanites to serve them with hard labor.

**31** Asher did not drive out the people living in Akko, or the people living in Sidon, or those living in Ahlab, Akzib, Helbah, Aphek, or Rehob. **32** So the tribe of Asher lived among the Canaanites (those who lived in the land), because they did not drive them out.

**33** The tribe of Naphtali did not drive out those who were living in Beth Shemesh, or those living in Beth Anath. So the tribe of Naphtali lived among the Canaanites (the people who were living in that land). However, the inhabitants of Beth Shemesh and Beth Anath were forced into hard labor for Naphthali.

**34** The Amorites forced the tribe of Dan out into the hill country, not allowing them to come down to the plain. **35** So the Amorites lived at Mount Heres, in Aijalon, and in Shaalbim, but the military might of the house of Joseph conquered them, and they were forced to serve them with hard labor. **36** The border of the Amorites ran from the hill of Akrabbim at Sela up into the hill country.

# Judges 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

#### "After the death of Joshua"

This statement creates a seamless transition from the book of Joshua.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Finishing the conquest of the Promised Land

Israel fought to clear the land of the Canaanites, but they also made treaties with other peoples and made some of them do hard labor. This was against God's instruction to completely remove the Canaanite people from the land.

#### Judges 01

##### Connecting Statement:

The book of Judges continues the story about Joshua and is also the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

##### will attack the Canaanites for us

The word "us" refers to the people of Israel, but not to Yahweh.

#### Judges 02

##### Judah will attack

Here "Judah" represents the men of the tribe of Judah. Yahweh is commanding these men to attack first. Alternate translation: "The men of Judah must attack first"

##### See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

##### this land

This refers to the land where the Canaanites lived. Alternate translation: "the land of the Canaanites"

#### Judges 03

##### their brothers

"their fellow Israelites" or "their relatives"

##### Come up with us

The people of the tribes of Judah and Simeon were camped with the rest of the Israelite people in the valley of the Jordan River. The land given to Judah was in the hills above the valley. Some languages do not usually indicate whether people were going up or down. Alternate translation: "Come with us" or "Go with us"

##### that was assigned to us ... that was assigned to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that Yahweh assigned to us ... that Yahweh assigned to you"

##### We in turn will go with you

"In the same way, we will go with you"

#### Judges 04

##### The men of Judah attacked

It is implied that the men of Simeon attacked with the men of Judah.

##### They killed ten thousand

"They killed about 10,000" or "They killed a large number"

##### of them

"soldiers of the Canaanites and Perizzites" or "enemies"

##### Bezek

This is an area in the mountains of Canaan.

#### Judges 05

##### Adoni-Bezek

This man was the leader of the army of the Canaanites and the Perizzites.

##### they fought against him

Here "him" actually refers to Adoni-Bezek and his army. Alternate translation: "they fought against him and his army"

#### Judges 06

##### pursued him

"chased him"

#### Judges 07

##### Seventy kings

"70 kings"

##### who had their thumbs and their big toes cut off

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whose thumbs and big toes I told my men to cut off" or "whose thumbs and big toes we cut off"

##### picked up food from under my table

The phrase "picked up" is a metonym for eating. Forcing these kings to eat food that fell from Adoni-Bezek's table represents all the ways that he humiliated them. Alternate translation: "ate scraps of food from under my table"

#### Judges 08

##### the city of Jerusalem and took it

Here "city" represents the people. Alternate translation: "the people who lived in Jerusalem and defeated them"

##### They attacked it

Here "it" refers to the city which represents the people of the city. Alternate translation: "They attacked the people of the city"

##### with the edge of the sword

"with the point of the sword." Here "sword" represents the swords and other weapons that the soldiers used in battle. Alternate translation: "with their swords" or "with their weapons"

#### Judges 09

##### the men of Judah went down to fight

It was common to use the word "down" when it refers to traveling from Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "the men of Judah went to fight"

##### in the Negev

"in the southern Judean wilderness"

##### lowlands

hills at the base of a mountain or mountain range

#### Judges 10

##### the name of Hebron was previously Kiriath Arba

This is background information. Some people who first read this book had probably heard of Kiriath Arba but did not know that it was the same as the city that they called Hebron.

##### Sheshai, Ahiman, and Talmai

These are the names of three Canaanite leaders of Hebron. Each leader represents his army. Alternate translation: "Sheshai, Ahiman, Talmai, and their armies"

#### Judges 11

##### the name of Debir was previously Kiriath Sepher

The author probably wrote this because his readers knew the city as Debir. But at the time Israel attacked it, it was called Kiriath Sepher. Alternate translation: "which used to be called Kiriath Sepher"

##### was previously

"was in times past" or "was at an earlier time"

#### Judges 12

##### Whoever attacks Kiriath Sepher and takes it

Here "Kiriath Sepher" represents the people. Alternate translation: "Whoever attacks and defeats the people of Kiriath Sepher and takes their city"

##### Aksah

This is the name of Caleb's daughter.

#### Judges 13

##### Othniel, son of Kenaz

These are names of men.

#### Judges 14

##### she urged him

"Aksah urged Othniel"

#### Judges 15

##### Give me a blessing

"Do a favor for me" or "Do this for me"

##### Since you have given me the land of the Negev

Caleb gave Aksah in marriage to Othniel, so she lived with Othniel in the city that he had captured in the Negev. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Since you have given me in marriage to live in the Negev"

##### Since you have given me the land

This implies that Caleb did give her the field when she asked him for it (verse 14). She is now asking for springs of water in addition to that field.

#### Judges 16

##### of Moses' father-in-law

"of the father of Moses' wife"

##### father-in-law the Kenite went up

"father-in-law, who was one of the Ken people, went up"

##### went up from the City of Palms ... into the wilderness

"left the City of Palms ... and went into the wilderness"

##### City of Palms

This is another name for the city of Jericho.

##### Arad

This is the name of a city in Canaan.

#### Judges 17

##### the men of Simeon their brothers

Here "brothers" means relatives who were in another tribe of Israel.

##### Zephath

This is the name of a city in Canaan.

##### The name of the city was called Hormah

After the Israelites destroyed Zephath, they changed its name to "Hormah." The name "Hormah" means "complete destruction."

#### Judges 18

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 19

##### Yahweh was with the people of Judah

Here "was with" means that Yahweh helped the people of Judah.

##### plains

a very large area of level, treeless ground

#### Judges 20

##### Hebron was given to Caleb (like Moses had said)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses had given Hebron to Caleb"

##### three sons of Anak

The leaders of the people groups are used to refer to the entire group. Alternate translation: "three sons of Anak and their people"

##### Anak

This is the name of a man. Anak and his descendants were famous for being very tall.

#### Judges 21

##### to this day

"until now." This refers to the time the book of Judges was written.

#### Judges 22

##### The house of Joseph

Here "house" represents descendants. Manasseh and Ephraim were sons of Joseph, and the "house of Joseph" can refer to the descendants of Manasseh and Ephraim. Alternate translation: "The descendants of Manasseh and Ephraim" or "The men of the tribes of Manasseh and Ephraim"

##### to attack Bethel

Here "Bethel" represents the people who live in Bethel.

#### Judges 23

##### spy

to get information secretly

##### the city that was formerly named Luz

This is background information. Some people who first read this book had probably heard of Luz but did not know that it was the same as the city that they called Bethel.

#### Judges 24

##### spies

people who get information secretly

#### Judges 25

##### they attacked the city

Here "city" represents the people. Alternate translation: "they attacked the people of the city"

##### with the edge of the sword

"with the point of the sword." Here "sword" represents the swords and other weapons that the soldiers used in battle. Alternate translation: "with their swords" or "with their weapons"

##### get away

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "escape"

#### Judges 26

##### Luz

This new town started in the land of the Hittites was named after the town of Luz, near Bethel, that the man had left.

##### which is its name to this day

"which is still its name." Here "to this day" refers to the time when the book of Judges was written.

#### Judges 27

##### Beth Shan ... Taanach ... Dor ... Ibleam ... Megiddo

These are names of cities.

##### because the Canaanites were determined to live in that land

To "determine" is to firmly decide something. Alternate translation: "because the Canaanites firmly decided not to leave that land"

#### Judges 28

##### When Israel became strong

Here "Israel" represents the people. Alternate translation: "When the people of Israel became stronger"

##### they forced the Canaanites to serve them with hard labor

"they forced the Canaanites to do hard work for them"

#### Judges 29

##### Ephraim did not

Here "Ephraim" the men or the soldiers of the tribe of Ephraim.

##### Gezer

The name of one of the cities in the Ephraim area.

#### Judges 30

##### Zebulun did not drive out

Here "Zebulun" represents the men or the soldiers of the tribe of Zebulun.

##### Kitron ... Nahalol

These are names of cities in the land of Canaan.

##### but Zebulun forced

Here "Zebulun" represents the people of the tribe of Zebulun.

##### hard labor

"difficult labor"

#### Judges 31

##### Asher did not drive

Here "Asher" represents the men or the soldiers of the tribe of Asher.

##### Akko ... Sidon ... Ahlab, Akzib, Helbah, Aphek ... Rehob

These are names of cities in the land of Canaan.

#### Judges 32

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 33

##### Beth Shemesh ... Beth Anath

These are names of cities.

##### the inhabitants of Beth Shemesh and Beth Anath were forced into hard labor for Naphthali

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people of Naphtali forced the people of Beth Shemesh and Beth Anath to work for them as slaves"

#### Judges 34

##### not allowing them to come down

"stopping them from coming down"

##### plain

a very large area of flat land without trees

#### Judges 35

##### Mount Heres

This is the name of a large hill on which the city of Aijalon was built.

##### Aijalon ... Shaalbim

These are names of cities.

##### the military might of the house of Joseph conquered them

"the tribes of people who descended from Joseph were able to conquer them because of their powerful army"

##### house of Joseph

Here "house" represents descendants. Manasseh and Ephraim were sons of Joseph, and the "house of Joseph" can refer to the descendants of Manasseh and Ephraim. Alternate translation: "the descendants of Manasseh and Ephraim" or "the men of the tribes of Manasseh and Ephraim"

#### Judges 36

##### the hill of Akrabbim

This was a pass southwest of the Dead Sea. It is also called the "Scorpion Pass."

##### Sela

This is the name of a city.

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Judges 1:1

##### Who would lead the people of Israel when they went up against the Canaanites to fight against them?

Judah would lead the people of Israel against the Canaanites to fight against them.

#### Judges 1:4

##### Against whom did the men of Judah fight?

The men of Judah fought against Adoni Bezek.

#### Judges 1:5

##### Against whom did the men of Judah fight?

The men of Judah fought against Adoni Bezek.

#### Judges 1:7

##### Who gathered their food from under Adoni Bezek's table?

Seventy kings, who had their thumbs and their big toes cut off, gathered their food from under Adoni Bezek's table.

#### Judges 1:10

##### What was the previous name of Hebron?

The name of Hebron was previously Kiriath Arba.

#### Judges 1:12

##### What did Caleb give to Othniel?

Caleb gave Achsah, his daughter, to be Othniel's wife.

#### Judges 1:13

##### What did Caleb give to Othniel?

Caleb gave Achsah, his daughter, to be Othniel's wife.

#### Judges 1:15

##### Since Achsah was in Negev, what did she want her father to give her?

Since Achsah was in Negev, she wanted him to give her springs of water.

#### Judges 1:16

##### Where is the wilderness of Judah?

The wilderness of Judah is in the Negev.

#### Judges 1:19

##### Why could the people of Judah not drive out the inhabitants of the plains?

They could not drive out the inhabitants of the plains because the inhabitants had iron chariots.

#### Judges 1:21

##### Why did the Jebusites live with the people of Benjamin in Jerusalem?

Because the people of Benjamin did not drive out the Jebusites who inhabited Jerusalem, the Jebusites lived with the people of Benjamin in Jerusalem.

#### Judges 1:25

##### What happened to the man who showed the spies from the house of Joseph how to get into Bethel?

The spies let the man and his family get away and the man went to the land of the Hittites and built a city and called it Luz.

#### Judges 1:26

##### What happened to the man who showed the spies from the house of Joseph how to get into Bethel?

The spies let the man and his family get away and the man went to the land of the Hittites and built a city and called it Luz.

#### Judges 1:28

##### When Israel became strong, what did they do to the Canaanites?

When Israel became strong, they forced the Canaanites to serve them with hard labor, but they never drove them out completely.

#### Judges 1:32

##### Why did the tribe of Asher live among the Canaanites?

The tribe of Asher lived among the Canaanites, because Asher did not drive them out.

#### Judges 1:34

##### Who conquered the Amorites at Mount Heres, in Aijalon, and in Shaalbim?

The house of Joseph conquered them.

#### Judges 1:35

##### Who conquered the Amorites at Mount Heres, in Aijalon, and in Shaalbim?

The house of Joseph conquered them.

### Chapter 2

**1** The angel of Yahweh went up from Gilgal to Bokim, and said, "I brought you up from Egypt, and have brought you to the land I swore to give to your fathers. I said, 'I will never break my covenant with you. **2** You must make no covenant with those who live in this land. You must break down their altars.' But you have not listened to my voice. What is this that you have done? **3** So now I say, 'I will not drive the Canaanites out before you, but they will become thorns in your sides, and their gods will become a trap for you.'" **4** When the angel of Yahweh spoke these words to all the people of Israel, the people shouted and wept. **5** They called the name of that place Bokim. There they offered sacrifices to Yahweh.

**6** Now when Joshua had sent the people on their way, the people of Israel went, each to his own property, to take ownership of the land. **7** The people served Yahweh during the lifetime of Joshua and of the elders who outlived him, those who had seen all of Yahweh's great deeds he had done for Israel. **8** Joshua son of Nun the servant of Yahweh, died at the age of 110 years old. **9** They buried him within the border of his property in Timnath Heres, in the hill country of Ephraim, north of Mount Gaash. **10** All that generation was also gathered to their fathers. Another generation grew up after them who did not know Yahweh or the deeds he had done for Israel.

**11** The people of Israel did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh and they served the Baals. **12** They broke away from Yahweh, the God of their fathers, who had brought them out of the land of Egypt. They went after other gods, the very gods of the peoples who were around them, and they bowed down to them. They provoked Yahweh to anger because **13** they broke away from Yahweh and worshiped Baal and the Ashtoreths. **14** The anger of Yahweh burned against Israel, and he gave them to the raiders who stole their possessions from them. He sold them as slaves who were held by the strength of their enemies around them, so they could no longer defend themselves against their enemies. **15** Wherever Israel went out to fight, Yahweh's hand was against them to defeat them, just as he had sworn to them and they were in terrible distress.

**16** Then Yahweh raised up judges, who saved them out of the hand of those who were stealing their possessions. **17** Yet they would not listen to their judges. They were unfaithful to Yahweh and gave themselves like prostitutes to other gods and worshiped them. They soon turned aside from the way their fathers had lived—those who had obeyed the commandments of Yahweh—but they themselves did not do so. **18** When Yahweh raised up judges for them, Yahweh helped the judges and delivered them from the hand of their enemies all the days the judge lived. Yahweh had pity on them as they groaned because of those who oppressed them and afflicted them. **19** But when the judge died, they would turn away and do things that were even more corrupt than their fathers had done. They would go after other gods to serve them and worship them. They refused to give up any of their evil deeds or their stubborn ways. **20** The anger of Yahweh burned against Israel; he said, "Because this nation has broken the terms of my covenant that I had set in place for their fathers—because they have not listened to my voice— **21** I will not, from now on, drive out from before them any of the nations that Joshua left when he died. **22** I will do this so that I may test Israel, whether or not they will keep the way of Yahweh and walk in it, as their fathers kept it." **23** That is why Yahweh left those nations and did not drive them out quickly and give them into the hand of Joshua.

# Judges 2 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Yahweh tests Israel

Yahweh said, "Because this nation has broken the terms of my covenant." Completely removing the Canaanites from the land was a test from Yahweh. While Yahweh displayed covenant faithfulness, Israel did not. (See: test and covenantfaith)

#### Judges 01

##### angel of Yahweh

Possible meaning are 1) "angel who represents Yahweh" or 2) "messenger who serves Yahweh" or 3) it may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself were talking.

##### went up from Gilgal to Bokim

"left Gilgal and went to Bokim"

##### Bokim

This is what the Israelites named this place in 2:5 after the angel rebukes the people. "Bokim" means "crying."

##### and said

It is understood that the angel of Yahweh is speaking to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "and said to the people of Israel"

##### brought you up from Egypt

"led you from Egypt"

##### your fathers

"your ancestors" or "your forefathers"

##### break my covenant with you

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "fail to do what I said I would do for you"

#### Judges 02

##### you have not listened to my voice

Here "voice" represents what Yahweh said. Alternate translation: "you have not obeyed my commands"

##### What is this that you have done?

This question is asked to cause the people of Israel to realize they have disobeyed Yahweh and will suffer because of it. Alternate translation: "You have done a terrible thing."

#### Judges 03

##### General Information:

The angel of Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel.

##### So now I say, 'I will not ... trap for you.'

This has a quotation within a quotation. This direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "So now I tell you that I will not ... trap for you.'"

##### become thorns in your sides

The Canaanites troubling the Israelites is spoken of as if the Canaanites would be thorns in the side of the Israelites. Alternate translation: "cause you trouble"

##### thorns

sharp pieces of wood up to 7 centimeters long that stick out from some plants

##### their gods will become a trap for you

The Israelites worshiping the Canaanite gods is spoken of as if the false gods were a hunter's trap that catches an animal and causes it harm.

#### Judges 04

##### shouted and wept

"cried many tears"

#### Judges 05

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 06

##### Now when Joshua

Here "Now" is used to mark a stop in the main story. Here the narrator begins a summary that explains how the generations of Israelites after Joshua sinned and worshiped false gods so that Yahweh punished them, but then he would send judges to rescue them. This summary ends in 2:23.

##### when Joshua ... of the land

The events of 1:1-2:5 happened after Joshua died. This is recounting events that happened at the end of the book of Joshua.

##### to his own property

This statement can be made clearer. Alternate translation: "to the place Yahweh had given him"

#### Judges 07

##### Connecting Statement:

The background information that begins with the words "Now when Joshua" in verse 6 continues.

##### during the lifetime

This means the time that someone lived. Alternate translation: "during the life"

##### the elders

Here this means the men who helped lead Israel, participating in matters of social justice and in religious matters such as maintaining the law of Moses.

##### outlived him

This means to live longer than someone else. Alternate translation: "lived longer than he did"

#### Judges 08

##### Connecting Statement:

The background information that begins with the words "Now when Joshua" in verse 6 continues.

##### Joshua son of Nun ... died at the age of 110 years old

The background information that begins with the words "Now when Joshua" in verse 6 ends. The events of 1:1-2:5 happened after Joshua died.

##### Nun

This is the name of a man.

##### 110 years old

"one hundred and ten years old"

#### Judges 09

##### Timnath Heres

This is the name of an area of land.

##### Mount Gaash

This is the name of a mountain.

#### Judges 10

##### All that generation was also gathered to their fathers

The phrase "was also gathered to their fathers" means that as the people of that generation died, their souls went to the same place as their ancestors who died before them. It is a polite way of saying they died.

##### fathers

Here this means the ancestors of a certain person or people group.

##### grew up

"grew older" or "became older"

##### who did not know Yahweh

Here "did not know" means they had not experienced Yahweh or his power the way the previous generation had.

#### Judges 11

##### what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considered to be evil"

##### Baals

This is the plural of Baal. While "Baal" was generally the name of one false god, the word was also used for various other gods that were often worshiped along with Baal.

#### Judges 12

##### They broke away from Yahweh

The Israelites no longer obeying Yahweh is spoken of as if they physically broke away from him and left him.

##### their fathers

"their ancestors" or "their forefathers"

##### They went after other gods

The Israelites starting to worship false gods is spoken of as if the Israelites walked and went after the false gods.

##### bowed down to them

This is an act of worship and giving honor to someone.

##### They provoked Yahweh to anger

"They caused Yahweh to become angry"

#### Judges 13

##### Ashtoreths

This is the plural of Ashtoroth, who was worshiped as a goddess in many different forms.

#### Judges 14

##### The anger of Yahweh burned against Israel

The anger of Yahweh is described as burning like a fire. Alternate translation: "Yahweh became very angry with the people of Israel"

##### he gave them to the raiders who stole their possessions from them

"he let raiders steal their possessions"

##### He sold them as slaves who were held by the strength of their enemies around them, so they could no longer defend themselves against their enemies

Yahweh allowing the enemies to take the Israelites as slaves is spoken of as if he sold them into slavery. The phrase "who were held by" can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "He allowed their enemies to conquer them and take them as slaves, and they could no longer resist their powerful enemies"

#### Judges 15

##### Yahweh's hand was against them to defeat them

Here "hand" represents Yahweh's power. Alternate translation: "Yahweh helped their enemies defeat them"

##### they were in terrible distress

"they were suffering terribly"

#### Judges 16

##### Then Yahweh raised up judges

Yahweh appointing persons to be judges is spoken of as if he were raising or lifting the persons up.

##### out of the hand of those

Here "hand" refers to power. Alternate translation: "from the power of the enemies"

#### Judges 17

##### they would not listen to their judges

"they would not obey their judges"

##### gave themselves like prostitutes to other gods and worshiped them

The people betraying Yahweh and worshiping other gods is spoken of as if the people were prostitutes. Alternate translation: "betrayed him by worshiping false gods"

##### their fathers

"their ancestors" or "their forefathers"

#### Judges 18

##### When Yahweh raised up judges

Yahweh appointing persons to be judges is spoken of as if he raised or lifted up the persons.

##### judges for them ... delivered them

The word "them" refers to the Israelites.

##### the hand of their enemies

Here "hand" refers to power of the enemies to hurt Israel. Alternate translation: "the power of their enemies"

##### all the days the judge lived

"as long as the judge lived"

##### pity

to have compassion for someone or something

##### as they groaned

The sound made by a person who suffers is used to describe the pain of the Israelites as they suffer. Alternate translation: "as they suffered"

#### Judges 19

##### they would turn away

The people no longer obeying Yahweh is spoken of as if they would physically turn away from Yahweh.

##### their fathers

"their ancestors" or "their forefathers"

##### They would go after other gods to serve them and worship them

The Israelites worshiping other gods is spoken of as if they were walking and going after other gods. Alternate translation: "They would serve and worship other gods"

##### They refused to give up any of their evil deeds or their stubborn ways

"They refused to stop doing evil things and being stubborn." This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "They continued doing evil things and being stubborn"

#### Judges 20

##### The anger of Yahweh burned against Israel

The anger of Yahweh is described as burning like a fire. See how you translated this phrase in [Judges 2:14]

##### this nation has broken

Here "nation" represents the people. Alternate translation: "these people have broken" or "the Israelites have broken"

#### Judges 21

##### any of the nations

Here "nations" represents the people groups that lived in Canaan before the Israelites.

#### Judges 22

##### they will keep the way of Yahweh and walk in it

How Yahweh wants people to live or behave is spoken of as if it were a way or road. A person obeying Yahweh is spoken of as if they were walking in his way.

#### Judges 23

##### did not drive them out quickly and give them into the hand of Joshua

These two phrases mean the same thing and can be combined. Alternate translation: "he did not let Joshua quickly conquer them and drive them out"

##### into the hand of Joshua

Here "hand" is a metonym for power, and "Joshua" represents himself and his army. Alternate translation: "into the power of Joshua and his army"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Judges 2:1

##### Where did the angel of Yahweh bring the people of Israel?

The angel of Yahweh brought them to the land he swore to give to their fathers.

#### Judges 2:3

##### When the angel said he would not drive the Canaanites out before the people of Israel, what did they do?

When the angel said he would not drive the Canaanites out before the people of Israel, they shouted and wept.

#### Judges 2:4

##### When the angel said he would not drive the Canaanites out before the people of Israel, what did they do?

When the angel said he would not drive the Canaanites out before the people of Israel, they shouted and wept.

#### Judges 2:7

##### How long did the people serve Yahweh?

The people served Yahweh during the lifetime of Joshua and of the elders who outlived him.

#### Judges 2:12

##### What gods did the people of Israel go after?

The people of Israel went after the very gods of the peoples who were around them.

#### Judges 2:15

##### What had Yahweh sworn to Israel?

Yahweh had sworn that wherever Israel went out to fight, Yahweh's hand would be against them to defeat them.

#### Judges 2:16

##### What did the judges do?

The judges saved the people of Israel from the power of those who were stealing their possessions.

#### Judges 2:19

##### What happened when the judge died?

When the judge died, the people of Israel would turn away and do things that were even more corrupt than their fathers had done.

#### Judges 2:21

##### Why would Yahweh not drive out from Israel any of the nations that Joshua left when he died?

Yahweh would not drive out from Israel any of the nations that Joshua left when he died, so that Yahweh could test Israel, whether or not they would keep the way of Yahweh and walk in it, as their fathers kept it.

#### Judges 2:22

##### Why would Yahweh not drive out from Israel any of the nations that Joshua left when he died?

Yahweh would not drive out from Israel any of the nations that Joshua left when he died, so that Yahweh could test Israel, whether or not they would keep the way of Yahweh and walk in it, as their fathers kept it.

### Chapter 3

**1** Now Yahweh left these nations to test Israel, namely everyone in Israel who had not experienced any of the wars fought in Canaan. **2** (He did this to teach warfare to the new generation of the people of Israel who had not known it before.) **3** These are the nations: the five rulers of the Philistines, all the Canaanites, the Sidonians, and the Hivites who lived in the Lebanon mountains, from Mount Baal Hermon to Lebo Hamath. *[*[1](#fn-007-003-003-1)*]***4** These nations were left as a means by which Yahweh would test Israel, to confirm whether they would obey the commands he gave their ancestors through Moses. **5** So the people of Israel lived among the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Amorites, the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites. **6** Their daughters they took to be their wives, and their own daughters they gave to their sons, and they served their gods.

**7** The people of Israel did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh and forgot Yahweh their God. They worshiped the Baals and the Asherahs. **8** Therefore, the anger of Yahweh was set on fire against Israel, and he sold them into the hand of Cushan-Rishathaim king of Aram Naharaim. The people of Israel served Cushan-Rishathaim for eight years. **9** When the people of Israel called out to Yahweh, Yahweh raised up someone who would come to help the people of Israel, and who would rescue them: Othniel son of Kenaz (Caleb's younger brother). **10** Yahweh's Spirit empowered him, and he judged Israel and he went out to war. Yahweh gave him victory over Cushan-Rishathaim king of Aram. The hand of Othniel defeated Cushan-Rishathaim. **11** The land had peace for forty years. Then Othniel son of Kenaz died.

**12** After that, the people of Israel again did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, and Yahweh gave strength to Eglon king of Moab to overpower Israel. **13** Eglon joined with the Ammonites and the Amalekites and they went and defeated Israel, and they took possession of the City of Palms. **14** The people of Israel served Eglon the king of Moab for eighteen years.

**15** When the people of Israel called out to Yahweh, Yahweh raised up a deliverer for them, Ehud son of Gera, a Benjamite, a left-handed man. The people of Israel sent him, with their tribute payment, to Eglon king of Moab. **16** Ehud made himself a sword that had two edges, one cubit in length; he bound it to his right thigh under his clothing. **17** He gave the tribute payment to King Eglon of Moab. (Now Eglon was a very fat man.) **18** After Ehud had presented the tribute payment, he left with those who had carried it in. **19** As for Ehud himself, however, when he reached the place where the carved images were made near Gilgal, he turned and went back, and he said, "I have a secret message for you, my king." Eglon said, "Silence!" So all those serving him left the room. **20** Ehud came to him. The king was sitting by himself, alone in the coolness of the upper room. Ehud said, "I have a message from God for you." The king got up out of his seat. **21** Ehud reached with his left hand and took the sword from his right thigh, and he stabbed it into the king's body. **22** The hilt of the sword also went into him following the blade. The tip of the sword came out of his back and the fat closed over it, for Ehud did not pull the sword out of his belly. **23** Then Ehud went out on the porch and closed the doors of the upper room behind him and locked them.

**24** After Ehud had gone, the king's servants came; they saw that the doors of the upper room were locked, so they thought, "Surely he is relieving himself in the coolness of the upper room." **25** They were growing more concerned until they felt they were neglecting their duty when the king still did not open the doors to the upper room. So they took the key and opened them, and there lay their master, fallen to the floor, dead.

**26** While the servants were waiting, wondering what they should do, Ehud escaped and passed beyond the place where there were carved images of idols, and so he escaped to Seirah. **27** When he arrived, he blew a ram's horn in the hill country of Ephraim. Then the people of Israel went down with him from the hills, and he was leading them. **28** He said to them, "Follow me, for Yahweh is about to defeat your enemies, the Moabites." They followed him and they captured the fords of the Jordan across from the Moabites, and they did not allow anyone to cross the river. **29** At that time they killed about ten thousand men of Moab, and all were strong and capable men. Not one escaped. **30** So that day Moab was subdued by the strength of Israel, and the land had rest for eighty years.

**31** After Ehud the next judge was Shamgar son of Anath who killed 600 men of the Philistines with a stick used to goad oxen. He also delivered Israel from danger.

#### Footnotes

3:3 *[*[1](#ref-fn-007-003-003-1)*]*Some modern English translations read,

# Judges 3 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The people worship false gods

Israel worshiped idols and false gods. Because of this, Yahweh allowed Aram and Moab to rule over them. In the period of Judges, when Israel sinned, they were often placed under the rule of a foreign power. (See: falsegod and sin)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "Blew a trumpet"

When Ehud "blew a trumpet," he was calling all of the men to come help him fight.

#### Judges 01

##### Now Yahweh

Here "Now" begins a new section of the story.

##### these nations

This refers to the people groups that the narrator will list in 3:3.

##### who had not experienced any of the wars fought in Canaan

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "who had not fought in any of the wars in Canaan"

#### Judges 02

##### He did this to teach warfare to the new generation of the people of Israel who had not known it before

This changes from the main story. The narrator gives background information about why Yahweh left some of the people groups in Canaan. Alternate translation: "Yahweh left nations among the people of Israel to teach the young men who had not fought in battle before how to fight"

#### Judges 03

##### the five rulers

These five rulers represent themselves and their people. Alternate translation: "the five rulers and their people"

##### rulers

kings

##### Mount Baal Hermon

This is the highest mountain in Israel.

##### Lebo Hamath

This is the name of route between two mountains at the northern boundary of Canaan.

#### Judges 04

##### These nations were left

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh left these nations in Canaan" or "Yahweh allowed these nations to continue to live in Canaan"

##### as a means

"as a way"

##### whether they would ... gave their ancestors

The words "they" and "their" refer to the people of Israel.

##### the commands he gave

"the commands Yahweh gave"

#### Judges 05

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 06

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 07

##### what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [Judges 2:11]

##### forgot Yahweh their God

Here "forgot" is an idiom that means "they stopped obeying."

#### Judges 08

##### the anger of Yahweh was set on fire

Yahweh becoming very angry is spoken of as if his anger were something that could be set on fire. Alternate translation: "Yahweh became very angry"

##### sold them into the hand of Cushan-Rishathaim

Allowing the people of Israel to be conquered is spoken of as if Yahweh sold them to Cushan-Rishathaim. Alternate translation: "allowed Cushan-Rishathaim and his army to defeat them"

##### into the hand of Cushan-Rishathaim

Here "hand" is a metonym that represents power or control. Also, "Cushan-Rishathaim" is a synechdoche that represents himself and his army.

##### Cushan-Rishathaim

This is the name of a man.

##### Aram Naharaim

This is the name of a country.

#### Judges 09

##### Yahweh raised up someone

Yahweh appointing someone to do a special work for him is spoken of as if Yahweh raised or lifted up the person.

##### Othniel ... Kenaz

See how you translated these men's names in Judges 1:13.

#### Judges 10

##### empowered him

This phrase means that Yahweh helped Othniel to have and develop the qualities he needed to be a great leader.

##### he judged Israel

Here "judged" means he led the people of Israel.

##### he went out to war

Here "he" refers to Othniel who represents himself and the army of Israel. Alternate translation: "Othniel and the Israelite soldiers went to fight against the army of Cushan-Rishathaim"

##### Yahweh gave him victory over Cushan-Rishathaim king of Aram

Here "Cushan-Rishathaim" represents his army. Alternate translation: "Yahweh helped the Israelite army defeat the army of Cushan-Rishathaim king of Aram"

##### The hand of Othniel

Here "hand" is a metonym for army. Alternate translation: "The army of Othniel"

#### Judges 11

##### The land had peace

"The land" is used to refer to the people who lived in the land. Alternate translation: "The people lived peacefully"

##### forty years

"40 years"

#### Judges 12

##### what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [Judges 2:11]

##### Yahweh gave strength to Eglon king of Moab

The abstract noun "strength" can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: "Yahweh made Eglon king of Moab strong"

##### to Eglon king of Moab to overpower Israel

Here "Eglon king of Moab" represents himself and his army. Alternate translation: "to Eglon king of Moab and his soldiers as they attacked the Israelite army"

##### Eglon

This is the name of a king.

##### to overpower Israel

The name "Israel" here is a metonym for the army or the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "to defeat the army of Israel" or "to conquer the people of Israel"

#### Judges 13

##### the City of Palms

This is another name for the city of Jericho. See how you translated this in Judges 1:16.

#### Judges 14

##### eighteen years

"18 years"

#### Judges 15

##### called out to Yahweh

Here this means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.

##### raised up a deliverer

Yahweh appointing a deliverer to do a special service for him is spoken of as if he raised or lifted up the person.

##### Ehud ... Gera

These are names of men.

##### left-handed

Ehud was better able to hold a sword with his left hand.

#### Judges 16

##### one cubit

If it is necessary to use a modern measurement of length, here are two ways of doing it. Alternate translation: "46 centimeters" or "about one half meter"

##### thigh

the part of the leg between the knee and the hip

#### Judges 17

##### Now Eglon was a very fat man

Here "Now" is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here the narrator tells background information about Eglon.

#### Judges 18

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 19

##### when he reached the place where the carved images were made near Gilgal

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when he arrived at the place near Gilgal where people made carved images"

#### Judges 20

##### in the coolness of the upper room

This is a room above the lower level that was used for rest and to remain cool during the hot part of the day.

##### The king got up out of his seat

Standing up was a sign of honoring God will listening to his message.

#### Judges 21

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 22

##### The tip of the sword came out of his back

"The sharp end of the sword came out of his back"

#### Judges 23

##### porch

an outside room with low walls and a roof covering

#### Judges 24

##### Surely he is relieving himself

This is a polite way to speak about a person having a bowel movement

#### Judges 25

##### until they felt they were neglecting their duty

They waited until they became worried that something was wrong and it was their duty to open the doors to their king's private room.

##### took the key and opened them

"took the key and opened the doors"

#### Judges 26

##### While the servants were waiting ... Ehud escaped

This tells what happened before the servants opened the doors to the upper room and found the king dead. Alternate translation: "Meanwhile, as the servants were still waiting outside of the upper room ... Ehud escaped"

##### Seirah

This is the name of a city.

#### Judges 27

##### When he arrived

This could be made clearer. Alternate translation: "When he arrived in Seirah"

#### Judges 28

##### General Information:

Ehud speaks to the people of Israel in Ephraim.

##### for Yahweh is about to defeat your enemies

Yahweh helping the Israelites to defeat their enemies is spoken of as if Yahweh were a warrior who would fight and defeat their enemies.

##### captured the fords

"gained control of the fords"

##### fords

the areas of a river where it is shallow and easy to walk across to the other side

##### did not allow anyone to cross

"did not let anyone cross"

#### Judges 29

##### ten thousand men

"10,000 men"

##### capable men

"able men" or "men able to fight well"

#### Judges 30

##### Moab was subdued by the strength of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Israelite army defeated the Moabites"

##### the strength of Israel

Here "strength" represents the Israelite army.

##### the land had rest

Here "land" represents the people. Alternate translation: "the Israelites lived peacefully"

##### eighty years

"80 years"

#### Judges 31

##### judge

God appointed judges to lead the people of Israel in times of trouble after they entered the Promised Land and before they had kings. Often judges rescued the Israelites from their enemies.

##### Shamgar

The name of a man.

##### Anath

The name of a man.

##### 600 men

"six hundred men"

##### a stick used to goad oxen

Cattle farmers would poke their cattle with a sharp stick to make them move. Alternate translation: "a stick used to urge oxen to move" or "a stick used to direct oxen"

##### He also delivered Israel from danger

The word "danger" refers to enemies that tried to harm the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "He also delivered the people of Israel from their enemies"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Judges 3:1

##### Why did Yahweh leave nations to test Israel?

Yahweh left nations to test Israel to teach warfare to the new generation of the Israelites who had not known it before.

#### Judges 3:4

##### What would Yahweh do by means of the remaining nations?

Yahweh would test Israel by means of the remaining nations, to confirm whether they would obey the commands he gave their ancestors through Moses.

#### Judges 3:7

##### What did the people of Israel worship?

They worshiped the Baals and the Asherahs.

#### Judges 3:9

##### Who did Yahweh first raise up, who would come to help the people of Israel?

Yahweh first raised up Othniel the son of Kenaz, Caleb's younger brother.

#### Judges 3:12

##### Who gave strength to Eglon the king of Moab?

Yahweh gave strength to Eglon the king of Moab.

#### Judges 3:15

##### When did Yahweh raise up Ehud to help the people of Israel?

Yahweh raised up Ehud to help the people of Israel when they called out to him.

#### Judges 3:16

##### Where did Ehud strap on the sword he made?

He strapped it on under his clothing on his right thigh.

#### Judges 3:19

##### Who was with Ehud and the king when Ehud told him the message?

Only Ehud and the king were there.

#### Judges 3:20

##### Who was with Ehud and the king when Ehud told him the message?

Only Ehud and the king were there.

#### Judges 3:22

##### Why did fat close over the blade?

Fat closed over the blade, for Ehud did not draw the sword out of the king's body.

#### Judges 3:24

##### When the king's servants saw that the doors of the upper room were locked, what did they think?

When the king's servants saw that the doors of the upper room were locked, they thought he was relieving himself in the coolness of the upper room.

#### Judges 3:26

##### When did Ehud escape?

While the servants were waiting, wondering what they should do, Ehud escaped.

#### Judges 3:28

##### How did the people of Israel prevent the Moabites from crossing the river?

The people of Israel captured the fords of the Jordan across from the Moabites.

#### Judges 3:31

##### With what did Shamgar kill 600 Philistines?

Shamgar killed the Philistines with a stick used to goad the cattle.

### Chapter 4

**1** After Ehud died, the people of Israel once again did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh. **2** Yahweh sold them into the hand of Jabin king of Canaan who reigned in Hazor. The commander of his army was named Sisera, and he lived in Harosheth Haggoyim. **3** The people of Israel called out to Yahweh for help, because Sisera had nine hundred iron chariots and he oppressed the people of Israel with force for twenty years.

**4** Now Deborah, a prophetess (the wife of Lappidoth), was a leading judge in Israel at that time. **5** She used to sit under the palm of Deborah between Ramah and Bethel in the hill country of Ephraim, and the people of Israel came to her to settle their disputes. **6** She sent for Barak son of Abinoam from Kedesh in Naphtali. She said to him, "Yahweh, the God of Israel, commands you, 'Go to Mount Tabor, and take with you ten thousand men from Naphtali and Zebulun. **7** I will draw out Sisera, the commander of Jabin's army, to meet you by the Kishon River, with his chariots and his army, and I will give you victory over him.'" **8** Barak said to her, "If you go with me, I will go, but if you do not go with me, I will not go." **9** She said, "I will certainly go with you. However, the road on which you are going will not lead to your honor, for Yahweh will sell Sisera into the hand of a woman." Then Deborah got up and went with Barak to Kedesh. **10** Barak called for the men of Zebulun and Naphtali to come together at Kedesh. Ten thousand men followed him, and Deborah went along with him.

**11** Now Heber (the Kenite) had separated himself from the Kenites—they were the descendants of Hobab (Moses' father-in-law)—and he pitched his tent by the oak in Zaanannim near Kedesh.

**12** When they told Sisera that Barak son of Abinoam had gone up to Mount Tabor, **13** Sisera called out all his chariots, nine hundred iron chariots, and all the soldiers who were with him, from Harosheth Haggoyim to the Kishon River. **14** Deborah said to Barak, "Go! For this is the day in which Yahweh has given you victory over Sisera. Is not Yahweh leading you?" So Barak went down from Mount Tabor with ten thousand men following him. **15** Yahweh confused Sisera and all his chariots and all his army with the edge of the sword. And Sisera got down from his chariot and ran away on foot. **16** But Barak pursued the chariots and the army to Harosheth Haggoyim, and the whole army of Sisera was killed by the edge of the sword, and not a man survived.

**17** But Sisera ran away on foot to the tent of Jael, the wife of Heber the Kenite, for there was peace between Jabin the king of Hazor and the clan of Heber the Kenite. **18** Jael went out to meet Sisera and said to him, "Turn aside, my master; turn aside to me and do not be afraid." So he turned aside to her and came into her tent, and she covered him with a blanket. **19** He said to her, "Please give me a little water to drink, for I am thirsty." She opened a leather bag of milk and gave him drink, and then she covered him up again. **20** He said to her, "Stand at the opening of the tent. If someone comes and asks you, 'Is anyone here?', say 'No'." **21** Then Jael (the wife of Heber) took a tent peg and a hammer in her hand and went in secretly to him, for he was in a deep sleep, and she hammered the tent peg into the side of his head until it went down into the ground, and he died. **22** As Barak was pursuing Sisera, Jael want out to meet him and said to him, "Come, I will show you the man you are looking for." So he went in with her, and there lay Sisera dead, with the tent peg in the side of his head.

**23** So on that day God subdued Jabin, the king of Canaan, before the people of Israel. **24** The might of the people of Israel grew stronger and stronger against Jabin the king of Canaan, until they destroyed him.

# Judges 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Chapters 4 and 5 form one section about Barak and Deborah.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Barak's leadership

At this time, it was very unusual for a woman to be a leader, especially a military leader. Barak lacked the strength to go into battle without Deborah. This indicates that Barak was a poor leader. If a woman won the battle for him, it would have brought Barak shame. It also indicates that Deborah was very well respected.

#### Judges 01

##### Ehud

See how you translated this man's name in Judges 3:15.

##### what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [Judges 2:11]

#### Judges 02

##### Yahweh sold them into the hand of Jabin king of Canaan

Here "hand" refers to Jabin's power over Israel. Yahweh's decision to give Jabin power over them is spoken of as if Yahweh had sold them to Jabin. Alternate translation: "Yahweh allowed them to be defeated by the power of Jabin king of Canaan"

##### Jabin ... Sisera

These are the names of men

##### Hazor ... Harosheth Haggoyim

These are the names of cities or places

#### Judges 03

##### nine hundred iron chariots

"900 iron chariots"

##### twenty years

"20 years"

#### Judges 04

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here the narrator tells background information about Deborah.

##### Deborah

This is the name of a woman

##### Lappidoth

This is the name of a man

##### judge

God appointed judges to lead the Israelites in times of trouble. Often the judges rescued them from their enemies.

#### Judges 05

##### palm of Deborah

This tree was named after Deborah.

#### Judges 06

##### General Information:

The writer of Judges refers to men, a city, a mountain, and a river by their names.

##### Barak ... Abinoam

These are the names of men.

##### Mount Tabor

This is the name of a mountain.

##### ten thousand men

"10,000 men"

#### Judges 07

##### I will draw out

Here "I" refers to God.

##### draw out Sisera

Here "Sisera" represents himself and his army. Alternate translation: "draw out Sisera and his army"

##### draw out

to cause people to come away from a safe location

##### Sisera ... Jabin

See how you translated these men's names in Judges 4:2.

##### Kishon

This is the name of a river.

#### Judges 08

##### General Information:

Barak has a discussion with Deborah.

##### Barak

See how you translated this man's name in Judges 4:6.

#### Judges 09

##### the road on which you are going will not lead to your honor

The choice Barak makes is spoken of as if Barak were choosing a road on which to travel. And, "honor" is spoken of as if it were a destination to which one travels. Alternate translation: "no one will honor you for what you do"

##### for Yahweh will sell Sisera into the hand of a woman

Here "hand" refers to her power to kill him. Alternate translation: "for Yahweh will cause a woman to defeat Sisera"

##### Sisera

See how you translated this man's name in Judges 4:2.

##### Deborah

See how you translated this woman's name in Judges 4:4.

#### Judges 10

##### Ten thousand men

"10,000 men"

#### Judges 11

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here the narrator tells background information about Heber the Kenite.

##### Heber ... Hobab

These are the names of men.

##### Kenite

See how you translated this in Judges 1:16

##### Moses' father-in-law

"the father of Moses' wife"

##### Zaanannim

This is the name of a city.

#### Judges 12

##### When they told Sisera

Here "they" does not identify anyone specifically. Alternate translation: "When someone told Sisera"

##### Sisera

See how you translated this man's name in Judges 4:2.

##### Barak ... Abinoam ... Mount Tabor

See how you translated these names in Judges 4:6.

#### Judges 13

##### Sisera called out all his chariots

Here "chariots" represents the soldiers who drove the chariots.

##### nine hundred iron chariots

"900 iron chariots"

##### Harosheth Haggoyim

See how you translated the name of this city in Judges 4:2.

##### Kishon River

See how you translated this in Judges 4:7.

#### Judges 14

##### Yahweh has given you victory

Because Deborah is certain of victory, she speaks as if Barak had already won the battle. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will give you victory"

##### Is not Yahweh leading you?

Deborah asks this question to remind Barak that they fight on the side of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "Remember, Yahweh is leading you."

##### with ten thousand

"with 10,000"

#### Judges 15

##### Yahweh confused Sisera and all his chariots and all his army

"Yahweh made Sisera and all his chariots and all his army unable to think clearly" or "Yahweh made Sisera and all his chariots and all his army panic"

##### all his chariots

Here the word "chariots" is a metonym for the soldiers driving the chariots. Alternate translation: "all the men driving chariots"

#### Judges 16

##### Barak pursued

Here "Barak" represents himself and his army. Alternate translation: "Barak and his soldiers chased"

##### Harosheth

Translate this the same way you did in Judges 4:2.

##### the whole army of Sisera was killed by the edge of the sword

Here "sword" represents the swords and other weapons that the soldiers used in battle. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Barak and his soldiers killed Sisera's whole army with their swords"

#### Judges 17

##### Sisera ... Jabin ... Hazor

See how you translated these names in Judges 4:2.

##### ran away on foot

This is an idiom that means he was walking rather than riding a horse or in a chariot.

##### Jael

This is the name of a woman.

##### Heber

See how you translated this man's name in Judges 4:11.

##### Kenite

See how you translated this in Judges 1:16.

#### Judges 18

##### Turn aside

This means to change course during a journey in order to rest. Alternate translation: "Come here"

##### blanket

a large covering for the body to sleep under for warmth, made of wool or animal skins

#### Judges 19

##### He said to her

"Sisera said to Jael"

#### Judges 20

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 21

##### tent peg

a pointed piece of wood or metal, like a large nail, that is hammered into the ground to hold down a corner of a tent

##### hammer

a heavy tool made of wood used to hit a tent peg into the ground

##### a deep sleep

Like a person in a deep hole cannot easily climb out, a person in a deep sleep cannot easily wake up.

#### Judges 22

##### Barak was pursuing

"Barak was chasing" or "Barak was following after"

#### Judges 23

##### God subdued Jabin, the king of Canaan, before the people of Israel

God causing the Israelites to defeat Jabin and his army is spoken of as is God himself defeated Jabin as the people of Israel watched.

#### Judges 24

##### The might

"The military power"

##### they destroyed him

Here "him" refers to Jabin who represents himself and his army. Alternate translation: "they destroyed Jabin and his army"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Judges 4:3

##### Why did the people of Israel call out to Yahweh for help?

The people of Israel called out to Yahweh for help, because Sisera had nine hundred iron chariots and he oppressed the people of Israel with force for twenty years.

#### Judges 4:4

##### Why did the people of Israel come to Deborah?

The people of Israel came to Deborah to settle their disputes.

#### Judges 4:7

##### Where would Yahweh cause Sisera to meet Barak?

Yahweh would cause Sisera to meet Barak by the river Kishon.

#### Judges 4:8

##### Why would Yahweh make a woman defeat Sisera?

Yahweh would make a woman defeat Sisera because Barak did not go without Deborah.

#### Judges 4:9

##### Why would Yahweh make a woman defeat Sisera?

Yahweh would make a woman defeat Sisera because Barak did not go without Deborah.

#### Judges 4:11

##### From whom did the Kenites descend?

The Kenites descended from Hobab, Moses' father-in-law.

#### Judges 4:16

##### How many of the army of Sisera survived?

None of the army of Sisera survived.

#### Judges 4:17

##### Why did Sisera go to the tent of Jael?

Sisera went to the tent of Jael, for there was peace between Jabin the king of Hazor, and the house of Heber, Jael's husband.

#### Judges 4:19

##### When Sisera asked for water, what did Jael give him?

When Sisera asked for water, Jael gave him milk.

#### Judges 4:21

##### How did Jael kill Sisera?

Jael hammered the tent peg into the side of his head and it pierced through him and went down into the ground.

### Chapter 5

**1** On that day Deborah and Barak son of Abinoam sang this song:

**2** "When the leaders take the lead in Israel,

when the people volunteer—

praise Yahweh!

**3** Listen, you kings! Pay attention, you rulers!

I, I will sing to Yahweh;

I will sing praises to Yahweh,

the God of Israel.

**4** Yahweh, when you went out from Seir,

when you marched from Edom,

the earth shook, and the skies also trembled;

also the clouds poured down water.

**5** The mountains quaked before the face of Yahweh;

even Mount Sinai quaked before the face of Yahweh,

the God of Israel.

**6** In the days of Shamgar (son of Anath),

in the days of Jael,

the main roads were abandoned,

and those who walked only used the winding paths.

**7** There were few rural people in Israel,

until I, Deborah, arose—

arose as a mother in Israel!

**8** When they chose new gods,

there was fighting at the city gates

and yet there were no shields or spears seen

among forty thousand in Israel.

**9** My heart goes out to the commanders of Israel,

along with the people who gladly volunteered—

we bless Yahweh for them!

**10** Think about this—you who ride on white donkeys

sitting on rugs for saddles,

and you who walk along the road.

**11** Hear the voices of those who sing

at the watering places.

There they tell again of Yahweh's righteous deeds,

and the righteous actions of his warriors in Israel.

Then the people of Yahweh went down to the city gates.

**12** Awake, awake, Deborah!

Awake, awake, sing a song!

Get up, Barak,

and capture your prisoners, you son of Abinoam.

**13** Then the survivors came down to the nobles;

the people of Yahweh came down to me with the warriors.

**14** They came from Ephraim, whose root is in Amalek;

the people of Benjamin followed you.

From Makir commanders came down,

and from Zebulun those who carry an officer's staff.

**15** My princes in Issachar were with Deborah;

and Issachar was with Barak

rushing after him into the valley under his command.

Among the clans of Reuben

there were great searchings of heart.

**16** Why did you sit between the fireplaces,

listening to the shepherds playing their pipes for their flocks?

As for the clans of Reuben

there were great searchings of heart.

**17** Gilead stayed on the other side of the Jordan;

and Dan, why did he wander about on ships?

Asher remained on the coast

and lived close to his harbors.

**18** Zebulun was a people who despised their lives to the point of death,

and Naphtali, also, on the field of battle.

**19** The kings came, they fought;

the kings of Canaan fought at Taanach

by the waters of Megiddo.

But they took away no silver as plunder.

**20** From heaven the stars fought,

from their paths across the heavens they fought against Sisera.

**21** The Kishon River swept them away,

that old river, the Kishon River.

March on my soul, be strong!

**22** Then came the sound of horses' hooves—

galloping, the galloping of his mighty ones.

**23** 'Curse Meroz!' says the angel of Yahweh.

'Surely curse its inhabitants!—

because they did not come to help Yahweh—

to help Yahweh in the battle against the mighty warriors.'

**24** Jael is blessed more than all other women,

Jael (the wife of Heber the Kenite),

she is more blessed than all the women who live in tents.

**25** The man asked for water, and she gave him milk;

she brought him butter in a dish fit for princes.

**26** She put her hand to the tent peg,

and her right hand to the laborer's hammer;

with the hammer she struck Sisera, she crushed his head.

She smashed his skull into pieces when she pierced him through the side of his head.

**27** He collapsed between her feet, he fell and he lay there.

Between her feet he fell limp.

The place he collapsed is where he was violently killed.

**28** Out of a window she looked—

the mother of Sisera looked through the lattice and she called out in sadness,

'Why has it taken his chariot so long to come?

Why have the hoofbeats of the horses that pull his chariots been delayed?'

**29** Her wisest princesses replied,

and she gave herself the same answer:

**30** 'Have they not found and divided up the plunder—

a womb, two wombs for every man;

the plunder of dyed fabric for Sisera,

the plunder of dyed fabric embroidered,

two pieces of dyed fabric embroidered for the necks of those who plunder?'

**31** So may all your enemies perish, Yahweh!

But your friends be like the sun when it rises in its might."

Then the land had peace for forty years.

# Judges 5 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The account of Deborah and Barak continues in this chapter.

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations, prayers, and songs. The ULB and many other English translations set the lines of Chapter 5, which is a song, farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### The flood

God caused rain and flooding to bog down Jaban's chariots making them vulnerable to soldiers on foot, even though it is not said.

#### Judges 01

##### On that day

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "On the day the Israelites defeated the army of King Jabin"

##### Deborah

See how you translated this name in Judges 4:4.

##### Barak ... Abinoam

See how you translated these names in Judges 4:6.

#### Judges 02

##### When the leaders take the lead ... the people volunteer

Possible meanings are 1) this refers to anytime this happens or 2) this refers to the specific battle that has just happened, "When the leaders took the lead ... the people volunteered."

##### when the people volunteer

The word "people" here probably refers to the men old enough to fight, and the word "volunteer" here implies going to war. Alternate translation: "when the men gladly agree to fight in battle"

##### praise Yahweh

This command is to the people of Israel and so is plural.

#### Judges 03

##### General Information:

Deborah and Barak's song continues using poetry.

##### Listen, you kings! Pay attention, you rulers

Deborah and Barak speak to the kings and rulers as if they were there listening to the song.

##### you kings ... you rulers

This refers to kings and rulers in general, not to specific kings or rulers.

#### Judges 04

##### when you went out from Seir, when you marched from Edom

This refers to the time when the Israelites left Edom to start conquering the people in Canaan. Yahweh empowering his people to defeat the people of Canaan is spoken of as if he were a warrior leading the Israelite army.

##### Seir

Seir is a mountain on the border of the land of Israel and Edom.

##### the earth shook, and the skies also trembled; also the clouds poured down water

Possible meanings are 1) this is poetic language that emphasizes Yahweh's power by describing it as causing earthquakes and storms or 2) the people of Canaan being terrified as the Israelites were about to attack them is spoken of as if the earth and sky were shaking.

#### Judges 05

##### General Information:

Deborah and Barak's song continues using poetry.

##### The mountains quaked

This probably refers to earthquakes and gives the impression that the mountains quaked because they were very afraid of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "The mountains trembled in fear"

##### before the face of Yahweh

Here "face" refers Yahweh's presence. Alternate translation: "in the presence of Yahweh"

##### even Mount Sinai quaked

When Moses and Israel were at Mount Sinai, it quaked. Alternate translation: "long ago, even Mount Sinai quaked"

#### Judges 06

##### In the days of

"During the lifetime of"

##### Shamgar ... Anath ... Jael

These are the names of people. See how you translated Shamgar and Anath in [Judges 3:31]

##### son of Anath

Shamgar's father is mentioned to help identify Shamgar and when he lived.

##### the main roads were abandoned

This can be stated in active form and you can make explicit why the roads were abandoned Alternate translation: "people stopped using the main roads; because they were afraid of Israel's enemies"

##### the winding paths

This refers to smaller roads that fewer people traveled on.

#### Judges 07

##### I, Deborah, arose—arose as a mother in Israel

Deborah speaks of becoming a leader in Israel as if she were a mother taking care of young children. Alternate translation: "I, Deborah, began to lead—I took care of the Israelites as a mother takes care of her children"

#### Judges 08

##### they chose new gods

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel worshiped new gods"

##### there was fighting at the city gates

Here "gates" represents the entire city. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "enemies attacked the people within the Israelite cities"

##### there were no shields or spears seen among forty thousand in Israel

This statement is probably an exaggeration about how few weapons the Israelites had. Alternate translation: "few weapons for battle remained in Israel"

##### forty thousand in Israel

"40,000 in Israel"

#### Judges 09

##### My heart goes out to the commanders of Israel

The word "heart" represents a person's emotions. The phrase "My heart goes out to" is a way of saying that Deborah feels gratitude or appreciation. Alternate translation: "I appreciate the commanders of Israel"

#### Judges 10

##### you who ride on white donkeys ... you who walk along the road

This contrast probably refers to rich people and poor people. Alternate translation: "you rich people who ride on white donkeys ... you poor people who walk along the road"

##### sitting on rugs for saddles

These rugs were probably used as saddles on the donkey's back to make the rider more comfortable.

#### Judges 11

##### General Information:

The song of Deborah and Barak continues.

##### Hear the voices of those

Here "voices" represents the people singing. Alternate translation: "Listen to those"

##### went down to the city gates

Here "gates" represents the whole city. Alternate translation: "returned to their cities"

#### Judges 12

##### General Information:

Deborah and Barak's song continues using poetry.

##### Awake, awake

Possible speakers are 1) the people of Israel or 2) Deborah who is speaking to herself or 3) the poet who wrote the song.

##### Deborah

See how you translated this name in Judges 4:4.

##### Barak ... Abinoam

See how you translated these names in Judges 4:6.

#### Judges 13

##### to me with the warriors

The word "me" refers to Deborah.

#### Judges 14

##### from Ephraim, whose root is in Amalek

The people of Ephraim living in the land where the descendants of Amalek originally lived is spoken of as if the people of Ephraim were planted and their roots grew into the land. Alternate translation: "from Ephraim, that land where the descendants of Amalek once lived"

##### followed you

Here "you" refers to the people of Ephraim. It can be stated in third person. Alternate translation: "followed them"

##### Makir

This is the place where the descendants of Makir live. Makir was the son of Manasseh and the grandson of Joseph.

##### from Zebulun those who carry an officer's staff

Military leaders are described by the staff, a symbol of their authority. Alternate translation: "military leaders from Zebulun"

#### Judges 15

##### My princes in Issachar were with Deborah

Here "My" refers to Deborah. This whole statement can be translated in first person. Alternate translation: "My princes in Issachar were with me"

##### Deborah

See how you translated this name in Judges 4:4.

##### Issachar was with Barak

Here "Issachar" refers to the tribe of Issachar. Alternate translation: "the tribe of Issachar was with Barak"

##### Barak

See how you translated this name in Judges 4:6.

##### rushing after him into the valley under his command

"obeying his command and rushing after him into the valley"

##### rushing after

"following after" or "hurrying after"

##### there were great searchings of heart

Here "heart" represents thoughts. The people discussing with each other but being unable to decide what they should do is spoken of as if they were searching their heart. Alternate translation: "there was a lot of discussing about what they should do"

#### Judges 16

##### Why did you sit between the fireplaces, listening to the shepherds playing their pipes for their flocks?

This question is asked to criticize the people of Reuben because they did not decide to come fight in the battle. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have helped us fight, instead of staying at home and listening to the shepherds playing their pipes for their flocks"

##### the fireplaces

Some versions of the Bible have the translation "the sheepfolds" or "the sheep pens."

##### there were great searchings of heart

Here "heart" represents thoughts. The people discussing with each other but being unable to decide what they should do is spoken of as if they were searching their heart. See how you translated this in [Judges 5:15]

#### Judges 17

##### Gilead stayed

Here "Gilead" the men from Gilead who should have gone to fight in battle. Alternate translation: "The men of Gilead stayed"

##### the other side of the Jordan

This refers to the east side of the Jordan.

##### Dan, why did he wander about on ships?

This question is asked to express anger because the people of the tribe of Dan would not fight for Israel. Alternate translation: "the men of Dan should not have remained on their ships!" or "the people of the tribe of Dan did not help us in the battle. Instead they were wandering around on the sea in ships!"

##### Dan, why did he

Here "Dan" represents the men from Dan who should have gone to fight in battle. Alternate translation: "the men of Dan, why did they"

##### wander about on ships

The tribe of Dan was located near the Mediterranean sea. They sailed on the sea to make money through trade and fishing.

##### Asher remained on the coast and lived close to his harbors

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "The people of the tribe of Asher also failed to help us, they just remained on the coast near their harbors"

##### Asher remained

Here "Asher" represents the men who should have gone to fight in battle. Alternate translation: "The men of Asher remained"

##### harbors

places at the seacoast with deeper water where ships were kept

#### Judges 18

##### Naphtali, also

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "Naphtali was a tribe who would also risk their lives to the point of death"

#### Judges 19

##### The kings came, they fought ... the kings of Canaan fought

The king of a people group is used to refer to himself and the army he commands. Alternate translation: "The kings and their armies came and fought ... the kings of Canaan and their armies fought"

##### they fought ... fought

The word "us" is understood. Alternate translation: "they fought us ... fought us"

##### Taanach ... Megiddo

Translate the names of these places as you did in Judges 1:27.

##### no silver as plunder

Here "silver" represents any treasure in general. Alternate translation: "no silver or other treasures as plunder"

##### plunder

things taken by force, usually in battle or by thieves

#### Judges 20

##### From heaven the stars fought, from their paths across the heavens they fought against Sisera

Yahweh helping the Israelite to defeat Sisera and his army is spoken of as if the stars themselves fought against Sisera and his army. This may refer to Yahweh using natural elements, specifically rain storms, to defeat Sisera.

##### against Sisera

Here "Sisera" represents himself and his whole army. Alternate translation: "Sisera and his army"

##### Sisera

See how you translated this name in Judges 4:2.

#### Judges 21

##### The Kishon River swept them away

Because of the heavy rain the river flooded quickly causing the chariots to be stuck in the mud and drowning many soldiers. Alternate translation: "The Kishon River flooded and swept away Sisera's soldiers"

##### Kishon

See how you translated this in Judges 4:6.

##### March on my soul, be strong

Here "soul" refers to the whole person. The word "my" refers to Deborah. Alternate translation: "I tell myself to march on and to be strong"

#### Judges 22

##### Then came the sound of horses' hooves—galloping, the galloping of his mighty ones

This describes the sound of many horses running away from the battle. Alternate translation: "Then I heard the sound of horses running away. Sisera's mighty horses were running away"

##### galloping

runninb quickly

#### Judges 23

##### Curse Meroz

Here "Meroz" represents the people who lived there. Alternate translation: "Curse the people of Meroz"

##### Meroz

This is the name of a city.

#### Judges 24

##### Jael

See how you translated this name in Judges 4:18.

##### Heber

See how you translated this name in Judges 4:11.

##### Kenite

Translate the name of this people group as you did in Judges 1:16.

#### Judges 25

##### brought him butter

Here "butter" refers to curdled milk. This was the best milk and a favorite drink among Jael's people. Alternate translation: "brought him yogurt" or "brought him curds"

##### a dish fit for princes

This phrase means the dish was of the best quality because princes were given the best things.

#### Judges 26

##### She put her hand to the tent peg

"Jael grabbed the tent peg with her left hand"

##### tent peg

This is a pointed piece of wood or metal, like a large nail, that is hammered into the ground to hold down a corner of a tent. See how you translated this in Judges 4:21.

##### her right hand to the laborer's hammer

This can be stated as a complete sentence. Alternate translation: "she grabbed a hammer with her right hand"

##### hammer

This is a heavy tool made of wood used to hit a tent peg into the ground. See how you translated this in Judges 4:21.

##### Sisera

See how you translated this man's name in Judges 4:2.

#### Judges 27

##### limp

without strength or movement

##### he was violently killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "she killed him" or "he died"

#### Judges 28

##### the lattice

This is a frame in the window made of crossed wood.

##### Why has it taken his chariot so long to come? Why have the hoofbeats of the horses that pull his chariots been delayed?

Both of these questions mean the same thing. These two statements can be combined. Alternate translation: "Why is it taking Sisera so long to arrive home"

##### taken his chariot ... Why have the hoofbeats of the horses that pull his chariots

Both of these represent Sisera. Alternate translation: "taken Sisera ... Why has he"

#### Judges 29

##### wisest princesses

A "princess" is the daughter of a king, but a "princess" can also mean female advisers to the king's family. Alternate translation: "wisest ladies"

##### she gave herself the same answer

"she said to herself the same thing"

#### Judges 30

##### Have they not found and divided up the plunder—a womb ... plunder?

The women use a question to emphasize that they believe this is what certainly happened. Alternate translation: "They must have so much plunder that it is taking a long time to divide it. They have ... plunder."

##### a womb, two wombs for every man ... of those who plunder?

The women use a question to emphasize that they believe this is what certainly happened. Alternate translation: "There must be a womb, two wombs for every man ... of those who plunder."

##### a womb, two wombs for every man

Here "womb" represents a woman. Sisera's mother believes Sisera's men have captured many women. Alternate translation: "Each soldier will receive a woman or two"

##### dyed fabric

"colored cloth" or "colored clothes"

##### embroidered

having designs made of colored threads

##### for the necks of those who plunder

Here "necks" represents Sisera's soldiers. Alternate translation: "for the soldiers who plunder to wear"

#### Judges 31

##### like the sun when it rises in its might

The people of Israel wish to be like the sun that rises because no nation's army is powerful enough to stop the sunrise.

##### the land had peace

Here "the land" represents the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "and the people of Israel lived peacefully"

##### for forty years

"for 40 years"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Judges 5:4

##### When did the earth shake?

The earth shook when Yahweh went out from Seir, when he marched from Edom.

#### Judges 5:6

##### What paths did those who walked use?

Those who walked used the winding paths.

#### Judges 5:8

##### What was not seen among forty thousand in Israel?

Neither shields nor spears were seen among forty thousand in Israel.

#### Judges 5:10

##### What things were used as saddles on the white donkeys?

Rugs were used as saddles on the white donkeys .

#### Judges 5:13

##### To whom did the people of Yahweh come down?

The people of Yahweh came down to Deborah among the warriors.

#### Judges 5:15

##### What was Issachar doing with Barak?

Issachar was rushing after Barak into the valley under his command.

#### Judges 5:18

##### What would Zebulun risk?

Zebulun would risk their lives to the point of death.

#### Judges 5:20

##### What fought against Sisera from their paths across the heavens?

The stars fought against Sisera from their paths across the heavens.

#### Judges 5:24

##### Why did the angel of Yahweh curse Meroz?

The angel of Yahweh cursed Meroz because they did not come to help Yahweh.

#### Judges 5:26

##### To what did Jael put her hand?

She put her hand to the tent peg, and her right hand to the workman's hammer.

#### Judges 5:28

##### Where did the mother of Sisera look out?

The mother of Sisera looked out of a window, through the lattice.

#### Judges 5:31

##### Like what should those who love Yahweh be?

Those who love Yahweh should be like the sun when it rises in its might.

### Chapter 6

**1** The people of Israel did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, and he gave them into the hand of Midian for seven years. **2** The power of Midian oppressed Israel. Because of Midian, the people of Israel made shelters for themselves from the dens in the hills, the caves, and the strongholds. **3** It happened that any time the Israelites planted their crops, the Midianites and the Amalekites and the people from the east would attack the Israelites. **4** They would set up their camp on the land and destroy the crops, all the way to Gaza. They would leave no food in Israel, neither sheep nor cattle nor donkeys. **5** Whenever they and their livestock and tents came up, they would come as a swarm of locusts, and it was impossible to count either the people or their camels. They invaded the land in order to destroy it. **6** Midian weakened the people of Israel so severely that the people of Israel called out to Yahweh.

**7** When the people of Israel called out to Yahweh because of Midian, **8** Yahweh sent a prophet to the people of Israel. The prophet said to them, "This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: 'I brought you up from Egypt; I brought you out of the house of slavery. **9** I rescued you from the hand of the Egyptians, and from the hand of all who were oppressing you. I drove them out before you, and I gave you their land. **10** I said to you, "I am Yahweh your God; I commanded you not to worship the gods of the Amorites, in whose land you are living." But you have not obeyed my voice.'"

**11** Now the angel of Yahweh came and sat under the oak in Ophrah, which belonged to Joash (the Abiezrite), while Gideon, Joash's son, was threshing wheat in the winepress—to hide it from the Midianites. **12** The angel of Yahweh appeared to him and said to him, "Yahweh is with you, you strong warrior!" **13** Gideon said to him, "Oh, my master, if Yahweh is with us, why then has all this happened to us? Where are all his wonderful deeds that our fathers told us about, when they said, 'Did not Yahweh bring us up from Egypt?' But now Yahweh has abandoned us and gave us into the hand of Midian." **14** Yahweh looked at him and said, "Go in the strength you already have. Deliver Israel from the hand of Midian. Have I not sent you?" **15** Gideon said to him, "Please, Lord, how can I deliver Israel? See, my clan is the weakest in Manasseh, and I am the least important in my father's house." **16** Yahweh said to him, "I will be with you, and you will defeat the entire Midianite army as one man." **17** Gideon said to him, "If you are pleased with me, then give me a sign that it is you who is speaking to me. **18** Please, do not leave here, until I come to you and bring out my gift and set it before you." Yahweh said, "I will wait until you return."

**19** Gideon went and prepared a young goat and from an ephah of flour he made unleavened bread. He put the meat in a basket, and he put the broth in a pot and brought them to him under the oak tree, and presented them. **20** The angel of God said to him, "Take the meat and the unleavened bread and put them on this rock, and pour out the broth over them." That is what Gideon did. **21** Then the angel of Yahweh reached out with the end of the staff in his hand. With it he touched the flesh and the unleavened bread; a fire went up out of the rock and consumed the meat and the unleavened bread. Then the angel of Yahweh went away and Gideon could no longer see him. **22** Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" **23** Yahweh said to him, "Peace to you! Do not be afraid, you will not die." **24** So Gideon built an altar there to Yahweh. He called it, "Yahweh is Peace." To this day it still stands at Ophrah of the clan of Abiezer.

**25** That night Yahweh said to him, "Take your father's bull, and a second bull that is seven years old, and tear down the altar of Baal that belongs to your father, and cut down the Asherah that is beside it. **26** Build an altar to Yahweh your God on the top of this place of refuge, and construct it the correct way. Offer the second bull as a burnt offering, using the wood from the Asherah that you cut down." **27** So Gideon took ten of his servants and did as Yahweh had told him. But because he was too afraid of his father's household and the men of the town to do it during the day, he did it at night.

**28** In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down, and the Asherah that was beside it was cut down, and the second bull had been offered on the altar that had been built. **29** The men of the city said to one another, "Who has done this?" When they talked with others and searched for answers, they said, "Gideon son of Joash has done this thing." **30** Then the men of the town said to Joash, "Bring out your son so that he may be put to death, because he broke down the altar of Baal, and because he cut down the Asherah beside it." **31** Joash said to all who opposed him, "Will you plead the case for Baal? Will you save him? Whoever pleads the case for him, let him be put to death while it is still morning. If Baal is a god, let him defend himself when someone breaks his altar down." **32** Therefore on that day they called Gideon "Jerub-Baal," because he said, "Let Baal defend himself against him," because Gideon broke down Baal's altar.

**33** Now all the Midianites, the Amalekites, and the people of the east gathered together. They crossed over the Jordan and camped in the Valley of Jezreel. **34** But the Spirit of Yahweh clothed Gideon. Gideon blew a trumpet, calling out the clan of Abiezer, so they might follow him. **35** He sent messengers all throughout Manasseh, and they too, were called out to follow him. He also sent messengers to Asher, Zebulun, and Naphtali, and they went up to meet him.

**36** Gideon said to God, "If you intend to use me to save Israel, as you have said— **37** Look, I am putting a woolen fleece on the threshing floor. If there is dew only on the fleece, and it is dry on all the ground, then I will know that you will use me to save Israel, as you said." **38** This is what happened—Gideon rose early the next morning, he pressed the fleece together, and wrung out the dew from the fleece, enough to fill a bowl with water. **39** Then Gideon said to God, "Do not be angry with me, I will speak one more time. Please allow me one more test using the fleece. This time make the fleece dry, and let there be dew on all the ground around it." **40** God did what he asked for that night. The fleece was dry, and there was dew on all the ground around it.

# Judges 6 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a section about Gideon. (Chapters 6-8)

#### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Israel's punishment

In Judges, Israel's actions are connected to their obedience to Yahweh. When Israel does evil, they are oppressed. (See: evil and oppress)

#### Judges 01

##### what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [Judges 2:11]

##### the hand of Midian

Here "Midian" represents the people of Midian. Also, "hand" represents control. Alternate translation: "the control of the people of Midian" or "the control of the Midianites"

#### Judges 02

##### The power of Midian oppressed Israel

Here "the power of Midian" refers to the people of Midian. Alternate translation: "The people of Midian were more powerful than the people of Israel and they oppressed them"

##### dens

places in the rocky cliffs that would provide shelter

#### Judges 03

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 04

##### They would set up their camp

"The army would set up their tents"

#### Judges 05

##### Whenever they and their livestock and tents came up

The land of Midian was south of the land of Israel, near the Red Sea. It was common to use the phrase "came up" when speaking of traveling from Midian to Israel. Alternate translation: "Whenever the Midianites brought their livestock and tents to the land of Israel"

##### they would come as a swarm of locusts

The Midianites are compared to a swarm of locusts because they came in with a great number of people and their livestock ate everything that grew.

##### it was impossible to count

This is an exaggeration, a hyperbole, showing the number is very great.

#### Judges 06

##### Midian weakened

Here "Midian" represents the people of Midian.

##### called out to Yahweh

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "prayed to Yahweh for help"

#### Judges 07

##### called out to Yahweh

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "prayed to Yahweh for help"

##### because of Midian

Here "Midian" represents the people of Midian. Alternate translation: "because of the Midianites"

#### Judges 08

##### I brought you up from Egypt

"I led you out of Egypt"

##### the house of slavery

Moses speaks of Egypt as if it were a house where people keep slaves. Alternate translation: "the place where you were slaves"

#### Judges 09

##### from the hand

In this phrase "hand" represents power or control.

#### Judges 10

##### obeyed my voice

Here "my voice" represents what Yahweh commanded. Alternate translation: "obeyed my command" or "obeyed me"

#### Judges 11

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the story. Here the narrator starts to tell a new part of the story.

##### Ophrah

This is the name of a town.

##### Abiezrite

This is a people group named after their ancestor Abiezer.

##### was threshing wheat in the winepress

Gideon was beating the wheat against the floor to separate the wheat grain from the rest of the wheat plant.

#### Judges 12

##### appeared to him

"went to him"

#### Judges 13

##### my master

Gideon uses the word "master" as a polite way to greet a stranger. He does not realize he is speaking to Yahweh in the form of an angel or a man.

##### Where are all his wonderful deeds that our fathers told us about, when they said, 'Did not Yahweh bring us up from Egypt?'

Gideon uses a question to challenge the stranger's statement that Yahweh was with him. Also, the direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "We have not seen any wonderful deeds like the ones our fathers told us about when Yahweh brought them up from Egypt."

##### gave us into the hand of Midian

The phrase "gave us into" means Yahweh allowed the Israelites to be defeated. Alternate translation: "allowed the Midianites to defeat us"

##### gave us into the hand

Here "hand" represents power or control.

##### of Midian

Here "Midian" represents the people of Midian. Alternate translation: "of the Midianites"

#### Judges 14

##### Yahweh looked at him

"Yahweh looked at Gideon"

##### from the hand

Here "hand" represents power or control.

##### of Midian

Here "Midian" represents the people of Midian. Alternate translation: "of the Midianites"

##### Have I not sent you?

Yahweh uses a question to ensure Gideon that he is sending him. Here "sent" means Yahweh has appointed Gideon with a specific task. Alternate translation: "I, Yahweh, am sending you!"

#### Judges 15

##### Please, Lord

Gideon now calls the person "Lord" instead of "my master" as in Judges 6:13. Here it seems Gideon either knows or suspects that he is speaking with Yahweh.

##### how can I deliver Israel?

Gideon uses a question to emphasize that he does not think he can rescue the Israelites. Alternate translation: "I cannot possibly rescue the Israelites!"

##### See, my clan

"Look at my clan and me and you will see that it"

##### in Manasseh

"in the tribe of Manasseh"

##### in my father's house

Here "house" represents a family. Alternate translation: "in my father's family" or "in my family"

#### Judges 16

##### I will be with you

Here "be with you" is an idiom that means Yahweh will help and bless Gideon.

##### as one man

You can state the full meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "as easily as if you were fighting only one man"

#### Judges 17

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 18

##### set it before you

"place it in front of you"

#### Judges 19

##### from an ephah of flour

If it is necessary to use a modern measurement; here is one way of doing it. Alternate translation: "with 22 liters of flour"

##### broth

water that has had food, such as meat, cooked in it

##### them to him

"them to the angel of God"

#### Judges 20

##### angel of God

This is the same as the angel of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "God, who was in the form of an angel" or "God"

#### Judges 21

##### angel of Yahweh

In 6:11-24 Yahweh appears to Gideon in the form of an angel. See how you translated this in Judges 6:11.

##### went away

"disappeared"

#### Judges 22

##### angel of Yahweh

In 6:11-24 Yahweh appears to Gideon in the form of an angel. See how you translated this in Judges 6:11.

##### Ah, Lord Yahweh!

The word "Ah" here shows that Gideon was very frightened.

##### seen the angel of Yahweh face to face

This phrase refers to two people being close to each other. Alternate translation: "really seen the angel of Yahweh"

#### Judges 23

##### Yahweh said to him

Apparently Yahweh spoke to Gideon from heaven.

#### Judges 24

##### To this day

This means to the time when the book of Judges was written.

##### Ophrah

Translate the name of this town as you did in Judges 6:11.

##### the clan of Abiezer

Translate the name of this people group as you did in Judges 6:11.

#### Judges 25

##### a second bull

The word "second" is the ordinal number for "two." Alternate translation: "another bull"

##### that is beside it

"that is beside the altar of Baal"

#### Judges 26

##### on the top of this place of refuge

The city of Ophrah was on top of a hill. Israelites fled there for refuge from the Midianites.

##### construct it the correct way

"place the stones in an orderly manner" or "and build it properly"

#### Judges 27

##### did as Yahweh had told him

This refers to Yahweh's command in [Judges 6:25-26](./25.md).

#### Judges 28

##### got up

"got up out of bed" or "woke up"

##### the altar of Baal was broken down, and the Asherah that was beside it was cut down, and the second bull had been offered on the altar that had been built

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they noticed that someone had broken down the altar of Baal, cut down the Asherah that was beside it, and built an altar and sacrificed the second bull on it"

#### Judges 29

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 30

##### he may be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "we may kill him as punishment"

#### Judges 31

##### Will you plead the case for Baal?

Joash uses a question to emphasize that a human should not have to defend a god. Alternate translation: "You should not have to defend Baal."

##### plead the case

"make a defense" or "give an excuse"

##### Will you save him?

Joash uses a question to emphasize that a human should not have to rescue a god. Alternate translation: "You should not have to save Baal."

#### Judges 32

##### Jerub-Baal

This is another name for Gideon. It means "let Baal defend himself."

##### because he said

"because Joash said"

#### Judges 33

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the story. Here the narrator starts to tell a new part of the story.

##### gathered together

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "gathered together as an army"

#### Judges 34

##### clothed Gideon

The topic of this metaphor is that because of what the Spirit did, Gideon had special powers. Possible images are 1) the Spirit came over or came on or covered Gideon like a garment, thus giving Gideon special powers. Alternate translation: "came over Gideon" or "took control of Gideon" Or 2) the Spirit covered himself with Gideon and so acted through him.

##### clan of Abiezer

Translate the name of this people group as you did in Judges 6:11.

##### so they might follow him

The words "to battle" are understood. Alternate translation: "so they might follow him to battle"

#### Judges 35

##### and they too, were called out to follow him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "calling them out to follow him"

##### to Asher, Zebulun, and Naphtali

These all represent the people of each tribe. Alternate translation: "to the tribes of Asher, Zebulun, and Naphtali"

#### Judges 36

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 37

##### woolen fleece

the woolly coat of a sheep

##### dew

water that forms on plants during the night

##### then I will know that you will

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "this will be a sign from you, and then I will know that you will"

#### Judges 38

##### Gideon rose

"Gideon got out of bed"

##### wrung

twist and squeeze something to remove water

#### Judges 39

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 40

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Judges 6:2

##### What did the people of Israel do because of Midian?

Because of Midian, the people of Israel made shelters for themselves from the dens in the hills, the caves, and the strongholds.

#### Judges 6:3

##### What happened any time the Israelites planted their crops?

Any time the Israelites planted their crops, the Midianites, and the Amalekites, and the people from the east would attack the Israelites.

#### Judges 6:5

##### How many Midianites and Amalekites would attack?

It was impossible to count them.

#### Judges 6:10

##### In whose land were the people of Israel living?

They were living in the land of the Amorites.

#### Judges 6:11

##### Why was Gideon separating out the wheat by beating it on the floor, in the winepress?

Gideon was separating out the wheat by beating it on the floor, in the winepress to hide it from the Midianites.

#### Judges 6:13

##### What did Gideon think Yahweh had done to the people of Israel?

Gideon thought Yahweh had abandoned them and had given them over to the power of Midian.

#### Judges 6:15

##### Why did Gideon think he could not deliver Israel?

Gideon thought he could not deliver Israel because his family was the weakest in Manasseh, and he was the least important in his father's house.

#### Judges 6:18

##### Why did Yahweh wait for Gideon?

Yahweh waited for Gideon to bring him a gift.

#### Judges 6:20

##### Where did the angel of God tell Gideon to put the meat and unleavened bread?

The angel of God told Gideon to put the meat and unleavened bread on a rock.

#### Judges 6:21

##### What happened when the angel of Yahweh reached out with the end of the staff in his hand?

When the angel of Yahweh reached out with the end of the staff in his hand, he touched the flesh and the unleavened bread; a fire went up out of the rock and consumed the meat and the unleavened bread.

#### Judges 6:22

##### Why was Gideon afraid when he understood that he had seen the angel of Yahweh?

Gideon was afraid when he understood that he had seen the angel of Yahweh because he thought he would die.

#### Judges 6:23

##### Why was Gideon afraid when he understood that he had seen the angel of Yahweh?

Gideon was afraid when he understood that he had seen the angel of Yahweh because he thought he would die.

#### Judges 6:26

##### What did Yahweh tell Gideon to build on the top of the place of refuge?

Yahweh told him to build an altar to Yahweh on the top of the place of refuge.

#### Judges 6:27

##### Why did Gideon do what Yahweh told him to do at night?

Gideon did what Yahweh told him to do at night because he was too afraid of his father's household and the men of the town to do it during the day.

#### Judges 6:30

##### Why did the men of the town want to put Gideon to death?

The men wanted to put Gideon to death, because he pulled apart the altar of Baal, and because he cut down the Asherah beside it.

#### Judges 6:32

##### Why was Gideon given the name, "Jerub Baal"?

Gideon was given the name, "Jerub Baal," because he said, "Let Baal defend himself against him," because Gideon pulled apart his altar.

#### Judges 6:36

##### What did Gideon do to find out if Yahweh intended to use him to save Israel?

Gideon put a woolen fleece on the threshing floor. He said that if there was dew only on the fleece, and it was dry on all the ground, then he would know that Yahweh would use him to save Israel.

#### Judges 6:37

##### What did Gideon do to find out if Yahweh intended to use him to save Israel?

Gideon put a woolen fleece on the threshing floor. He said that if there was dew only on the fleece, and it was dry on all the ground, then he would know that Yahweh would use him to save Israel.

#### Judges 6:38

##### When Gideon pressed the fleece together, and wrung out the dew from the fleece, how much water was there?

When Gideon pressed the fleece together, and wrung out the dew from the fleece, there was enough water to fill a bowl.

#### Judges 6:39

##### What was Gideon's second test for God?

Gideon's second test was for God to make the fleece dry, and let there be dew on all the ground around it.

### Chapter 7

**1** Then Jerub-Baal (that is, Gideon) rose up early, and all the people who were with him, and they encamped beside the spring of Harod. The camp of Midian was to their north in the valley near the hill of Moreh.

**2** Yahweh said to Gideon, "There are too many soldiers for me to give you victory over the Midianites, so that Israel may not boast over me, saying, 'Our own power has saved us.' **3** Now therefore, proclaim in the ears of the people and say, 'Whoever is afraid, whoever trembles, let him return and depart from Mount Gilead.'" So twenty-two thousand people went away, and ten thousand remained.

**4** Yahweh said to Gideon, "The people are still too many. Take them down to the water, and I will make their number smaller for you there. If I say to you, 'This one will go with you,' he will go with you; but if I say, 'This one will not go with you,' he will not go." **5** So Gideon brought the people down to the water, and Yahweh said to him, "Separate everyone who laps up the water, as a dog laps, from those who kneel down to drink." **6** Three hundred men lapped. The rest of the men kneeled down to drink water. **7** Yahweh said to Gideon, "With the three hundred men who lapped, I will rescue you and give you victory over the Midianites. Let every other man go back to his own place." **8** So those who were chosen took their supplies and their trumpets. Gideon sent away all the men of Israel, every man to his tent, but he kept the three hundred men. Now the Midian camp was down below him in the valley.

**9** That same night Yahweh said to him, "Get up! Attack the camp, for I am going to give you victory over it. **10** But if you are afraid to go down, go down to the camp with Purah your servant, **11** and listen to what they are saying, and your courage will be strengthened to attack the camp." So Gideon went with Purah his servant, down to the guard posts of the camp. **12** The Midianites, the Amalekites, and all the people of the east settled along in the valley, as thick as a cloud of locusts. Their camels were more than could be counted; they were more in number than the grains of the sand on the seashore. **13** When Gideon arrived there, a man was telling a dream to his companion. The man said, "Look! I had a dream, and I saw a round loaf of barley bread tumbling into the camp of Midian. It came to the tent, and hit it so hard that it fell down and turned it upside down, so that it lay flat." **14** The other man said, "This is nothing other than the sword of Gideon the son of Joash, a man of Israel. God has given him victory over Midian and all their army."

**15** When Gideon heard the retelling of the dream and its interpretation, he bowed down in worship. He went back to the camp of Israel and said, "Get up! Yahweh has given you victory over the Midian army." **16** He divided the three hundred men into three groups, and he gave them all rams' horns and empty jars, with torches inside each jar. **17** He said to them, "Look at me and do what I do. Watch! When I come to the edge of the camp, you must do what I do. **18** When I blow the ram's horn, I and all who are with me, then blow your ram's horns also on every side of the entire camp and shout, 'For Yahweh and for Gideon!'"

**19** So Gideon and the hundred men who were with him came to the edge of the camp, right at the beginning of the middle watch. Just as the Midianites were changing guard, they blew the rams' horns and broke the jars that were in their hands. **20** The three companies blew the rams' horns and broke the jars. They held the torches in their left hands and the rams' horns in their right hands to blow them. They shouted out, "The sword of Yahweh and of Gideon." **21** Every man stood in his place around the camp and all the Midianite army ran. They shouted and ran away. **22** When they blew the three hundred rams' horns, Yahweh set every Midianite man's sword against his comrades and against all their army. The army fled as far as Beth Shittah toward Zererah, as far as the border of Abel Meholah, near Tabbath. **23** The men of Israel from Naphtali, Asher, and all Manasseh were called out, and they went after Midian.

**24** Gideon sent messengers throughout all the hill country of Ephraim, saying, "Go down against Midian and take control of the Jordan River, as far as Beth Barah, to stop them." So all the men of Ephraim were summoned and took control of the waters, as far as Beth Barah and the Jordan River. **25** They captured the two princes of Midian, Oreb and Zeeb. They killed Oreb at the rock of Oreb, and they killed Zeeb at the winepress of Zeeb. They went after the Midianites, and they brought the heads of Oreb and Zeeb to Gideon, who was on the other side of the Jordan.

# Judges 7 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The account of Gideon continues in this chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### God gets all of the credit

God said, "There are too many soldiers for me to give you victory over the Midianites. Make sure that Israel will not boast against me, saying, 'Our own power has saved us.'" By lowering the number of fighting soldiers, it emphasizes that the victory is achieved through God's power. (See: glory)

#### Judges 01

##### Jerub-Baal

This is another name for Gideon. See how you translated his name in Judges 6:32.

##### they encamped

"they set up their camp"

##### spring of Harod ... hill of Moreh

These are the names of places.

##### The camp of Midian was to their north

Here "Midian" represents the Midianite army. Alternate translation: "The Midianite army set up their camp to the north of the Israelite army"

#### Judges 02

##### for me to give you victory over the Midianites

The word "victory" is an abstract noun that can be translated as a verb or an adjective. Alternate translation: "for me to allow you to defeat the Midianites" or "for me to cause you to be victorious over the Midianites"

##### Our own power has saved us

Here "power" represents the people themselves. Alternate translation: "We have saved ourselves without God's help"

#### Judges 03

##### Now

This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

##### proclaim in the ears of the people

Here "the ears" refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "proclaim to the people"

##### Whoever is afraid, whoever trembles

Both of these phrases have the same meaning.

##### trembles

This word describes fear that causes a person to uncontrollably shake. Alternate translation: "shakes with fear"

##### let him return

You can make explicit where he will go. Alternate translation: "let him return to his home"

##### Mount Gilead

This is the name of a mountain in the region of Gilead.

##### twenty-two thousand

"22,000"

##### ten thousand remained

The word "people" or "men" is understood. Alternate translation: "10,000 people remained" or "10,000 men remained"

##### ten thousand

"10,000"

#### Judges 04

##### I will make their number smaller for you there

Here "number" represents the army. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "there, I will show you who to send home so the army will have less men"

#### Judges 05

##### Gideon brought

The word "brought" can be translated as "took" or "led."

##### laps

to drink by licking with the tongue

#### Judges 06

##### Three hundred men

"300 men"

#### Judges 07

##### three hundred men

"300 men"

##### I will rescue you and give you victory

Here "you" is plural and refers to Gideon and the Israelites.

#### Judges 08

##### So those who were chosen

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So those whom Yahweh chose"

##### took their supplies and their trumpets

Here "their" refers to the Israelite soldiers who were leaving the army.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the story. Here the narrator starts to tell a new part of the story.

#### Judges 09

##### Attack the camp, for I am going to give you victory over it

Here "camp" refers to the whole Midianite army. The word "victory" is an abstract noun that can be translated as a verb or an adjective. Alternate translation: "Attack the Midianites at their camp, for I am going to help you defeat them" or "Attack the Midianites at their camp, for I am going to cause you to be victorious over them"

#### Judges 10

##### afraid to go down

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "afraid to go down to attack"

##### Purah

This is the name of a man.

#### Judges 11

##### your courage will be strengthened

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what you hear will be encourage you"

##### guard posts

places around the edge of an area where soldiers stand to watch for an enemy army

#### Judges 12

##### as thick as a cloud of locusts

Here "cloud" means a swarm. The author speaks of the army as if it were a swarm of locusts to emphasize how many soldiers there were.

##### Their camels were more ... in number than the grains of the sand on the seashore

The author uses a hyperbole, an exaggeration, to emphasize that there were very many camels.

##### Their camels were more than could be counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Their camels were more than anyone could count"

#### Judges 13

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 14

##### This is nothing other than the sword of Gideon

Here "the sword of Gideon" refers to Gideon's army attacking. Alternate translation: "The loaf of barley bread in your dream must be the army of Gideon"

##### God has given him victory over Midian

This future event is spoken of as if it were a past event. This emphasizes that it will certainly happen. Alternate translation: "God will certainly help the Israelites defeat the Midianites"

#### Judges 15

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 16

##### three hundred men

"300 men"

#### Judges 17

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 18

##### For Yahweh and for Gideon!

The words "we fight" are implied. Alternate translation: "We fight for Yahweh and for Gideon!"

#### Judges 19

##### hundred men

"100 men"

##### right at the beginning of the middle watch

The beginning of the middle watch would be around 10 o'clock at night.

#### Judges 20

##### The sword of Yahweh and of Gideon

Here "sword" refers to their fighting. Alternate translation: "We fight for Yahweh and for Gideon"

#### Judges 21

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 22

##### three hundred rams' horns

"300 rams' horns"

##### Yahweh set every Midianite man's sword against his comrades

Here "sword" refers to their attack with the use of the sword. Alternate translation: "Yahweh caused every Midianite man to fight against his fellow soldiers"

##### Beth Shittah ... Zererah ... Abel Meholah ... Tabbath

These are the names of towns and cities.

#### Judges 23

##### The men of Israel from Naphtali, Asher, and all Manasseh were called out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Gideon called out the Israelites from the tribes of Naphtali, Asher, and all Mannasseh"

#### Judges 24

##### Beth Barah

This is the name of a town.

##### took control of the waters, as far as Beth Barah and the Jordan River

"took control of the area of the Jordan River as far south as Beth Barah"

#### Judges 25

##### at the rock of Oreb ... at the winepress of Zeeb

The places were given these names after the Israelites killed Oreb and Zeeb there.

##### Oreb ... Zeeb

These are names of men.

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Judges 7:2

##### Why did Yahweh have the fearful soldiers return?

Yahweh had the fearful soldiers return so that Israel could not boast against Yahweh saying, "Our own power has saved us."

#### Judges 7:3

##### Why did Yahweh have the fearful soldiers return?

Yahweh had the fearful soldiers return so that Israel could not boast against Yahweh saying, "Our own power has saved us."

#### Judges 7:4

##### Why did Yahweh tell Gideon to take the soldiers down to the water?

Yahweh wanted to make the number of soldiers smaller by telling Gideon which ones would go with him.

#### Judges 7:5

##### How did Yahweh tell Gideon to separate the soldiers?

Yahweh told Gideon to separate everyone who lapped up the water, as a dog laps.

#### Judges 7:7

##### How many soldiers did Gideon keep?

Gideon kept three hundred soldiers and sent the rest home.

#### Judges 7:8

##### How many soldiers did Gideon keep?

Gideon kept three hundred soldiers and sent the rest home.

#### Judges 7:10

##### If Gideon was afraid, what would strengthen Gideon's courage?

If Gideon was afraid, he was told to go down to the camp, and listen to what they were saying, and his courage would be strengthened to attack the camp.

#### Judges 7:11

##### If Gideon was afraid, what would strengthen Gideon's courage?

If Gideon was afraid, he was told to go down to the camp, and listen to what they were saying, and his courage would be strengthened to attack the camp.

#### Judges 7:13

##### When one man was telling a dream to his companion, who did the companion say the dream was about?

When one man was telling a dream to his companion, the companion said the dream was about Gideon. God had given him victory over Midian and all their army.

#### Judges 7:14

##### When one man was telling a dream to his companion, who did the companion say the dream was about?

When one man was telling a dream to his companion, the companion said the dream was about Gideon. God had given him victory over Midian and all their army.

#### Judges 7:16

##### What did Gideon give his three hundred soldiers?

Gideon gave them all trumpets and empty jars, with torches inside each jar.

#### Judges 7:19

##### When did Gideon's soldiers blow the trumpets and break the jars that were in their hands?

Just as the Midianites were changing the guard, Gideon's soldiers blew the trumpets and broke the jars that were in their hands.

#### Judges 7:22

##### When the soldiers blew the three hundred trumpets, what did Yahweh do?

When they blew the three hundred trumpets, Yahweh set every Midianite man's sword against his comrads and against all their army.

#### Judges 7:24

##### How far did the men of Ephraim gather together and take control of the waters?

The men of Ephraim gathered together and took control of the waters, as far as Beth Barah and the Jordan River.

### Chapter 8

**1** The men of Ephraim said to Gideon, "What is this you have done to us? You did not call us when you went to fight against Midian." Then they had a violent argument with him. **2** He said to them, "What have I done now compared to you? Are not the gleanings of Ephraim's grapes better than the full grape harvest of Abiezer? **3** God has given you victory over the princes of Midian—Oreb and Zeeb! What have I accomplished compared to you?" Their anger toward him died down when he said this.

**4** Gideon came to the Jordan and crossed over it, he and the three hundred men who were with him. They were exhausted, yet they still kept up the pursuit. **5** He said to the men of Sukkoth, "Please give loaves of bread to the people who follow me, for they are exhausted, and I am pursuing Zebah and Zalmunna, the kings of Midian." **6** Then the officials of Sukkoth said, "Are the hands of Zebah and Zalmunna now in your hand? Why should we give bread to your army?" **7** Gideon said, "When Yahweh has given us victory over Zebah and Zalmunna, I will thresh your skin with desert thorns and briers." **8** He went up from there to Peniel and spoke to the people there in the same way, but the men of Peniel answered him just as the men of Sukkoth had answered. **9** He spoke also to the men of Peniel and said, "When I come again in peace, I will break down this tower."

**10** Now Zebah and Zalmunna were in Karkor with their army, about fifteen thousand men, all who remained out of the entire army of the people of the East, for there had fallen 120,000 men who drew the sword. **11** Gideon went up the road taken by tent dwellers, past Nobah and Jogbehah. He defeated the enemy army, because they were not expecting an attack. **12** Zebah and Zalmunna fled, and as Gideon pursued them, he captured the two kings of Midian—Zebah and Zalmunna—and set their whole army into a panic.

**13** Gideon, son of Joash, returned from the battle going through the pass of Heres. **14** He caught a young man of Sukkoth and questioned him. The young man wrote down the names of seventy-seven officials and elders of Sukkoth. **15** Gideon came to the men of Sukkoth and said, "Look at Zebah and Zalmunna, about whom you mocked me and said, 'Have you already conquered Zebah and Zalmunna? We do not know that we should give bread to your army.'" **16** Gideon took the elders of the city, and he punished the men of Sukkoth with the desert thorns and briers. **17** Then he broke down the tower of Peniel and killed the men of that city.

**18** Then Gideon said to Zebah and Zalmunna, "What kind of men did you kill at Tabor?" They answered, "As you are, so were they. Every one of them looked like the son of a king." **19** Gideon said, "They were my brothers, the sons of my mother. As Yahweh lives, if you had saved them alive, I would not kill you." **20** He said to Jether (his firstborn), "Get up and kill them!" But the young man did not draw his sword for he was afraid, because he was still a young boy. **21** Then Zebah and Zalmunna said, "Get up yourself and kill us! For as the man is, so is his strength." Gideon rose and killed Zebah and Zalmunna. He also took off the crescent-shaped ornaments that were on their camels' necks.

**22** Then the men of Israel said to Gideon, "Rule over us—you, your son, and your grandson—because you have saved us out of the hand of Midian." **23** Gideon said to them, "I will not rule over you, neither will my son rule over you. Yahweh will rule over you." **24** Gideon said to them, "Let me make a request of you, that every one of you give me the earrings from his plunder."(The Midianites had golden earrings because they were Ishmaelites.) **25** They answered, "We are glad to give them to you." They spread out a cloak and every man threw on it the earrings from his plunder. **26** The weight of the golden earrings that he requested was 1,700 shekels of gold. This plunder was in addition to the crescent ornaments, the pendants, the purple clothing that was worn by the kings of Midian, and in addition to the chains that had been around their camels' necks. **27** Gideon made an ephod out of the earrings and put it in his city, in Ophrah, and all Israel prostituted themselves by worshiping it there. It became a trap for Gideon and for those in his house. **28** So Midian was subdued before the people of Israel and they did not raise their heads up again. So the land had peace for forty years in the days of Gideon.

**29** Jerub-Baal, son of Joash, went and lived in his own house. **30** Gideon had seventy sons who were his descendants, for he had many wives. **31** His concubine, who was in Shechem, also bore him a son, and Gideon gave him the name Abimelek. **32** Gideon, son of Joash, died at a good old age and was buried in the tomb of Joash his father, at Ophrah of the clan of Abiezer.

**33** It came about, as soon as Gideon was dead, the people of Israel turned again and prostituted themselves by worshiping the Baals. They made Baal-Berith their god. **34** The people of Israel did not remember to honor Yahweh, their God, who had rescued them from the hand of all their enemies on every side. **35** They did not keep their promises to the house of Jerub-Baal (that is, Gideon), in return for all the good he had done in Israel.

# Judges 8 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The account of Gideon concludes in this chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Sukkoth's refusal to help Gideon

The men of Sukkoth feared the Midianites more than Gideon. This is why they refused to help Gideon. By allying themselves with the Midianites, they aligned themselves against Yahweh. Because of this, Gideon treated them like he treated the Midianites.

#### Gideon refuses to be king

Gideon said to them, "I will not rule over you, neither will my son rule over you. Yahweh will rule over you." Although the book of Deuteronomy anticipates a king in Israel, it was sinful for Israel to desire to have a king. He did though take a share of everyone's plunder as a king would have done through taxes. This may serve as a warning to Israel about their desire to have a king. (See: sin)

#### Judges 01

##### What is this you have done to us?

The people of the tribe of Ephraim were rebuking Gideon with this rhetorical question for not including them in his army. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "You have not treated us fairly."

##### against Midian

Here "Midian" represents the Midianite army.

##### they had a violent argument with him

they argued angrily with him" or "they rebuked him severely"

#### Judges 02

##### General Information:

Gideon replies to the men from Ephraim.

##### What have I done now compared to you?

Gideon uses this question to honor the people of Ephraim. Alternate translation: "I have done very little compared with what you have done!"

##### Are not the gleanings of Ephraim's grapes better than the full grape harvest of Abiezer?

Gideon was calming the people of Ephraim with this rhetorical question. Alternate translation: "Certainly the grapes you people of Ephraim gleaned are better than what we the descendants of Abiezer gathered from the whole harvest!"

##### Are not the gleanings of Ephraim's grapes better than the full grape harvest of Abiezer?

Gideon and his army defeating the Medianites is spoken of as if it were a grape harvest. The people of Ephraim killing Oreb and Zeeb at the end of the battle is spoken of as if they were gleaning grapes at the end of the harvest. Alternate translation: "What you people of Ephraim did at the end of the battle is more important than what we descendants of Abiezer did at the beginning."

##### Abiezer

This is the name of one of Gideon's ancestors. Gideon used his name to refer to Abiezer's descendants and their land.

#### Judges 03

##### Oreb and Zeeb

See how you translated these names in Judges 7:25.

##### What have I accomplished compared to you?

Gideon uses this question to honor the people of Ephraim. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "What you have done is more important than what I have done."

##### died down

"became less"

#### Judges 04

##### the three hundred men

"the 300 men"

##### kept up the pursuit

The word "pursuit," an abstract noun, can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "continued to chase their enemies"

#### Judges 05

##### Zebah and Zalmunna

These are the names of men.

#### Judges 06

##### Are the hands of Zebah and Zalmunna now in your hand?

The leaders use a question to emphasize that the Israelites have not yet captured Zebah and Zalumnna. Alternate translation: "You have not captured Zebah and Zalmunna yet."

##### Are the hands of Zebah and Zalmunna

Here "hands" refer to the whole body.

##### now in your hand

Here "hand" represents power or control.

##### Why should we give bread to your army?

The leaders use a question to emphasize that they have no reason to give bread to the Israelites. Alternate translation: "We see no reason to give bread to your army."

#### Judges 07

##### I will thresh your skin with desert thorns and briers

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "I will make whips out of desert thorns and briers and use them to beat you and cut you"

##### thorns and briers

sharp, pointed pieces on vines or tree limbs that stick out and can cut people and animals

#### Judges 08

##### He went up from there

Here "He" refers to Gideon. Gideon represents himself and the soldiers following him. Alternate translation: "They left there" or "Gideon and his 300 men left there"

##### Peniel

The name of a place.

##### spoke to the people there in the same way

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "asked for food there in the same way" or "he also asked them for food"

#### Judges 09

##### When I come again in peace

This is a polite way of referring to the defeat of his enemies. Alternate translation: "After I have completely defeated the Midian army"

##### I will break down this tower

Here "I" refers to Gideon and represents himself and his men. Alternate translation: "My men and I will break down this tower"

#### Judges 10

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the story. Here the narrator starts to tell a new part of the story.

##### Zebah and Zalmunna

See how you translated these names in Judges 8:5.

##### Karkor

This is the name of a city.

##### fifteen thousand men

"15,000 men"

##### had fallen

This is a polite way of referring to people who died in battle. Alternate translation: "had been killed" or "had died in battle"

##### 120,000 men

"one hundred thousand men"

##### men who drew the sword

Here drawing the sword represents using the sword in battle. Possible meanings are 1) this phrase refers to soldiers who use swords in battle. Alternate translation: "swordsmen" or "men who fought with swords" or 2) this phrase refers to any soldiers. Alternate translation: "soldiers"

#### Judges 11

##### Gideon went up

Here "Gideon" represents himself and all of his soldiers. Alternate translation: "Gideon and his soldiers went up"

##### He defeated

Here "He" refers to Gideon and represents himself and all of his soldiers. Alternate translation: "Gideon and his soldiers defeated"

##### Nobah and Jogbehah

These are names of towns.

#### Judges 12

##### Zebah and Zalmunna

See how you translated these names in Judges 8:5.

##### panic

extreme fear or worry that makes someone unable to think or act normally

#### Judges 13

##### the pass of Heres

This is the name of a road that passes between two mountains.

#### Judges 14

##### questioned him

It can be stated explicitly what Gideon asked the young man. Alternate translation: "he asked him to identify all the names of the leaders in the town"

##### seventy-seven officials

"77 officials"

#### Judges 15

##### Zebah and Zalmunna

See how you translated these names in Judges 8:5.

##### Have you already conquered Zebah and Zalmunna?

Gideon quotes the people of Sukkoth as using a question to mock him. Alternate translation: "You have not yet conquered Zebah and Zalmunna."

#### Judges 16

##### Gideon took ... he punished

Here "Gideon" represents himself and his soldiers. Alternate translation: "Gideon and his soldiers took ... they punished"

##### thorns and briers

These are sharp, pointed pieces on vines or tree limbs that stick out and can cut people and animals. See how you translated this in Judges 8:7.

#### Judges 17

##### he broke

Gideon and his soldiers broke. Alternate translation: "Gideon and his soldiers broke"

##### Peniel

Translate the name of this city as you did in Judges 8:8.

#### Judges 18

##### Zebah and Zalmunna

See how you translated these names in Judges 8:5.

##### Tabor

Translate the name of this city as you did in Judges 4:6.

##### As you are, so were they

"They were just like you"

#### Judges 19

##### As Yahweh lives

This idiom is a religious oath used for emphasis that what he is about to say is true. Alternate translation: "I promise you that"

#### Judges 20

##### Jether

This is the name of Gideon's son.

#### Judges 21

##### For as the man is, so is his strength

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "It is a job for a man to do"

##### crescent

This is a curved shape with two points. This shape occurs when the moon is mostly covered in shadow.

##### ornaments

decorations

#### Judges 22

##### out of the hand of Midian

Here "hand" represents the power of Midian over Israel. Alternate translation: "from the power of Midian" or "from Midian"

##### of Midian

Here "Midian" represents the people of Midian. Alternate translation: "of the Midianites"

#### Judges 23

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 24

##### Gideon said to them

"Gideon said to the men of Israel"

##### earrings

jewelry worn on the ear

##### plunder

things stolen by force or taken off of people killed in war

##### The Midianites had golden earrings because they were Ishmaelites

Here the narrator tells background information about the Midianites.

#### Judges 25

##### cloak

clothing made from a large piece of fabric and worn over the shoulders as a coat

#### Judges 26

##### 1,700 shekels of gold

"one thousand seven hundred shekels of gold." If it is necessary to use modern weight units, here are two ways of doing it. Alternate translation: "18.7 kilograms of gold" or "about 20 kilograms of gold"

##### crescent ornaments

See how you translated this in Judges 8:21.

##### pendants

pieces of jewelry that hang at the end of the chains or cords of necklaces

##### that was worn by the kings of Midian

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the kings of Midian wore"

#### Judges 27

##### Gideon made an ephod out of the earrings

"Gideon used the gold from the earrings to make an ephod"

##### Ophrah

Translate the name of this city as you did in Judges 6:11.

##### all Israel prostituted themselves by worshiping it there

This speaks of worshiping a false god as if it were prostitution. Alternate translation: "the Israelites sinned against Yahweh by worshiping the ephod there"

##### all Israel

Here "all" is an exaggeration to emphasize that very many worshiped the garment. Alternate translation: "very many people in Israel worshiped the garment"

##### It became a trap for Gideon and for those in his house

This speaks of Gideon and his family being tempted to worship the ephod as if the ephod were a hunter's snare that would trap them. Alternate translation: "It became a temptation for Gideon and his family" or "Gideon and his family sinned by worshiping it"

##### for those in his house

Here "his house" represents Gideon's family. Alternate translation: "for his family"

#### Judges 28

##### So Midian was subdued before the people of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So Yahweh subdued the Midianites before the people of Israel" or "So Yahweh helped the Israelites defeat the Midianites"

##### they did not raise their heads up again

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "they did not attack Israel again"

##### So the land had peace

Here "land" represents the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "So the Israelites lived peacefully"

##### forty years

"40 years"

##### in the days of Gideon

"during the life of Gideon"

#### Judges 29

##### Jerub-Baal

This is another name for Gideon. See how you translated his name in Judges 6:32.

#### Judges 30

##### seventy sons

"70 sons"

#### Judges 31

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 32

##### a good old age

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "when he was very old"

##### was buried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they buried him"

##### Ophrah

Translate the name of this city as you did in Judges 6:11.

##### the clan of Abiezer

Translate the name of this people group as you did in Judges 6:11.

#### Judges 33

##### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

##### turned again

The people rejecting Yahweh is spoken of as if they physically turned away from him. Alternate translation: "they stopped worshiping Yahwheh"

##### prostituted themselves by worshiping the Baals

This speaks of worshiping false gods as if it were prostitution. Alternate translation: "they sinned against Yahweh by worshiping the Baals"

##### Baal-Berith

This is the name of a false god.

#### Judges 34

##### from the hand of all their enemies

Here "hand" represents power or control. Alternate translation: "from the power of all their enemies" or "from all their enemies"

##### on every side

"who surrounded them"

#### Judges 35

##### the house of Jerub-Baal

Here "the house of" represents a person's family. Alternate translation: "the family of Jerub-Baal"

##### Jerub-Baal

This is another name for Gideon. See how you translated this in Judges 6:32.

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Judges 8:1

##### Why did the men of Ephraim argue with Gideon?

The men of Ephraim argued with Gideon because he had not called them when he went to fight against Midian.

#### Judges 8:5

##### For what did Gideon ask the men of Sukkoth?

Gideon asked the men of Sukkoth for loaves of bread for the people who followed him.

#### Judges 8:6

##### Why did Gideon tell the men of Penuel that he would pull down the tower?

Gideon told the men of Penuel that he would pull down the tower because they would not give his army bread, just as the men of Sukkoth refused.

#### Judges 8:8

##### Why did Gideon tell the men of Penuel that he would pull down the tower?

Gideon told the men of Penuel that he would pull down the tower because they would not give his army bread, just as the men of Sukkoth refused.

#### Judges 8:9

##### Why did Gideon tell the men of Penuel that he would pull down the tower?

Gideon told the men of Penuel that he would pull down the tower because they would not give his army bread, just as the men of Sukkoth refused.

#### Judges 8:11

##### Why did Gideon defeat the enemy army past Nobah and Jogbehah?

Gideon defeated the enemy army, because they were not expecting an attack.

#### Judges 8:15

##### Who did Gideon show to the men of Sukkoth before he punished them?

Gideon showed Zebah and Zalmunna to the men of Sukkoth before he punished them.

#### Judges 8:16

##### Who did Gideon show to the men of Sukkoth before he punished them?

Gideon showed Zebah and Zalmunna to the men of Sukkoth before he punished them.

#### Judges 8:18

##### What kind of men did Zebah and Zalmunna kill at Tabor?

Zebah and Zalmunna killed Gideon's brothers.

#### Judges 8:19

##### What kind of men did Zebah and Zalmunna kill at Tabor?

Zebah and Zalmunna killed Gideon's brothers.

#### Judges 8:20

##### Why did Jether not draw his sword?

Jether did not draw his sword for he was afraid, because he was still a young boy.

#### Judges 8:23

##### Who did Gideon say would rule over the men of Israel?

Gideon said Yahweh would rule over the men of Israel.

#### Judges 8:24

##### For what did Gideon ask the men of Israel?

Gideon asked them for the earrings of their plunder.

#### Judges 8:27

##### What did Gideon make out of the earrings?

Gideon made an ephod out of the earrings.

##### What did Israel do to the golden ephod?

Israel prostituted themselves by worshiping it.

#### Judges 8:33

##### What happened as soon as Gideon was dead?

As soon as Gideon was dead, the people of Israel turned again and prostituted themselves by worshiping the Baals.

### Chapter 9

**1** Abimelek son of Jerub-Baal went to his mother's relatives at Shechem and he said to them and to the whole clan of his mother's family, **2** "Please say this, so that all the leaders in Shechem may hear, 'Which is better for you, that all seventy sons of Jerub-Baal rule over you, or that just one rule over you?' Remember that I am your bone and your flesh." **3** His mother's relatives spoke for him to the leaders of Shechem, and they agreed to follow Abimelek, for they said, "He is our brother." **4** They gave him seventy pieces of silver out of the house of Baal-Berith, and Abimelek used the silver to hire worthless and reckless men, who traveled with him. **5** Abimelek went to his father's house at Ophrah, and upon one stone he murdered his seventy brothers, the sons of Jerub-Baal. Only Jotham was left, the youngest son of Jerub-Baal, for he hid himself. **6** All the leaders of Shechem and Beth Millo came together and they went and made Abimelek king, beside the oak near the pillar which is in Shechem.

**7** When Jotham was told about this, he went and stood on the top of Mount Gerizim. He shouted and said to them, "Listen to me, you leaders of Shechem, so that God may listen to you. **8** The trees once went out to anoint a king over them. For they said to the olive tree, 'Reign over us.' **9** But the olive tree said to them, 'Should I give up my abundance, by which gods and men are honored, to sway over the other trees?' **10** The trees said to the fig tree, 'Come and reign over us.' **11** But the fig tree said to them, 'Should I give up my sweetness and my good fruit, just so I could return and sway over the other trees?' **12** The trees said to the vine, 'Come and reign over us.' **13** The vine said to them, 'Should I give up my new wine, which makes gods and mankind glad, and return and sway over the other trees?' **14** Then said all the trees to the thornbush, 'Come and reign over us.' **15** The thornbush said to the trees, 'If you truly want to anoint me as king over you, then come and find refuge under my shade. If not, then let fire come out of the thornbush and let it burn up the cedars of Lebanon.' **16** Now therefore, if you have acted in truth and honesty, when you made Abimelek king, and if you have done well concerning Jerub-Baal and his house, and if you have punished him as he deserves— **17** and to think that my father fought for you, risked his life, and rescued you out of the hand of Midian— **18** but today you have risen up against my father's house and have killed his sons, seventy persons, upon one stone. Then you have made Abimelek, the son of his female servant, king over the leaders of Shechem, because he is your relative. **19** If you acted with faithfulness and integrity with Jerub-Baal and his house, then you should rejoice in Abimelek, and let him also rejoice in you. **20** But if not, let fire come out from Abimelek and burn up the men of Shechem and Beth Millo. Let fire come out from the men of Shechem and Beth Millo, to burn up Abimelek." **21** Jotham fled and ran away, and he went to Beer. He lived there because it was far away from Abimelek, his brother.

**22** Abimelek ruled over Israel for three years. **23** God sent an evil spirit between Abimelek and the leaders of Shechem. The leaders of Shechem betrayed the trust they had with Abimelek. **24** God did this so the violence done to the seventy sons of Jerub-Baal might be avenged and their blood be laid on Abimelek their brother, and the men of Shechem would be held responsible because they helped him murder his brothers. **25** So the leaders of Shechem positioned men to lie in wait on the hilltops that they might ambush him, and they robbed all who passed by them along that road. This was reported to Abimelek.

**26** Gaal son of Ebed came with his relatives and they went over to Shechem. The leaders of Shechem had confidence in him. **27** They went out into the field and gathered grapes from the vineyards, and they trampled on them. They held a festival in the house of their god, where they ate and drank, and they cursed Abimelek. **28** Gaal son of Ebed, said, "Who is Abimelek, and who is Shechem, that we should serve him? Is he not the son of Jerub-Baal? Is Zebul not his overseer? Serve the men of Hamor, Shechem's father! Why should we serve Abimelek? **29** I wish that this people were under my command! Then would I remove Abimelek. I would say to Abimelek, 'Call out all your army.'"

**30** When Zebul, the official of the city, heard the words of Gaal son of Ebed his anger was kindled. **31** He sent messengers to Abimelek in order to deceive, saying, "See, Gaal son of Ebed and his relatives are coming to Shechem, and they are stirring up the city against you. **32** Now, get up during the night, you and the soldiers with you, and prepare an ambush in the fields. **33** Then in the morning, as soon as the sun is up, rise early and make a raid on the city. When he and the people with him come out against you, do whatever you can to them."

**34** So Abimelek got up during the night, he and all the men who were with him, and they set an ambush against Shechem—dividing into four units. **35** Gaal son of Ebed went out and stood in the entrance of the city gate. Abimelek and the men who were with him came out of their hiding place. **36** When Gaal saw the men, he said to Zebul, "See, men are coming down from the hilltops!" Zebul said to him, "You are seeing the shadows on the hills like they are men." **37** Gaal spoke again and said, "Look, men are coming down in the middle of the land, and one unit is coming by way of the oak of the diviners." **38** Then Zebul said to him, "Where are your proud words now, you who said, 'Who is Abimelek that we should serve him?' Are these not the men you despised? Go out now and fight against them." **39** Gaal went out and he was leading the men of Shechem, and he fought Abimelek. **40** Abimelek chased him, and Gaal fled before him. Many fell with deadly wounds before the entrance to the city gate.

**41** Abimelek stayed in Arumah. Zebul forced Gaal and his relatives out of Shechem. **42** On the next day the people of Shechem went out into the field, and this was reported to Abimelek. **43** He took his people, divided them into three units, and they set an ambush in the fields. He looked and saw the people coming out from the city and he attacked and killed them. **44** Abimelek and the units that were with him attacked and blocked the entrance to the city gate. The other two units attacked all who were in the field and killed them. **45** Abimelek fought against the city all that day. He captured the city, and killed the people who were in it. He broke down the city walls and sowed it with salt.

**46** When all the leaders of the tower of Shechem heard of it, they entered the stronghold of the house of El-Berith. **47** Abimelek was told that all the leaders had gathered together at the tower of Shechem. **48** Abimelek went up to Mount Zalmon, he and all the men who were with him. Abimelek took an ax and cut off branches. He put it on his shoulder and ordered the men with him, "What you have seen me do, hurry and do as I have done." **49** So every one cut off branches and followed Abimelek. They piled them against the wall of the tower, and they set the stronghold on fire, so that all the people of the tower of Shechem also died, about a thousand men and women.

**50** Then Abimelek went to Thebez, and he encamped against Thebez and captured it. **51** But there was a strong tower in the city, and all the men and women and all the leaders of the city fled to it and shut themselves in. Then they went up to the roof of the tower. **52** Abimelek came to the tower and fought against it, and he came up near to the door of the tower to burn it. **53** But a woman dropped an upper millstone on Abimelek's head and it crushed his skull. **54** Then he called urgently to the young man who was his armor-bearer, and said to him, "Draw your sword and kill me, so no one will say about me, 'A woman killed him.'" So his young man pierced him through, and he died. **55** When the men of Israel saw that Abimelek was dead, they went home. **56** So God avenged the evil of Abimelek that he did to his father by killing his seventy brothers. **57** God made all the evil of the men of Shechem turn back on their own heads and on them came the curse of Jotham son of Jerub-Baal.

# Judges 9 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Jotham's curse

Gideon's son, Abimelech, killed all of his brothers except Jotham in order to become king of Shechem. Jotham cursed Abimelech for having murdered Gideon's other sons. "Let fire come out from Abimelech and burn up the men of Shechem and the house of Millo. Let fire come out from the men of Shechem and Beth Millo, to burn up Abimelech." (See: curse)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Tree metaphor

This chapter contains an extended metaphor about trees. This metaphor functions as a parable instructing Israel about their sinful desire to have a king. (See: and sin)

#### Judges 01

##### Jerub-Baal

This is another name for Gideon. See how you translated this in Judges 6:32.

#### Judges 02

##### Please say this, so that all the leaders in Shechem may hear, 'Which is better for you, that all seventy sons of Jerub-Baal rule over you, or that just one rule over you?'

This has a quotation within a quotation. A direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Please ask the leaders of Shechem if they would rather have all seventy sons of Jerub-Baal rule over them, or if they would rather have just one of his sons rule over them."

##### seventy

"70"

##### I am your bone and your flesh

Here "your bone and your flesh" represents being someone's relative. Alternate translation: "I am a member of your family"

#### Judges 03

##### His mother's relatives spoke for him to the leaders

This means that the relatives of the mother of Abimelek spoke to the leaders, suggesting that they make Abimelek their king.

##### they agreed to follow Abimelek

"they agreed to let Abimelek be their leader"

#### Judges 04

##### the house

Here "house" represents a temple.

##### seventy pieces of silver

This means seventy shekels of silver. A shekel weighs 11 grams. If it is necessary to translate this with modern measurements, you can translate it like this. Alternate translation: "almost one kilo of silver"

##### seventy

"70"

##### Baal-Berith

This is the name of a false god. See how you translated it in Judges 8:33.

##### worthless and reckless

"violent and foolish"

#### Judges 05

##### Ophrah

Translate the name of this city as you did in Judges 6:11.

##### one stone

"1 stone"

##### seventy

"70"

##### Jerub-Baal

This is another name for Gideon. See how you translated this in Judges 6:32.

#### Judges 06

##### Beth Millo

This is the name of a place.

#### Judges 07

##### General Information:

Jotham begins telling a parable in which the trees try to find someone to rule them. The trees represent the Israelites.

##### When Jotham was told about this

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When Jotham heard that Abimelech had murdered his brothers"

##### Mount Gerizim

This is a mountain.

#### Judges 08

##### The trees once went out to anoint a king over them. For they said to the olive tree, 'Reign over us.'

In this parable Jotham describes the trees doing things that humans do.

##### to anoint a king over them

Here, to anoint with oil is a symbolic action that represents appointing a person to be king. Alternate translation: "to appoint a king to rule over all of them"

##### Reign over us

"Be our king"

#### Judges 09

##### General Information:

Jotham continues telling the parable he begins in Judges 9:7, where the trees represent the Israelites.

##### Should I give up my abundance ... over the other trees?

The olive tree is asking this question to refuse to be king. This question can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "I will not give up my abundance ... over the other trees."

##### abundance

This word for "wealth" is a metonym for the olives that come from the tree. People ate olives as food and crushed them to make oil for lamps. Alternate translation: "oil"

##### by which gods and men are honored

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "by which people honor both gods and other men"

##### gods

It is possible to translate the same Hebrew word as "god," "God," or "gods," so possible meanings here are 1) "gods" or 2) "God."

##### sway over

To sway is to move back and forth. Trees sway when the wind blows them. Here this is a metaphor for ruling over people. Jotham is also using irony, saying that the work of any ruler will be useless because the "trees," the people, will not obey anyone who rules them. Alternate translation: "rule over"

#### Judges 10

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 11

##### the fig tree said to them

Jotham continues describing the trees as doing things that humans do.

##### Should I give up my sweetness ... over the other trees?

The fig tree is asking this question to refuse to be king. This question can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "I will not give up my sweetness ... over the other trees."

##### my sweetness and my good fruit

The word "sweetness" is an abstract noun. It can be stated as an adjective that describes the fruit that grows on the tree. Alternate translation: "my good sweet fruit"

#### Judges 12

##### General Information:

Jotham continues telling the parable he begins in Judges 9:7, where the trees represent the Israelites.

##### The trees said to the vine

In this parable, Jotham describes the trees and the vine as doing things that humans do.

#### Judges 13

##### Should I give up my new wine ... over the other trees?

The vine is asking this question to refuse to be king. This question can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "I will not give up my new wine ... over the other trees."

#### Judges 14

##### thornbush

Thorns are sharp spikes or spurs that hurt. This bush has many sharp spikes along its branches.

#### Judges 15

##### General Information:

Jotham continues telling his parable, where trees represent various people groups, and makes the application.

##### The thornbush said to the trees

In this parable, Jotham describes the thornbush and the trees as doing things that humans do.

##### to anoint me as king over you

To anoint someone with oil is a symbolic action that appoints a person to be king. Alternate translation: "to appoint me as your king"

##### fire come out of the thornbush and let it burn up the cedars of Lebanon

This means to let the thornbush burn so that it will burn the cedars.

##### then let fire come out of the thornbush

The thornbush refers to itself as "the thornbush." Alternate translation: "then may fire come out from me, the thornbush"

#### Judges 16

##### Now

This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

##### Jerub-Baal

This is another name for Gideon. See how you translated this in Judges 6:32.

##### his house

Here "house" represents Gideon's family.

#### Judges 17

##### General Information:

Jotham makes the application to the situation at that time and place.

##### to think that my father fought for you ... out of the hand of Midian

Here Jotham is expressing that he cannot believe how badly the people of Shechem have treated Gideon and his family even after Gideon fought to save the people of Shechem.

##### out of the hand of Midian

Here "hand" represents power or control. Alternate translation: "from the power of the Midianites" or "from the Midianites"

#### Judges 18

##### you have risen up against

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "you have opposed" or "you have rebelled against"

##### my father's house

Here "house" represents family. Alternate translation: "my father's family"

##### seventy

"70"

##### one stone

"1 stone"

##### his female servant

Here "his" refers to Gideon.

#### Judges 19

##### If you acted with faithfulness and integrity with Jerub-Baal and his house

Jotham offered the possibility that what they did was good, but he did not actually believe what they did was good. Alternate translation: "If you treated Jerub-Baal and his family with faithfulness and sincerity"

##### Jerub-Baal

This is another name for Gideon. It means "let Baal defend himself." See how you translated this in Judges 6:32.

##### his house

Here "house" refers to family. Alternate translation: "his family"

#### Judges 20

##### But if not

The rest of this phrase can be understood from what Jotham said in verse 19. Alternate translation: "But if you did not act with honesty and integrity with Jerub Baal and his house"

##### let fire come out from Abimelek and burn up the men of Shechem

Jotham is speaking a curse. He speaks of Abimelek destroying the people of Shechem as if he would burn them with fire.

##### Let fire come out from the men of Shechem and Beth Millo, to burn up Abimelek

Jotham is speaking a curse. He speaks of the people of Shechem and Beth Millo destroying Abimelek as if they would burn him with fire.

##### Beth Millo

This is the name of a place. See how you translated this in Judges 9:6.

#### Judges 21

##### Beer

This is the name of a city.

#### Judges 22

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 23

##### God sent an evil spirit between Abimelek and the leaders of Shechem

This means that God applied the curse Jotham made by sending an evil spirit to cause trouble and animosity between Abimelek and the leaders of Shechem.

#### Judges 24

##### God did this so the violence done ... helped him murder his brothers

The passive phrases can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God did this to avenge the seventy sons whom Abimelech their brother murdered and the men of Shechem helped murder"

##### seventy

"70"

##### Jerub-Baal

This is another name for Gideon. See how you translated this in Judges 6:32.

#### Judges 25

##### positioned men to lie in wait on the hilltops that they might ambush him

"sent men to hide on the hilltops and wait to attack Abimelek"

##### This was reported to Abimelek

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told Abimelek about the men waiting to attack him"

#### Judges 26

##### Gaal ... Ebed

These are names of men.

##### had confidence in him

The word "confidence" is an abstract noun that can be stated with the verb "trust." Alternate translation: "trusted him"

#### Judges 27

##### They went out into the field

Here "They" refers to Gaal and his relatives and the men of Shechem.

##### they trampled on them

They did this to squeeze out the grape juice to make wine with it.

##### trampled

"crushed" or "stomped"

##### in the house

Here "house" represents a temple.

#### Judges 28

##### Gaal ... Ebed

See how you translated these names in Judges 9:26.

##### Who is Abimelek, and who is Shechem, that we should serve him?

Gaal uses a question to emphasize that the people of Shechem should not serve Abimelek. Alternate translation: "We should not serve Abimelek!"

##### Who is Abimelek, and who is Shechem, that we should serve him?

Both of these questions means the same thing. Gaal refers to Abimelek as "Shechem" because Abimelek's mother was from Shechem. Alternate translation: "We should not serve Abimelek, that is, Shechem!"

##### Is he not the son of Jerub-Baal? Is Zebul not his overseer?

Gaal uses a question to emphasize that the people of Shechem should not serve Abimelek. Alternate translation: "He is just the son of Jerub-Baal, and Zebul is just his overseer."

##### overseer

Zebul oversaw Abimelek's slaves, servants, and laborers.

##### Jerub-Baal

This is another name for Gideon. See how you translated this in Judges 6:32.

##### Zebul

This is the name of a man.

##### Serve the men of Hamor, Shechem's father

Gaal means the people of Shechem should serve those who descended from Hamor, that is, those who are truly Canaanites, and not serve someone whose father was an Israelite.

##### Why should we serve Abimelek?

Gaal uses a question to emphasize that the people of Shechem should not serve Abimelek. Alternate translation: "We should not serve Abimelek!"

#### Judges 29

##### I wish that this people were under my command

"I wish that I ruled the people of Shechem"

#### Judges 30

##### Zebul

See how you translated this name in Judges 9:28.

##### heard the words of Gaal son of Ebed

"heard what Gaal son of Ebed said"

##### Gaal ... Ebed

See how you translated these names in Judges 9:26.

##### his anger was kindled

Becoming angry is spoken of as if a fire were starting. Alternate translation: "he became very angry"

##### the city

Here "city" represents the people of the city.

#### Judges 31

##### in order to deceive

Zebul is deceiving Gaal and the people of Shechem. Alternate translation: "secretly"

##### they are stirring up the city against you

This speaks of the people of the city becoming upset as if they were liquid in a pot moving around. Alternate translation: "they are persuading the people of the city to rebel against you"

#### Judges 32

##### General Information:

Zebul's messengers continue talking to Abimelech.

##### Now

This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

##### an ambush

"to hide and attack them suddenly"

#### Judges 33

##### do whatever you can to them

This means that they can do what they want to destroy the followers of Gaal.

#### Judges 34

##### all the men who were with him

"all the men accompanying Abimelech" or "all the men fighting for Abimelech"

##### dividing into four units

"separating into 4 groups"

#### Judges 35

##### Gaal ... Ebed

See how you translated these names in Judges 9:26.

#### Judges 36

##### Gaal

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in Judges 9:26.

##### Zebul

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in Judges 9:28.

##### You are seeing the shadows on the hills like they are men

Zebul is trying to confuse Gaal and keep him from preparing for battle. Alternate translation: "That is not people, it is only shadows on the hills"

#### Judges 37

##### one unit

"1 group" or "1 troop"

#### Judges 38

##### Zebul

See how you translated this name in Judges 9:28.

##### Where are your proud words now, you

Zebul is scolding Gaal with this rhetorical question. Alternate translation: "You are not speaking proudly now, you" or "You are not proud now, you"

##### you who said, 'Who is Abimelek that we should serve him?'

Zebul is quoting Gaal's boast back to Gaal. This can be translated as a statement and as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "you who said that we should not serve Abimelek."

##### Are these not the men you despised?

Zebul is challenging Gaal with this rhetorical question. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Here are the men that you despised."

##### despised

strongly disliked or hated

#### Judges 39

##### Gaal

See how you translated this name in Judges 9:26.

#### Judges 40

##### Many fell with deadly wounds

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "And many men died of wounds"

#### Judges 41

##### Arumah

This is the name of a city.

##### Zebul

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in Judges 9:28.

##### Gaal

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in Judges 9:26.

#### Judges 42

##### this was reported to Abimelek

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone reported this to Abimelek"

#### Judges 43

##### divided them into three units

"separated them into 3 groups"

##### they set an ambush in the fields

"they hid in the fields to attack the people by surprise"

##### he attacked

Here "he" refers to Abimelech who represents himself and all of his soldiers. Alternate translation: "they attacked"

#### Judges 44

##### the units

"the groups of soldiers"

##### other two

"other 2"

#### Judges 45

##### Abimelek fought ... He broke down

Here "Abimelek" represents himself and his soldiers. Alternate translation: "Abimelek and his soldiers fought ... They broke down"

##### against the city

Here "city" represents the people. Alternate translation: "against the people of Shechem"

##### broke down

"demolished"

##### sowed it with salt

Here salt is spoken of as if it were seeds. Spreading salt over land keeps anything from growing there. Alternate translation: "spread salt over the land"

#### Judges 46

##### the house

Here this represents a temple.

##### El-Berith

The word "El" means "god." This is the same false god as "Baal-Berith" in [Judges 8:33]

#### Judges 47

##### Abimelek was told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told Abimelek"

#### Judges 48

##### Mount Zalmon

This is the name of a mountain.

#### Judges 49

##### piled

This means to stack the branches into a large heap.

##### about a thousand men

"about 1,000"

#### Judges 50

##### Thebez

This is the name of a city.

##### encamped against Thebez

"camped outside the city of Thebez"

#### Judges 51

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 52

##### fought against it

"attacked it"

#### Judges 53

##### upper millstone

Two large, flat, round stones were used to grind grain in a mill. An upper millstone was the top one that was rolled on the lower one to crush the grain in between them.

#### Judges 54

##### armor-bearer

This is the man who carried the weapons of Abimelech.

##### pierced him through

This means the young man put the sword right through the body of Abimelech.

#### Judges 55

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 56

##### seventy

"70"

#### Judges 57

##### made all the evil of the men of Shechem turn back on their own heads

"Evil turn back on their heads" here is an idiom. Alternate translation: "punished the men of Shechem for all the evil they had done"

##### on them came the curse of Jotham son of Jerub-Baal

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "the curse of Jotham son of Jerub-Baal happened to them"

##### Jerub-Baal

This is another name for Gideon. See how you translated this name in Judges 6:32.

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Judges 9:1

##### Who was Abimelech's father?

Abimelech's father was Jerub Baal.

#### Judges 9:3

##### Why did Abimelech's mother's relatives agree to follow him?

They agreed to follow Abimelech, for they said, "He is our brother."

#### Judges 9:4

##### For what did Abimelech use the seventy pieces of silver?

Abimelech used the seventy pieces of silver to hire men of lawless and reckless character.

#### Judges 9:5

##### Why was Jotham not murdered?

Jotham was not murdered, for he hid himself.

#### Judges 9:7

##### On what day did Jotham address the leaders of Shechem?

Jotham addressed them on the same day they had risen up against his father's house and killed his sons, seventy persons, upon one stone.

#### Judges 9:18

##### On what day did Jotham address the leaders of Shechem?

Jotham addressed them on the same day they had risen up against his father's house and killed his sons, seventy persons, upon one stone.

#### Judges 9:20

##### If the people acted with honesty and integrity with Jerub Baal and his house, what should happen?

If the people acted with honesty and integrity with Jerub Baal and his house, fire should come out from Abimelech and burn up the men of Shechem and the house of Millo. Fire should come out from the men of Shechem and Beth Millo, to burn up Abimelech.

##### What was the curse of Jotham?

The curse of Jotham was for fire to come out from Abimelech and burn up the men of Shechem and the house of Millo, for fire to come out from the men of Shechem and Beth Millo, to burn up Abimelech.

#### Judges 9:23

##### Why did God send an evil spirit between Abimelech and the leaders of Shechem?

God sent an evil spirit between Abimelech and the leaders of Shechem so the violence done to the seventy sons of Jerub Baal might be avenged.

#### Judges 9:24

##### Why did God send an evil spirit between Abimelech and the leaders of Shechem?

God sent an evil spirit between Abimelech and the leaders of Shechem so the violence done to the seventy sons of Jerub Baal might be avenged.

#### Judges 9:25

##### Who did the leaders of Shechem hope to ambush?

The leaders of Shechem hoped to ambush Abimelech.

#### Judges 9:28

##### Who wished to command the people?

Gaal wished to command the people.

#### Judges 9:29

##### Who wished to command the people?

Gaal wished to command the people.

#### Judges 9:30

##### Why was Zebul's anger kindled?

When Zebul heard the words of Gaal (the son of Ebed), his anger was kindled.

#### Judges 9:31

##### Why did Zebul send messengers to Abimelech?

He sent messengers to Abimelech in order to deceive him.

#### Judges 9:36

##### How did Zebul describe the men on the hilltops?

Zebul said they were shadows on the hills.

#### Judges 9:38

##### What did Zebul tell Gaal to do?

Zebul told Gaal to go out and fight against Abimelech.

#### Judges 9:40

##### What happened when Gaal fought Abimelech?

Abimelech chased Gaal and Gall fled before Abimelech and many fell with deadly wounds before the entrance to the city gate.

#### Judges 9:45

##### What did Abimelech do after he captured the city?

Abimelech tore down the city walls and spread salt over it.

#### Judges 9:46

##### Where did the leaders of the tower of Shechem enter?

The leaders of the tower of Shechem entered the stronghold of the house of El Berith.

#### Judges 9:48

##### How did Abimelech kill all the leaders and people in the tower of Shechem?

Abimelech went up to Mount Zalmon, piled branches on top of the underground chamber, and set it on fire above it.

#### Judges 9:49

##### How did Abimelech kill all the leaders and people in the tower of Shechem?

Abimelech went up to Mount Zalmon, piled branches on top of the underground chamber, and set it on fire above it.

#### Judges 9:52

##### When Abimelech came near the door of the tower of Thebez, what happened to him?

When Abimelech came near the door of the tower of Thebez, a woman dropped an upper millstone on his head and it cracked his skull.

#### Judges 9:53

##### When Abimelech came near the door of the tower of Thebez, what happened to him?

When Abimelech came near the door of the tower of Thebez, a woman dropped an upper millstone on his head and it cracked his skull.

#### Judges 9:54

##### Why did Abimelech tell his armor-bearer to draw his sword and kill him?

Abimelech told his armor-bearer to draw his sword and kill him, so no one would say a women killed Abimelech.

#### Judges 9:57

##### What was the curse of Jotham?

The curse of Jotham was for fire to come out from Abimelech and burn up the men of Shechem and the house of Millo, for fire to come out from the men of Shechem and Beth Millo, to burn up Abimelech.

### Chapter 10

**1** After Abimelek, Tola son of Puah son of Dodo, a man from Issachar who lived in Shamir, in the hill country of Ephraim, arose to deliver Israel. **2** He judged Israel twenty-three years. He died and was buried in Shamir.

**3** He was followed by Jair the Gileadite. He judged Israel twenty-two years. **4** He had thirty sons who rode on thirty donkeys, and they had thirty cities, which are called Havvoth Jair to this day, which are in the land of Gilead. **5** Jair died and was buried in Kamon.

**6** The people of Israel added to the evil they had done in the sight of Yahweh and worshiped the Baals, the Ashtoreths, the gods of Aram, the gods of Sidon, the gods of Moab, the gods of the people of Ammon, and the gods of the Philistines. They abandoned Yahweh and no longer worshiped him. **7** Yahweh burned with anger toward Israel, and he sold them into the hand of the Philistines and into the hand of the Ammonites. **8** They crushed and oppressed the people of Israel that year, and for eighteen years they oppressed all the people of Israel who were beyond the Jordan in the land of the Amorites, which is in Gilead. **9** Then the Ammonites crossed over the Jordan to fight against Judah, against Benjamin, and against the house of Ephraim, so that Israel was greatly distressed.

**10** Then the people of Israel called out to Yahweh, saying, "We have sinned against you, because we abandoned our God and worshiped the Baals." **11** Yahweh said to the people of Israel, "Did I not deliver you from the Egyptians, the Amorites, the Ammonites, the Philistines, **12** and also from the Sidonians? The Amalekites and the Maonites oppressed you; you called out to me, and I delivered you from their power. **13** Yet you abandoned me again and worshiped other gods. Therefore, I will not keep adding to the times I deliver you. **14** Go and call out to the gods that you have worshiped. Let them rescue you when you have trouble." **15** The people of Israel said to Yahweh, "We have sinned. Do to us whatever seems good to you. Only please, rescue us this day." **16** They got rid of the foreign gods among them and they worshiped Yahweh. Then Yahweh could bear Israel's misery no longer.

**17** Then the Ammonites were summoned and set up camp in Gilead. The people of Israel came together and set up their camp at Mizpah. **18** The leaders of the people of Gilead said one to another, "Who is the man who will begin to fight the Ammonites? He will become the leader over all those who are living in Gilead."

# Judges 10 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the account of Jephthah ([Judges 10-12](./01.md)).

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Israel's punishment

In Judges, Israel's actions are connected to their obedience to Yahweh. When Israel does evil, they are oppressed. (See: evil and oppress)

#### Judges 01

##### Tola ... Puah ... Dodo

These are names of men.

##### Shamir

This is the name of a place.

##### arose to deliver Israel

"came to deliver Israel" or "became the leader to deliver Israel"

##### deliver Israel

Here "Israel" represents the people of Israel.

#### Judges 02

##### He judged Israel

Here "judged" means he led the people of Israel.

##### twenty-three years

"23 years"

##### was buried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they buried him"

#### Judges 03

##### He was followed by Jair the Gileadite

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jair the Gileadite was leader after Tola"

##### Jair

This is the name of a man.

##### the Gileadite

Jair was from the tribe of Gilead.

##### He judged Israel

Here "judged" means he led the people of Israel.

##### Israel

Here "Israel" represents the people of Israel.

##### twenty-two years

"22 years"

#### Judges 04

##### thirty sons

"30 sons"

##### Havvoth Jair

This is the name of a region, which is named after a man.

##### to this day

This means to the time when the book of Judges was being written.

#### Judges 05

##### was buried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they buried him"

##### Kamon

This is the name of a place.

#### Judges 06

##### added to the evil they had done in the sight of Yahweh

This speaks of evil as if it were an object that a person could add to and make bigger. Alternate translation: "continued doing what Yahweh said was evil"

##### in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: "according to Yahweh"

##### Ashtoreths

This is the plural of Ashtoroth, who was worshiped as a goddess in many different forms. See how you translated this in Judges 2:13.

##### They abandoned Yahweh and no longer worshiped him

The author basically said the same thing twice for emphasis. These can be combined. Alternate translation: "They completely stopped worshiping Yahweh"

##### They abandoned Yahweh

No longer obeying and worshiping Yahweh is spoken of as if the people left Yahweh and went somewhere else.

#### Judges 07

##### Yahweh burned with anger toward Israel

Yahweh becoming angry is spoken of as if anger were a burning fire. Alternate translation: "Yahweh was very angry at Israel"

##### he sold them into the hand of the Philistines and into the hand of the Ammonites

Yahweh allowing the Philistines and the Ammonites to defeat the Israelites is spoken of as if he sold the Israelites to them.

##### into the hand

Here "hand" represents power or control.

#### Judges 08

##### crushed and oppressed

These two words basically mean the same and emphasize how much the Israelites suffered. Alternate translation: "terribly oppressed"

##### eighteen years

"18 years"

##### who were beyond the Jordan

This means on the east side of the Jordan River.

##### which is in Gilead

"this region is also called Gilead"

#### Judges 09

##### Judah ... Benjamin

"Judah" and "Benjamin" refer to the people belonging to those tribes. Alternate translation: "the people of the tribe of Judah ... the people of the tribe of Benjamin"

##### house of Ephraim

The "house" refers to the people of the tribe of Ephraim. Alternate translation: "the people of the tribe of Ephraim"

##### so that Israel was greatly distressed

"Israel" refers to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "so that the people of Israel suffered much"

#### Judges 10

##### the people of Israel called out to Yahweh

This means the people of Israel desperately asked Yahweh for help.

##### because we abandoned our God

The people no longer obeying and worshiping Yahweh is spoken of as if they left Yahweh and went somewhere else.

##### abandoned our God

The people are speaking to Yahweh and refer to him as "our God." This can be stated in second person. Alternate translation: "abandoned you, our God"

#### Judges 11

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 12

##### and also from the Sidonians?

God is rebuking the people of Israel for their worship of other gods. The rhetorical question that begins with the words "Did I not deliver you" in verse 11 ends here. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am the one who delivered you ... and also from the Sidonians."

##### Maonites

These are the people from the clan or family of Maon.

##### from their power

Here "power" represents the Amalekites and the Maonites. Alternate translation: "from them"

#### Judges 13

##### you abandoned me again

The people no longer obeying and worshiping Yahweh is spoken of as if they left Yahweh and went somewhere else.

##### I will not keep adding to the times I deliver you

The phrase "keep adding to the times" is an idiom that means to continue to do something. You can make explicit the implicit meaning of Yahweh's saying. Alternate translation: "I will not keep on delivering you again and again" or "You can be sure that I will stop delivering you"

#### Judges 14

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 15

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 16

##### foreign gods among them

You can make explicit the implicit meaning of this statement. Alternate translation: "foreign gods whose images they possessed"

##### Yahweh could bear Israel's misery no longer

Here Israel refers to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "And Yahweh did not want the people of Israel to suffer any longer"

#### Judges 17

##### the Ammonites were summoned and set

Possible meanings are 1) "the leaders of the Ammonites called them to come to fight, so they set" or 2) "the Ammonites gathered together."

#### Judges 18

##### Who is the man who will begin to fight the Ammonites?

"Who will lead our army to fight against the Ammonites?"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Judges 10:1

##### Where was Shamir?

Shamir was in the hill country of Ephraim.

#### Judges 10:6

##### Why did Yahweh burn with anger toward the people of Israel?

The people of Israel abandoned Yahweh and no longer worshiped him, so he burned with anger toward Israel.

#### Judges 10:7

##### Why did Yahweh burn with anger toward the people of Israel?

The people of Israel abandoned Yahweh and no longer worshiped him, so he burned with anger toward Israel.

#### Judges 10:9

##### Why was Israel greatly distressed?

Ammonites crossed over the Jordan to fight against Judah, against Benjamin, and against the house of Ephraim, so that Israel was greatly distressed.

#### Judges 10:14

##### To whom did Yahweh tell the people of Israel to call out for help?

Yahweh told the people to call out to the gods that they had worshiped.

#### Judges 10:16

##### Why did Yahweh become impatient over the misery of Israel?

Israel turned away from the foreign gods they owned and they worshiped Yahweh, so he became impatient over the misery.

### Chapter 11

**1** Now Jephthah the Gileadite was a mighty warrior, but he was the son of a prostitute. Gilead was his father. **2** Gilead's wife also gave birth to his other sons. When his wife's sons grew up, they forced Jephthah to leave the house and said to him, "You are not going to inherit anything from our father's household. You are the son of another woman." **3** So Jephthah fled from his brothers and lived in the land of Tob, and worthless men gathered around Jephthah and they traveled with him.

**4** Some days later, the people of Ammon made war against Israel. **5** When the people of Ammon made war against Israel, the elders of Gilead went to bring Jephthah back from the land of Tob. **6** They said to Jephthah, "Come and be our leader that we may fight with the people of Ammon." **7** Jephthah said to the elders of Gilead, "You hated me and forced me to leave my father's house. Why do you come to me now when you are in trouble?" **8** The elders of Gilead said to Jephthah, "That is why we are turning to you now; come with us and fight with the people of Ammon, and you will become the leader over all who live in Gilead." **9** Jephthah said to the elders of Gilead, "If you bring me home again to fight against the people of Ammon, and if Yahweh gives us victory over them, I will be your leader." **10** The elders of Gilead said to Jephthah, "May Yahweh be witness between us if we do not do as we say!" **11** So Jephthah went with the elders of Gilead, and the people made him leader and commander over them. When he was before Yahweh in Mizpah, Jephthah repeated all the promises he made.

**12** Then Jephthah sent messengers to the king of the people of Ammon, saying, "What is this conflict between us? Why have you come with force to take our land?" **13** The king of the people of Ammon answered to the messengers of Jephthah, "Because when Israel came up out of Egypt, they seized my land from the Arnon to the Jabbok, over to the Jordan. Now give back those lands in peace." **14** Again Jephthah sent messengers to the king of the people of Ammon, **15** and he said, "This is what Jephthah says: Israel did not take the land of Moab and the land of the people of Ammon, **16** but they came up from Egypt, and Israel went through the wilderness to the Sea of Reeds and on to Kadesh. **17** When Israel sent messengers to the king of Edom, saying, 'Please let us pass through your land,' the king of Edom would not listen. They also sent messengers to the king of Moab, but he refused. So Israel stayed at Kadesh. **18** Then they went through the wilderness and turned away from the land of Edom and the land of Moab, and they went along the east side of the land of Moab and they camped on the other side of the Arnon. But they did not go into the territory of Moab, for the Arnon was Moab's border. **19** Israel sent messengers to Sihon, king of the Amorites, who ruled in Heshbon; Israel said to him, 'Please, let us pass through your land to the place that is ours.' **20** But Sihon did not trust Israel to pass through his territory. So Sihon gathered all his army together and camped at Jahaz, and there he fought against Israel. **21** Then Yahweh, the God of Israel, gave Sihon and all his people into the hand of Israel and they defeated them. So Israel took all the land of the Amorites who lived in that country. **22** They took over everything within the territory of the Amorites, from the Arnon to the Jabbok, and from the wilderness to the Jordan. **23** So then Yahweh, the God of Israel, has driven out the Amorites before his people Israel, and should you now take possession of their land? **24** Will you not take over the land that Chemosh, your god, gives you? So whatever land Yahweh our God has given us, we will take over. **25** Now are you really better than Balak son of Zippor, king of Moab? Did he dare to have an argument with Israel? Did he ever wage war against them? **26** While Israel lived for three hundred years in Heshbon and its villages, and in Aroer and its villages, and in all the cities that are along the banks of the Arnon—why then did you not take them back during that time? **27** I have not done you wrong, but you are doing me wrong by attacking me. Yahweh, the judge, will decide today between the people of Israel and the people of Ammon."

**28** But the king of the people of Ammon rejected the warning Jephthah sent him.

**29** Then the Spirit of Yahweh came on Jephthah, and he passed through Gilead and Manasseh, and passed through Mizpah of Gilead, and from Mizpah of Gilead he passed through to the people of Ammon. **30** Jephthah made a vow to Yahweh and said, "If you give me victory over the people of Ammon, **31** then whatever comes out of the doors of my house to meet me when I return in peace from the people of Ammon will belong to Yahweh, and I will offer it up as a burnt offering." **32** So Jephthah passed through to the people of Ammon to fight against them, and Yahweh gave him victory. **33** He attacked them and caused a great slaughter from Aroer as far as Minnith—twenty cities—and to Abel Keramim. So the people of Ammon were subdued before the people of Israel.

**34** Jephthah came to his home at Mizpah, and there his daughter came out to meet him with tambourines and with dancing. She was his only child, and besides her he had neither son nor daughter. **35** As soon as he saw her, he tore his clothes and said, "Oh! My daughter! You have crushed me with sorrow, and you have become one who troubles me! For I have opened my mouth to Yahweh, and I cannot turn back on my promise." **36** She said to him, "My father, you have made a vow to Yahweh, do to me everything you promised, because Yahweh has taken vengeance for you against your enemies, the Ammonites." **37** She said to her father, "Let this promise be kept for me. Leave me alone for two months, that I may leave and go down to the hills and grieve over my virginity, I and my companions." **38** He said, "Go." He sent her away for two months. She left him, she and her companions, and they grieved her virginity in the hills. **39** At the end of two months she returned to her father, who did with her according to the promise of the vow he had made. Now she had never known a man, and it became a custom in Israel **40** that the daughters of Israel every year, for four days, would retell the story of the daughter of Jephthah the Gileadite.

### Chapter 12

**1** A call went out to the men of Ephraim; they passed through Zaphon and said to Jephthah, "Why did you pass through to fight against the people of Ammon and did not call us to go with you? We will burn your house down over you." **2** Jephthah said to them, "I and my people were in a great conflict with the people of Ammon. When I called you, you did not rescue me from them. **3** When I saw that you did not rescue me, I put my life in my own hand and passed through against the people of Ammon, and Yahweh gave me victory. Why have you come to fight against me today?" **4** Jephthah gathered together all the men of Gilead and he fought against Ephraim. The men of Gilead attacked the men of Ephraim because they said, "You Gileadites are fugitives in Ephraim—in Ephraim and Manasseh." **5** The Gileadites captured the fords of the Jordan leading to Ephraim. When any of the survivors of Ephraim said, "Let me go over the river," the men of Gilead would say to him, "Are you an Ephraimite?" If he said, "No," **6** then they would say to him, "Say: Shibboleth," and if he said "Sibboleth" (for he could not pronounce the word correctly), the Gileadites would seize him and kill him at the fords of the Jordan. Forty-two thousand Ephraimites were killed at that time.

**7** Jephthah served as a judge over Israel for six years. Then Jephthah the Gileadite died and was buried in one of the cities of Gilead.

**8** After him, Ibzan of Bethlehem served as a judge over Israel. **9** He had thirty sons. He gave away thirty daughters in marriage and he brought from the outside thirty daughters of other men for his sons. He judged Israel for seven years. **10** Ibzan died and was buried at Bethlehem. **11** After him Elon the Zebulunite served as judge over Israel. He judged Israel for ten years. **12** Elon the Zebulunite died and was buried in Aijalon in the land of Zebulun.

**13** After him, Abdon son of Hillel the Pirathonite served as a judge over Israel. **14** He had forty sons and thirty grandsons. They rode on seventy donkeys, and he judged Israel for eight years. **15** Abdon son of Hillel the Pirathonite died and was buried in Pirathon in the land of Ephraim in the hill country of the Amalekites.

### Chapter 13

**1** The people of Israel again did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, and he gave them into the hand of the Philistines for forty years.

**2** There was a man from Zorah, of the clan of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. His wife was barren and so she had not given birth. **3** The angel of Yahweh appeared to the woman and said to her, "See now, you have been barren, and you have not given birth, but you will conceive and you will give birth to a son. **4** Now be careful not to drink wine or strong drink, and do not eat anything unclean.

**5** Look, you will become pregnant and give birth to a son. No razor will be used upon his head, for the boy will be a Nazirite to God from the womb, and he will begin to deliver Israel from the hand of the Philistines." **6** Then the woman came and told her husband, "A man of God came to me, and his appearance was like that of an angel of God, very terrible. I did not ask him where he came from, and he did not tell me his name. **7** He said to me, 'Look! You will become pregnant, and you will give birth to a son. So then drink no wine or strong drink, and do not eat any food that the law declares to be unclean, because the boy will be a Nazirite to God from the time he is in your womb until the day of his death.'"

**8** Then Manoah prayed to Yahweh and said, "Oh, Lord, please let the man of God you sent come again to us so that he may teach us what we are to do for the child who soon will be born." **9** God listened to the voice of Manoah, and the angel of God came to the woman again when she was sitting in the field. But Manoah her husband was not with her. **10** So the woman ran quickly and told her husband, "Look! The man has appeared to me—the one who came to me the other day!" **11** Manoah got up and followed his wife. When he came to the man, he said, "Are you the man who spoke with my wife?" The man said, "I am." **12** So Manoah said, "Now may your words come true. What will be the rules for the child, and what will be his work?" **13** The angel of Yahweh said to Manoah, "She must carefully do everything that I said to her. **14** She may not eat anything that comes from the vines, and do not let her drink wine or strong drink or eat anything unclean. She must obey everything I have commanded her to do."

**15** Manoah said to the angel of Yahweh, "Please stay for a while, to give us time to prepare a young goat for you." **16** The angel of Yahweh said to Manoah, "Even if I stay, I will not eat your food. But if you prepare a burnt offering, offer it to Yahweh." (Manoah did not know that he was the angel of Yahweh.) **17** Manoah said to the angel of Yahweh, "What is your name, so we may honor you when your words come true?" **18** The angel of Yahweh said to him, "Why do you ask my name? It is wonderful!" **19** So Manoah took the young goat with the grain offering and offered them on the rock to Yahweh. He did something marvelous while Manoah and his wife were watching. **20** When the flame went up from the altar toward the sky, the angel of Yahweh went up in the flame of the altar. Manoah and his wife saw this and lay facedown on the ground.

**21** The angel of Yahweh did not appear again to Manoah or his wife. Then Manoah knew that he was the angel of Yahweh. **22** Manoah said to his wife, "We are sure to die, because we have seen God!" **23** But his wife said to him, "If Yahweh wanted to kill us, he would not have received the burnt offering and the grain offering we gave him. He would not have shown us all these things, nor at this time would he have let us hear such things." **24** Later the woman gave birth to a son, and called his name Samson. The boy grew up and Yahweh blessed him. **25** Yahweh's Spirit began to stir him in Mahaneh Dan, between Zorah and Eshtaol.

### Chapter 14

**1** Samson went down to Timnah, and there he saw a woman, one of the daughters of the Philistines. **2** When he returned, he told his father and mother, "I saw a woman in Timnah, one of the daughters of the Philistines. Now get her for me to be my wife." **3** His father and mother said to him, "Is there not a woman among the daughters of your relatives, or among all our people? Are you going to take a wife from the uncircumcised Philistines?" Samson said to his father, "Get her for me, for when I look at her, she pleases me." **4** But his father and his mother did not know that this matter came from Yahweh, for he desired to create a conflict with the Philistines (for at that time the Philistines were ruling Israel).

**5** Then Samson went down to Timnah with his father and his mother, and they came to the vineyards of Timnah. And, look, there one of the young lions came up and was roaring at him. **6** Yahweh's Spirit suddenly came on him, and he tore the lion apart as easily as he would have torn apart a small goat, and he had nothing in his hand. But he did not tell his father or his mother what he had done. **7** He went and spoke with the woman, and when he looked at her, she pleased Samson. **8** A few days later when he returned to marry her, he turned aside to look for the carcass of the lion. And, look, there was a swarm of bees and honey in what was left of the lion's body. **9** He scraped up the honey in his hands and went on, eating as he went. When he came to his father and his mother, he gave some to them, and they ate. But he did not tell them he had taken the honey out of what was left of the lion's body.

**10** Samson's father went down to where the woman was, and Samson gave a feast there, for this was the custom of the young men. **11** As soon as her relatives saw him, they brought him thirty of their friends to be with him. **12** Samson said to them, "Let me now tell you a riddle. If one of you can find it out and tell me the answer during the seven days of the feast, I will give out thirty linen robes and thirty sets of clothes. **13** But if you cannot tell me the answer, then you will give me thirty linen robes and thirty sets of clothes." They said to him, "Tell us your riddle, so we may hear it." **14** He said to them,

"Out of the eater was something to eat;

out of the strong was something sweet."

But his guests could not find the answer in three days.

**15** On the fourth day they said to Samson's wife, "Trick your husband so that he may tell us the answer to the riddle, or we will burn up you and your father's house. Did you invite us here in order to make us poor?" **16** Samson's wife started to weep in front of him; she said, "All you do is hate me! You do not love me. You have told a riddle to some of my people, but you have not told me the answer." Samson said to her, "Look here, if I have not told my father or my mother, should I tell you?" **17** She cried during the seven days that their feast lasted. On the seventh day he told her the answer because she pressured him very much. She told the answer to the relatives of her people. **18** Before the sun went down on the seventh day the men of the city said to him,

"What is sweeter than honey?

What is stronger than a lion?"

Samson said to them,

"If you had not plowed with my heifer,

you would not have found the answer to my riddle."

**19** Then Yahweh's Spirit suddenly came on Samson with power. Samson went down to Ashkelon and killed thirty of their men. He took their plunder, and he gave their clothes to those who had explained the riddle. Burning with anger, he went up to his father's house. **20** Samson's wife was given to his best friend.

### Chapter 15

**1** After some days, during the time of wheat harvest, Samson took a young goat and went to visit his wife. He said to himself, "I will go to my wife's room." But her father would not allow him to go in. **2** Her father said, "I really thought you hated her, so I gave her to your friend. Her younger sister is more beautiful than she is, is she not? Take her instead." **3** Samson said to them, "This time I will be innocent in regard to the Philistines when I hurt them." **4** Samson went and caught three hundred foxes and he tied together each pair, tail to tail. Then he took torches and tied them in the middle of each pair of tails. **5** When he had set the torches on fire, he let the foxes go into the standing grain of the Philistines, and they set fire to both the stacked grain and the grain standing in the field, along with the vineyards and the olive orchards. **6** The Philistines asked, "Who did this?" They were told, "Samson, the Timnite's son-in-law, did this because the Timnite took Samson's wife and gave her to his friend." Then the Philistines went and burned up her and her father. **7** Samson said to them, "If this is what you do, I will get my revenge against you, and after that is done, I will stop." **8** Then he cut them to pieces, hip and thigh, with a great slaughter. Then he went down and lived in a cave in the cliff of Etam.

**9** Then the Philistines came up and encamped in Judah and spread out in Lehi. **10** The men of Judah said, "Why have you come up against us?" They said, "We have come up so we may capture Samson, and do to him as he has done to us." **11** Then three thousand men of Judah went down to the cave in the cliff of Etam, and they said to Samson, "Do you not know that the Philistines are rulers over us? What is this you have done to us?" Samson said to them, "They did to me, and so I have done to them." **12** They said to Samson, "We have come down to tie you up and give you into the hands of the Philistines." Samson said to them, "Swear to me that you will not kill me yourselves." **13** They said to him, "No, we will only tie you with ropes and hand you over to them. We promise we will not kill you." Then they tied him up with two new ropes and brought him up from the rock.

**14** When he came to Lehi, the Philistines came shouting as they met him. Then Yahweh's Spirit came on him with power. The ropes on his arms became like burnt flax, and they fell off his hands. **15** Samson found a fresh jawbone of a donkey, and he picked it up and killed a thousand men with it. **16** Samson said,

"With the jawbone of a donkey, heaps upon heaps,

with the jawbone of a donkey I have killed a thousand men."

**17** When Samson finished speaking, he threw away the jawbone, and he called the place Ramath Lehi. **18** Samson was very thirsty and called on Yahweh and said, "You have given this great victory to your servant. But now will I die of thirst and fall into the hands of those who are uncircumcised?" **19** God split open the hollow place that is at Lehi and water came out. When he drank, his strength returned and he revived. So he called the name of that place En Hakkore, and it is at Lehi to this day. **20** Samson judged Israel in the days of the Philistines for twenty years.

### Chapter 16

**1** Samson went to Gaza and saw a prostitute there, and he went to her. **2** The Gazites were told, "Samson has come here." The Gazites surrounded the place and in secret, they waited for him all night at the city gate. They kept silent all night. They had said, "Let us wait until daylight, and then let us kill him." **3** Samson lay in bed until midnight. At midnight he got up and he took hold of the city gate and its two posts. He pulled them up out of the ground, bar and all, put them on his shoulders, and carried them up to the top of the hill, in front of Hebron.

**4** After this, Samson came to love a woman who lived in the Valley of Sorek. Her name was Delilah. **5** The rulers of the Philistines came up to her, and said to her, "Trick Samson to see where his great strength lies, and by what means we may overpower him, that we may bind him in order to humiliate him. Do this, and each one of us will give you 1,100 pieces of silver." **6** Then Delilah said to Samson, "Please, tell me how is it that you are so strong, and how could anyone bind you, so you might be controlled?" **7** Samson said to her, "If they tie me with seven fresh bowstrings that have not been dried, then I will become weak and be like any other man." **8** Then the rulers of the Philistines brought up to Delilah seven fresh bowstrings that had not been dried, and she tied Samson up with them. **9** Now she had men hiding in secret, staying in her inner room. She said to him, "The Philistines are upon you, Samson!" But he broke the bowstrings like a thread of yarn when it touches the fire. So the secret of his strength was not discovered.

**10** Then Delilah said to Samson, "This is how you have deceived me and told me lies. Please, tell me how you can be overpowered." **11** He said to her, "If they tie me up with new ropes which have never been used for work, I will become weak and like any other man." **12** So Delilah took new ropes and tied him up with them, and said to him, "The Philistines are upon you, Samson!" The men lying in wait were in the inner room. But Samson tore off the ropes from his arms like they were a piece of thread.

**13** Delilah said to Samson, "Until now you have deceived me and told me lies. Tell me how you may be overpowered." Samson said to her, "If you weave seven locks of my hair into a fabric on a loom, and then nail that to the loom, I will be like any other man." **14** While he slept, Delilah wove seven locks of his hair into the fabric on the loom and nailed it to the loom, and she said to him, "The Philistines are upon you, Samson!" He woke from his sleep and he pulled out the fabric and the pin from the loom.

**15** She said to him, "How can you say, 'I love you,' when you do not share your secrets with me? You have mocked me these three times and have not told me how you have such great strength." **16** Every day she pressed him hard with her words, and she pressured him so much that he wished he would die. **17** So Samson told her everything and said to her, "I have never had a razor cut the hair on my head, for I have been a Nazirite for God from my mother's womb. If my head is shaved, then my strength will leave me, and I will become weak and be like every other man."

**18** When Delilah saw that he had told her the truth about everything, she sent and called for the rulers of the Philistines, saying, "Come up again, for he has told me everything." Then the rulers of the Philistines went up to her, bringing the silver in their hands. **19** She had him fall asleep in her lap. She called for a man to shave off the seven locks of his head, and she began to subdue him, for his strength had left him. **20** She said, "The Philistines are upon you, Samson!" He woke up out of his sleep and said, "I will get out like the other times and shake myself free." But he did not know that Yahweh had left him. **21** The Philistines captured him and put out his eyes. They brought him down to Gaza and bound him with bronze shackles. He turned the millstone at the prison house. **22** But the hair on his head began to grow again after it had been shaved.

**23** The rulers of the Philistines gathered together to offer a great sacrifice to Dagon their god, and to rejoice. They said, "Our god has conquered Samson, our enemy, and put him in our hands." **24** When the people saw him, they praised their god, for they said, "Our god has conquered our enemy and given him to us—the destroyer of our country, who killed many of us."

**25** When they were celebrating, they said, "Call for Samson, that he may make us laugh." They called for Samson out of the prison and he made them laugh. They made him stand between the pillars. **26** Samson said to the boy who held his hand, "Permit me to touch the pillars on which the building rests, so that I can lean against them." **27** Now the house was full of men and women. All the rulers of the Philistines were there. There were on the roof about three thousand men and women, who were looking on while Samson was entertaining them.

**28** Samson called to Yahweh and said, "Lord Yahweh, call me to mind! Please strengthen me only this once, God, so that I may have revenge in one blow on the Philistines for taking my two eyes." **29** Samson held on to the two middle pillars on which the building rested, and he leaned against them, one pillar with his right hand, and the other with his left. **30** Samson said, "Let me die with the Philistines!" He stretched out with his strength and the building fell on the rulers and on all the people who were in it. So the dead that he killed when he died were more than those he killed during his life. **31** Then his brothers and all the house of his father came down. They took him, brought him back and buried him between Zorah and Eshtaol in the burial place of Manoah, his father. Samson had judged Israel for twenty years.

### Chapter 17

**1** There was a man in the hill country of Ephraim, and his name was Micah. **2** He said to his mother, "The 1,100 pieces of silver that were taken from you, about which you spoke a curse, and which I heard—look here! I have the silver with me. I stole it." His mother said, "May Yahweh bless you, my son!" **3** He restored the 1,100 pieces of silver to his mother and his mother said, "I set apart this silver to Yahweh, for my son to make a carved image and a cast metal figure. So now, I restore it to you." **4** When he restored the money to his mother, his mother took two hundred pieces of silver and gave them to a metal worker who made them into a carved image and a cast metal figure, and they were placed in the house of Micah. **5** The man Micah had a house of idols and he made an ephod and household gods, and he hired one of his sons to become his priest. **6** In those days there was no king in Israel, and everyone did what was right in his own eyes.

**7** Now there was a young man of Bethlehem in Judah, of the clan of Judah, who was a Levite. He stayed there to fulfill his duties. **8** The man left Bethlehem in Judah to go and find a place to live. As he journeyed, he came to Micah's house in the hill country of Ephraim. **9** Micah said to him, "Where do you come from?" The man said to him, "I am a Levite of Bethlehem in Judah, and I am traveling to find a place where I might live." **10** Micah said to him, "Stay with me, and be to me a father and a priest. I will give you ten pieces of silver a year, a suit of clothes, and your food." So the Levite went into his house. **11** The Levite was content to live with the man, and the young man became to Micah like one of his sons. **12** Micah set apart the Levite for sacred duties, and the young man became his priest, and was in Micah's house. **13** Then Micah said, "Now I know that Yahweh will do good for me, because this Levite has become my priest."

### Chapter 18

**1** In those days there was no king in Israel. The tribe of the descendants of Dan was looking for a territory to live in, for up to that day they had not received any inheritance from among the tribes of Israel. **2** The people of Dan sent five men from the whole number of their tribe, men who were experienced warriors from Zorah and from Eshtaol, to scout the land on foot, and to look it over. They said to them, "Go and look over the land." They came to the hill country of Ephraim, to the house of Micah, and they spent the night there. **3** When they were near Micah's house, they recognized the speech of the young Levite. So they stopped and asked him, "Who brought you here? What are you doing in this place? Why are you here?" **4** He said to them, "This is what Micah has done for me: He has hired me to become his priest." **5** They said to him, "Please seek the advice of God, so we may know whether the journey we are going on will be successful." **6** The priest said to them, "Go in peace. Yahweh will lead you in the way you should go."

**7** Then the five men left and came to Laish, and they saw that the people were living in safety, in the same way the Sidonians lived, undisturbed and secure. There was no one who conquered them or who oppressed them in any way in the land. They lived far away from the Sidonians and had no dealings with anyone. **8** They returned to their tribe in Zorah and Eshtaol. Their relatives asked them, "What is your report?" **9** They said, "Come! Let us attack them! We have seen the land and it is very good. Are you doing nothing? Do not be slow to attack and conquer the land. **10** When you go, you will come to a secure people, and the land is wide! God has given it to you—a place that does not lack anything in the land."

**11** Six hundred men of the tribe of Dan, armed with weapons of war, set out from Zorah and Eshtaol. **12** They went up and camped at Kiriath Jearim, in Judah. This is why people called that place Mahaneh Dan to this day; it is west of Kiriath Jearim. **13** They went away from there to the hill country of Ephraim and came to the house of Micah.

**14** Then the five men who had gone to scout the country of Laish said to their relatives, "Do you know that in these houses there are an ephod, household gods, a carved image, and a cast metal figure? Decide now what you will do." **15** So they turned in there and came to the house of the young man, the Levite, at the house of Micah, and they greeted him. **16** Now the six hundred Danites, armed with weapons of war, stood at the entrance of the gate. **17** The five men who had gone to scout out the land went there and they took the carved figure, the ephod, the household gods, and the cast metal figure, while the priest stood by the opening of the gate with the six hundred men armed with weapons of war. **18** When these went into Micah's house and took the carved image, the ephod, the household gods, and the cast metal figure, the priest said to them, "What are you doing?" **19** They said to him, "Be quiet! Put your hand on your mouth and come with us, and be to us a father and a priest. Is it better for you to be priest for the house of one man, or to be priest for a tribe and a clan in Israel?" **20** The priest's heart was glad. He took the ephod, the household gods, and the carved figure, and went along with the people.

**21** So they turned and went away, putting the little children, their livestock and their valuable possessions in front of them. **22** When they were a good distance from the house of Micah, the men who were in the houses near Micah's house were called together, and they caught up with the Danites. **23** They shouted to the Danites, and they turned and said to Micah, "Why have you been called together?" **24** He said, "You stole the gods that I made, you have taken my priest, and you are leaving. What else do I have left? How can you ask me, 'What is bothering you?'" **25** The people of Dan said to him, "You should not let us hear you say anything, or some very angry men will attack you, and you and your family will be killed." **26** Then the people of Dan went their way. When Micah saw that they were too strong for him, he turned and went back to his house.

**27** The people of Dan took what Micah had made, as well as his priest, and they came to Laish, to a people who were undisturbed and secure and they struck them with the edge of the sword and burned the city. **28** There was no one to rescue them because it was a long way from Sidon, and they had no dealings with anyone. It was in the valley that is near Beth Rehob. The Danites rebuilt the city and lived there. **29** They named the city Dan, the name of Dan their ancestor, who was one of Israel's sons. But the name of the city used to be Laish. **30** The people of Dan set up the carved figure for themselves. Jonathan son of Gershom, son of Moses, he and his sons were priests for the tribe of the Danites until the day of the land's captivity. **31** So they worshiped Micah's carved figure that he made as long as the house of God was at Shiloh.

### Chapter 19

**1** In those days, when there was no king in Israel, there was a man, a Levite, living for a while in the most remote area of the hill country of Ephraim. He took for himself a woman, a concubine from Bethlehem in Judah. **2** But his concubine acted like a prostitute against him; she left him and went back to her father's house in Bethlehem of Judah. She stayed there for four months. **3** Then her husband got up and went after her in order to persuade her to come back. His servant was with him, and a yoke of donkeys. She brought him into her father's house. When the girl's father saw him, he was glad to meet him. **4** His father-in-law, the girl's father, persuaded him to stay for three days. They ate and drank, and they spent the night there. **5** On the fourth day they got up early and he prepared to go, but the girl's father said to his son-in-law, "Strengthen yourself with a bit of bread, then you may go." **6** So the two of them sat down to eat and drink together. Then the girl's father said, "Please be willing to spend the night and have a good time." **7** When the Levite got up to leave, the father of the young woman urged him to stay, so he changed his plan and spent the night there again. **8** On the fifth day he woke up early to leave, but the girl's father said, "Strengthen yourself, and wait until the afternoon." So the two of them had a meal. **9** When the Levite and his concubine and his servant rose up to depart, his father-in-law, the girl's father said to him, "See now, the day is advancing toward evening. Please stay another night, and have a good time. You can get up early tomorrow and go back home."

**10** But the Levite was not willing to spend the night. He got up and left. He went toward Jebus (that is Jerusalem). He had a pair of saddled donkeys—and his concubine was with him. **11** When they were near Jebus, the day was nearly over, and the servant said to his master, "Come, let us turn aside to the city of the Jebusites and spend the night in it." **12** His master said to him, "We will not turn aside into a city of foreigners who do not belong to the people of Israel. We will go on to Gibeah." **13** The Levite said to his young man, "Come, let us go to one of those other places, and spend the night in Gibeah or Ramah." **14** So they went on, and the sun set as they came near to Gibeah, in the territory of Benjamin. **15** They turned aside there to spend the night in Gibeah. They went and sat down in the city square, but no one took them into his house for the night.

**16** But then an old man was coming from his work in the field that evening. He was from the hill country of Ephraim, and he was staying for a while in Gibeah. But the men living in that place were Benjamites. **17** He raised his eyes and saw the traveler in the city square. The old man said, "Where are you going? Where are you coming from?" **18** The Levite said to him, "We are on our way from Bethlehem in Judah to the most remote part of the hill country of Ephraim, which is where I come from. I went to Bethlehem in Judah, and I am going to the house of Yahweh, but there is no one who will take me into his house. **19** We have straw and feed for our donkeys, and there is bread and wine for me and your female servant here, and for this young man with your servants. We lack nothing." **20** The old man greeted them, "Peace be with you! I will take care of all your needs. Only do not spend the night in the square." **21** So the man brought the Levite into his house and gave feed to the donkeys. They washed their feet and ate and drank.

**22** While they were making their hearts glad, some men of the city, worthless men, surrounded the house, beating on the door. They spoke to the old man, the master of the house, saying, "Bring out the man who came into your house, so we can know him." **23** The man, the master of the house, went out to them and said to them, "No, my brothers, please do not do this evil thing! Since this man is a guest in my house, do not do this act of disgraceful folly! **24** See, my virgin daughter and his concubine are here. Let me bring them out now. Violate them and do with them whatever you like. But do not do such an act of disgraceful folly to this man!" **25** But the men would not listen to him, so the man seized his concubine and brought her out to them. They raped her and abused her all throughout the night, and at dawn they let her go. **26** At dawn the woman came and she fell down at the door of the man's house where her master was, and she lay there until it was light.

**27** Her master rose up in the morning and opened the doors of the house and went out to go on his way. He could see his concubine lying there at the door, with her hands on the threshold. **28** The Levite said to her, "Get up. Let us go." But there was no answer. He put her on the donkey, and the man set out for home. **29** When the Levite came to his house, he took a knife, and he took hold of his concubine, and cut her up, limb by limb, into twelve pieces, and sent the pieces everywhere throughout Israel. **30** All who saw this said, "Such a thing has never been done or seen from the day the people of Israel came up out of the land of Egypt to this present day. Think about it! Give us advice! Tell us what to do!"

### Chapter 20

**1** Then all the people of Israel—from Dan to Beersheba, including the land of Gilead also—came out, and the congregation assembled together as one man before Yahweh at Mizpah. **2** The leaders of all the people, of all the tribes of Israel, took their places in the assembly of the people of God—400,000 footmen ready to fight with the sword. **3** Now the people of Benjamin heard that the people of Israel had gone up to Mizpah. The people of Israel said, "Tell us how this wicked thing happened." **4** The Levite, the husband of the woman who had been murdered, answered, "I came to Gibeah in the territory that belongs to Benjamin, I and my concubine, to spend the night. **5** During the night, the leaders of Gibeah attacked me, surrounding the house, intending to kill me. They raped my concubine, and she died. **6** I took my concubine and cut her body into pieces, and sent them into each region of Israel's inheritance, because they have committed wickedness and an act of disgraceful folly in Israel. **7** Now, all you people of Israel, give your advice and counsel here."

**8** All the people arose together as one man, and they said, "None of us will go to his tent, and none of us will return to his house! **9** But now this is what we must do to Gibeah: We will attack it as the lot directs us. **10** We will take ten men of a hundred throughout all the tribes of Israel, and one hundred of a thousand, and one thousand of ten thousand, to get provisions for these people, so that when they come to Gibeah in Benjamin, they may punish them for the act of disgraceful folly they committed in Israel." **11** So all the men of Israel assembled against the city, united as one man.

**12** The tribes of Israel sent men through all the tribe of Benjamin, saying, "What is this wickedness that was done among you? **13** Therefore, give us those wicked men of Gibeah, so we may put them to death, and so we will completely remove this evil from Israel." But the Benjamites would not listen to the voice of their brothers, the people of Israel. **14** Then the sons of Benjamin came together out of the cities to Gibeah to get ready to fight against the sons of Israel. **15** The people of Benjamin brought together from their cities to fight on that day twenty-six thousand soldiers who were trained to fight with the sword. In addition, there were seven hundred of their chosen men from the inhabitants of Gibeah. **16** Among all these soldiers were seven hundred chosen men who were left-handed. Each of them could sling a stone at a hair and not miss.

**17** The people of Israel, not counting the number from Benjamin, numbered 400,000 men, who were trained to fight with the sword. All of these were men of war. **18** The people of Israel arose, went up to Bethel, and asked for advice from God. They asked, "Who first will attack the people of Benjamin for us?" Yahweh said, "Judah will attack first."

**19** The sons of Israel got up in the morning and they moved their camp near Gibeah. **20** The men of Israel went out to fight against Benjamin. They set up their battle positions against them at Gibeah. **21** The people of Benjamin came out of Gibeah, and they killed twenty-two thousand men from among Israel on that day. **22** But the men of Israel strengthened themselves and they formed the battle line in the same place where they had taken positions on the first day. **23** Then the people of Israel went up and they wept before Yahweh until evening, and they sought direction from Yahweh. They said, "Should we go again to fight against our brothers, the people of Benjamin?" Yahweh said, "Attack them!"

**24** So the people of Israel went against the soldiers of Benjamin the second day. **25** On the second day, Benjamin went out against them from Gibeah and they killed eighteen thousand men from the people of Israel. All were men who trained to fight with the sword. **26** Then all the people of Israel, all the people, went up to Bethel and wept, and there they sat before Yahweh and they fasted that day until the evening and offered burnt offerings and peace offerings before Yahweh. **27** The people of Israel asked Yahweh—for the ark of the covenant of God was there in those days, **28** and Phinehas, son of Eleazar son of Aaron, was serving before the ark in those days—"Should we go out to battle once more against the people of Benjamin, our brothers, or stop?" Yahweh said, "Attack, for tomorrow I will help you defeat them."

**29** So Israel set men in secret places around Gibeah. **30** The people of Israel fought against the people of Benjamin for the third day, and they formed their battle lines against Gibeah as they had done before. **31** The people of Benjamin went and fought against the people, and they were drawn away from the city. They began to kill some of the people. There were about thirty men of Israel who died in the fields and on the roads. One of the roads went up to Bethel, and the other went to Gibeah. **32** Then the people of Benjamin said, "They are defeated and they are running away from us, just as at first." But the people Israel said, "Let us run back and draw them away from the city to the roads." **33** All the men of Israel rose up out of their places and formed themselves into lines for battle at Baal Tamar. Then the people of Israel who had been hiding in secret places ran out from their places from Maareh Gibeah. **34** Ten thousand chosen men out of all Israel came out against Gibeah, and the fighting was fierce, but the Benjamites did not know that disaster was close to them. **35** Yahweh defeated Benjamin before Israel. On that day, the people of Israel destroyed 25,100 men of Benjamin. All these who died were those who had been trained to fight with the sword.

**36** So the people of Benjamin saw they were defeated. The men of Israel had given ground to Benjamin, because they were trusting in the men they had placed in hidden positions outside Gibeah. **37** Then the men who were hiding got up and hurried, and they rushed into Gibeah, and they struck all the city with the edge of the sword. **38** The arranged signal between the men of Israel and the men hiding in secret would be that a great cloud of smoke would rise up out of the city. **39** When the signal was sent the men of Israel would turn from the battle. Now Benjamin began to attack and they killed about thirty men of Israel, and they said, "It is sure that they are defeated before us, as in the first battle." **40** But when a pillar of smoke began to rise up out of the city, the Benjamites turned and saw the smoke rising to the sky from the whole city. **41** Then the men of Israel turned against them. The men of Benjamin were terrified, for they saw that disaster had come on them. **42** So they ran away from the men of Israel, escaping on the way to the wilderness. But the fighting overtook them. The men of Israel came out of the cities and destroyed them where they stood. **43** They surrounded the Benjamites, chased them and trampled them down at Nohah, all the way to the east side of Gibeah. **44** From the tribe of Benjamin, eighteen thousand people died, all of them men who were distinguished in battle. **45** They turned and fled toward the wilderness to the rock of Rimmon. The Israelites killed five thousand more of them along the roads. They kept going after them, following them closely all the way to Gidom, and there they killed two thousand more. **46** All the soldiers of Benjamin who fell that day were twenty-five thousand—men who were trained to fight with the sword; all of them were distinguished in battle. **47** But six hundred men turned and fled to the wilderness, toward the rock of Rimmon. For four months they stayed at the rock of Rimmon. **48** And the men of Israel turned back against the descendants of Benjamin and struck down with the edge of the sword the entire city, the animals and everything that they found. They also burned down every town in their path.

# Judges 20 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Benjamin destroyed

The army of Israel destroys all the tribe of Benjamin except 600 men. After this point in time, the tribe of Benjamin becomes mostly insignificant.

#### Judges 01

##### as one man

This simile speaks of the group as acting as a single person. It refers to a group of who people do everything together in the same way. Alternate translation: "as if they were a single man"

##### from Dan to Beersheba

This refers to the land as a whole. Alternate translation: "from all the eleven tribes"

#### Judges 02

##### God—400,000 footmen

"God, and also 400,000 regular soldiers came"

##### ready to fight

"capable of going to war." They were not going to fight each other.

#### Judges 03

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here the author of the book tells background information about what the people of Benjamin knew.

##### had gone up to Mizpah

Mizpah was located high in the mountains.

#### Judges 04

##### to spend the night

"for the night" or "to stay for a night"

#### Judges 05

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 06

##### wickedness and an act of disgraceful folly

The phrase "act of disgraceful folly" describes the "wickedness." Alternate translation: "outrageous wickedness"

##### act of disgraceful folly

a senseless, disgraceful act. See how you translated this in Judges 19:23

#### Judges 07

##### Now

This word is used to introduce the conclusion of the speech of the Levite.

##### give your advice and counsel here

The words "advice" and "counsel" refer to the same thing and are repeated for emphasis. They can be combined. Alternate translation: "decide what we need to do about this"

#### Judges 08

##### as one

This simile speaks of the group as acting as a single person. They all acted together in exactly the same way. Alternate translation: "as if they were a single man"

##### None of us will go to his tent ... none of us will return to his house

These two clauses say basically the same thing twice for emphasis. They can be combined. The words "none ... go" and "none ... return" emphasizes how the people will continue to stay there. They can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "We will all stay here"

#### Judges 09

##### But now

These words introduce the main portion of what the people say after the initial exclamation.

##### as the lot directs

This involved tossing or rolling small marked stones to determine what God wants.

#### Judges 10

##### ten men of a hundred ... one hundred of a thousand ... one thousand of ten thousand

"10 men out of 100 ... 100 out of 1,000 ... 1,000 out of 10,000"

##### provisions

food and other things the people need

##### act of disgraceful folly

a senseless, disgraceful act. See how you translated this in Judges 19:23

#### Judges 11

##### assembled against the city

"came together to attack the city"

#### Judges 12

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 13

##### put them to death

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "kill them" or "execute them"

##### the voice of their brothers

Here "voice" refers to the message that they spoke. Alternate translation: "what their brother said"

#### Judges 14

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 15

##### twenty-six thousand

"26,000"

##### seven hundred

"700"

#### Judges 16

##### left-handed

A left-handed person is someone who is more skilled with their left hand than with their right hand.

##### could sling a stone at a hair and not miss

This show how amazingly well they could aim and hit their target. It can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "could throw a stone at even a hair and hit it" or "could throw a stone at something as small as a hair and hit it"

#### Judges 17

##### not counting

"not including"

##### 400,000

"four hundred thousand men"

#### Judges 18

##### asked for advice from God

"asked God what to do" or "asked God how to continue"

#### Judges 19

##### moved their camp near Gibeah

There is some question about the meaning of the Hebrew text. Instead of meaning that they set up their camp near Gibeah, it could mean that the army went out and stood across from Gibeah ready to fight.

#### Judges 20

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 21

##### twenty-two thousand

"22,000"

#### Judges 22

##### strengthened themselves

Here "strengthened" is an idiom that means they encouraged each other.

##### they formed the battle line

This probably means that the Israelites prepared their battle lines for the next day's fighting. Alternate translation: "they got ready to fight the next day"

#### Judges 23

##### they sought direction from Yahweh

The method they used is not stated. The priest may have cast lots to determine God's will.

#### Judges 24

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 25

##### eighteen thousand

"18,000"

#### Judges 26

##### before Yahweh

"in Yahweh's presence" or "to Yahweh"

#### Judges 27

##### for the ark of the covenant of God was there in those days

This is background information that the author inserted to help the reader understand how the people asked Yahweh for an answer.

##### was there in those days

"was at Bethel in those days"

#### Judges 28

##### and Phinehas ... was serving before the ark in those days

This is background information that the author inserted to help the reader understand how the people asked Yahweh for an answer.

##### was serving before the ark

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "was serving as priest before the ark"

##### Attack

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Attack the army of Benjamin"

#### Judges 29

##### Israel set men

Here "Israel" refers to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "the Israelites"

##### secret places

"in ambush"

#### Judges 30

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 31

##### fought against the people

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "fought against the people of Israel"

##### they were drawn away from the city

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel drew them away from the city"

##### They began to kill some of the people

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "The people of Benjamin began to kill some of the men of Israel"

#### Judges 32

##### just as at first

"just as before" or "just like the first two times"

#### Judges 33

##### Baal Tamar

This is the name of a city.

##### Maareh Gibeah

This is the name of a place. Other translations may read "fields of Gibeah" or "west of Gibeah" or "Maareh Geba."

#### Judges 34

##### Ten thousand

"10,000"

##### chosen men

This is an idiom that means these were particularly good soldiers. Alternate translation: "well-trained soldier"

##### disaster was close to them

Here immanent disaster is spoken of as if it was standing very close by them. Alternate translation: "they would soon be completely defeated"

#### Judges 35

##### 25,100 men

"twenty-five thousand one hundred men"

##### men of Benjamin

"soldiers of Benjamin"

#### Judges 36

##### The men of Israel had given ground to Benjamin, because they were trusting in the men ... outside Gibeah

From this sentence until the end of verse 41 is background information that the writer inserted to explain to the readers how the ambush defeated the Benjamites.

##### had given ground to Benjamin

This is an idiom that means they intentionally retreated. Alternate translation: "had allowed Benjamin to move forward"

#### Judges 37

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 38

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Judges 39

##### General Information:

This verse continues to give background information that the writer inserted to explain to the readers how the ambush defeated the Benjamites.

##### would turn from the battle

"would retreat from the fight"

##### they are defeated before us

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "we have defeated them"

#### Judges 40

##### General Information:

This verse continues to give background information that the writer inserted to explain to the readers how the ambush defeated the Benjamites.

#### Judges 41

##### disaster

great harm, trouble, misery

##### come on them

This idiom means it happened to them. Alternate translation: "happened to them"

#### Judges 42

##### But the fighting overtook them

This speaks about fighting as if it were a person who could overtake someone. Alternate translation: "But the soldiers of Israel caught up to them" or "But they were not able to escape the fighting"

#### Judges 43

##### Nohah

This is the name of a place.

##### trampled them down

The completed destruction of the Benjamites is spoken of as if the Israelites stomped on their bodies. Alternate translation: "they completely destroyed them"

#### Judges 44

##### eighteen thousand

"18,000"

##### were distinguished in battle

"had fought bravely in the battle"

#### Judges 45

##### They turned and fled

"The remaining Benjamites turned and fled"

##### five thousand ... two thousand

"5,000 ... 2,000"

##### Gidom

This is the name of a place.

#### Judges 46

##### twenty-five thousand

"25,000"

#### Judges 47

##### six hundred

"600"

#### Judges 48

##### turned back against the descendants of Benjamin

These people of Benjamin are not the soldiers who fled to the rock of Rimmon, but the ones who were still in the city.

##### the entire city

Here "the entire city" refers to all the people in that city. Alternate translation: "everyone who was in the city"

##### in their path

"along the way"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Judges 20:1

##### Who assembled together before Yahweh at Mizpah?

All the people from Dan to Beersheba, including the land of Gilead, assembled together before Yahweh at Mizpah.

#### Judges 20:5

##### What did the Levite say the relatives of Gibeah did to him?

The Levite said the relatives of Gibeah attacked him, surrounding the house and intending to kill him.

#### Judges 20:9

##### How would the people attack Gibeah?

They would attack Gibeah as the lot directed them.

#### Judges 20:13

##### Why did the tribes of Israel tell Benjamin to give them those wicked men of Gibeah?

The tribes of Israel told Benjamin to give them those wicked men of Gibeah, so the tribes might put them to death, and so they would completely remove this evil from Israel.

#### Judges 20:14

##### Why did the people of Benjamin come together out of the cities to Gibeah?

The people of Benjamin came together out of the cities to Gibeah to get ready to fight against the people of Israel.

#### Judges 20:16

##### What was special about the seven hundred chosen men?

The seven hundred chosen men were left-handed; each of them could sling a stone at a hair and not miss.

#### Judges 20:18

##### Why did Judah attack Benjamin first?

The people asked for advice from God, and Yahweh said, "Judah will attack first."

#### Judges 20:26

##### After Benjamin killed many soldiers of Israel, what did the soldiers of Israel do?

After Benjamin killed many soldiers of Israel, the soldiers of Israel wept and fasted before Yahweh until evening. They also offered burnt offerings and peace offering before Yahweh.

#### Judges 20:27

##### How did the people of Israel ask Yahweh?

The people of Israel asked Yahweh by using the ark of the covenant of God, which was there in those days.

#### Judges 20:32

##### When the soldiers of Israel drew away from the city to the roads, what did the people of Benjamin think?

When the soldiers of Israel drew away from the city to the roads, the people of Benjamin thought they were running away.

#### Judges 20:36

##### Why had the men of Israel given ground to Benjamin?

The men of Israel had given ground to Benjamin because they were counting on the men they had placed in hidden positions outside Gibeah.

#### Judges 20:38

##### What was the signal between the soldiers of Israel and the men hiding in secret?

The arranged signal between the soldiers of Israel and the men hiding in secret was that a great cloud of smoke would rise up out of the city.

#### Judges 20:42

##### Why could the men of Benjamin not escape?

The men of Benjamin ran away from the soldiers of Israel escaping on the way to the wilderness, but the fighting overtook them.

#### Judges 20:47

##### How many soldiers of Benjamin turned and fled to the wilderness?

Six hundred men turned and fled to the wilderness.

### Chapter 21

**1** Now the men of Israel had sworn at Mizpah, "None of us will give his daughter to marry a Benjamite." **2** Then the people went to Bethel and sat there before God until the evening, and with loud voices they wept bitterly. **3** They called out, "Why, Yahweh, God of Israel, has this happened to Israel, that one of our tribes should be missing today?" **4** The next day the people got up early and built an altar there and offered burnt offerings and peace offerings. **5** The people of Israel said, "Which of all the tribes of Israel did not come up in the assembly to Yahweh?" For they had made an important oath concerning anyone who did not come up to Yahweh at Mizpah. They said, "He would certainly be put to death." **6** The people of Israel had compassion for their brother Benjamin. They said, "Today one tribe has been cut off from Israel. **7** Who will provide wives for those who are left, since we have made an oath to Yahweh that we will not let any of them marry our daughters?"

**8** They said, "Which of the tribes of Israel did not come up to Yahweh at Mizpah?" It was found that no one had come to the assembly from Jabesh Gilead. **9** For when the people were set out in an orderly manner, behold, none of the inhabitants of Jabesh Gilead were there. **10** The assembly sent twelve thousand of their bravest men with instructions to go and strike the inhabitants of Jabesh Gilead with the edge of the sword, including the women and children. **11** "Do this: Every male and every woman who has known a man by lying with him you will devote to destruction." **12** The men found among those living in Jabesh Gilead four hundred young virgins who had not known a man by lying with him, and they took them to the camp at Shiloh in Canaan.

**13** The entire assembly sent a message and told the people of Benjamin who were at the rock of Rimmon that they were offering them peace. **14** The Benjamites returned at that time and they were given the women of Jabesh Gilead who had been kept alive, but there were not enough women for all of them. **15** The people had compassion on Benjamin, because Yahweh had made a division between the tribes of Israel.

**16** Then the elders of the assembly said, "How will we arrange wives for the Benjamites who are left, since the women of Benjamin have been killed?" **17** They said, "There must be an inheritance for the escaped remnant of Benjamin, so that a tribe is not destroyed from Israel. **18** We cannot give them wives from our daughters, for the people of Israel had sworn, saying, 'Cursed be anyone who gives a wife to Benjamin.'" **19** So they said, "You know there is a feast for Yahweh every year at Shiloh (which is north of Bethel, east of the road that goes up from Bethel to Shechem, and south of Lebonah)." **20** They instructed the men of Benjamin, saying, "Go and hide in secret and wait in the vineyards. **21** Watch for the time when the girls from Shiloh come out to dance, then rush out of the vineyards and each one of you should grab a wife from the girls of Shiloh, then go back to the land of Benjamin. **22** When their fathers or their brothers come to protest to us, we will say to them, 'Show us favor! Let them remain because we did not get wives for each man during the war. You are innocent, since you did not give your daughters to them.'" **23** The people of Benjamin did so. They took the number of wives that they needed from the girls who were dancing and they carried them off to be their wives. They went and returned to the place of their inheritance. They rebuilt the towns and lived in them. **24** Then the people of Israel left that place and went home, each one to his own tribe and clan, and each one to his own inheritance.

**25** In those days there was no king in Israel. Everyone did what was right in his own eyes.

### Aaron

#### Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

* Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
* While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
* God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the priests for the people of Israel.

(See also: [priest](#en-priest), [Moses](#en-Moses), [Israel](#en-Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 23:14
* Acts 07:38-40
* Exodus 28:1-3
* Luke 01:05
* Numbers 16:45

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H175, G2

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Aaron, Aaron's

### Abel

#### Facts:

Abel was Adam and Eve's second son. He was Cain's younger brother.

* Abel was a shepherd.
* Abel sacrificed some of his animals as an offering to God.
* God was pleased with Abel and his offerings.
* Adam and Eve's firstborn son Cain murdered Abel.

(See also: [Cain](#en-Cain), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice), [shepherd](#en-shepherd))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 04:02
* Genesis 04:09
* Hebrews 12:24
* Luke 11:49-51
* Matthew 23:35

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1893, G6

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abel, Abel's

### Abimelek

#### Facts:

Abimelek was a Philistine king over the region of Gerar during the time when Abraham and Isaac were living in the land of Canaan.

* Abraham deceived King Abimelek by telling him that Sarah was his sister rather than his wife.
* Abraham and Abimelek made an agreement regarding ownership of wells at Beersheba.
* Many years later, Isaac also deceived Abimelek and the other men of Gerar by saying that Rebekah was his sister, not his wife.
* King Abimelek rebuked Abraham, and later Isaac, for lying to him.
* Another man by the name of Abimelek was a son of Gideon and a brother of Jotham. Some translations may use a slightly different spelling of his name to make it clear that he is a different person from King Abimelek.

(See also: [Beersheba](#en-Beersheba), [Gerar](#en-Gerar), [Gideon](#en-Gideon), [Jotham](#en-Jotham), [Philistines](#en-Philistines))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 11:21
* Genesis 20:03
* Genesis 20:05
* Genesis 21:22
* Genesis 26:11
* Judges 09:54

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H40

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abimelek, Abimelek's

### Ai

#### Facts:

In Old Testament times, Ai was the name of a Canaanite town located just south of Bethel and about 8 km northwest of Jericho.

* After defeating Jericho, Joshua led the Israelites in an attack of Ai. But they were easily defeated because God was not pleased with them.
* An Israelite named Achan had stolen plunder from Jericho, and God ordered that he and his family be killed. Then God helped the Israelites defeat the people of Ai.

(See also: [Bethel](#en-Bethel), [Jericho](#en-Jericho))

#### Bible References:

* Ezra 02:27-30
* Genesis 12:8-9
* Genesis 13:3-4
* Joshua 07:03
* Joshua 08:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5857

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ai

### Amalekite

#### Related Words:

Amalek

#### Facts:

The Amalekites were a nomadic people group who lived throughout the southern part of Canaan, from the Negev desert to the country of Arabia. This people group was descended from Amalek, the grandson of Esau.

* The Amalekites were bitter enemies of Israel from the time when Israel first came to live in Canaan.
* Sometimes the term "Amalek" is used figuratively to refer to all the Amalekites.
* In one battle against the Amalekites, when Moses held up his hands, the Israelites were winning. When he got tired and his hands came down, they started losing. So Aaron and Hur helped Moses keep his hands up until the Israelite army had defeated the Amalekites.
* Both King Saul and King David led military expeditions against the Amalekites.
* After one victory over the Amalekites, Saul disobeyed God by keeping some of the plunder and by not killing the Amalekite king as God had commanded him to do.

(See also: [Arabia](#en-Arabia), [David](#en-David), [Esau](#en-Esau), [Negev](#en-Negev), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 04:43
* 2 Samuel 01:08
* Exodus 17:10
* Numbers 14:23-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6002, H6003

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Amalek, Amalekite, Amalekites

### Ammon

#### Related Words:

Ammonite

#### Facts:

The "people of Ammon" or the "Ammonites" were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

* The term "Ammonitess" refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as "Ammonite woman."
* The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
* At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(See also: [curse](#en-curse), [Jordan River](#en-Jordan River), [Lot](#en-Lot))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
* Ezekiel 25:02
* Genesis 19:38
* Joshua 12:1-2
* Judges 11:27
* Zephaniah 02:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5983, H5984, H5985

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites

### Amorite

#### Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

* Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
* The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
* God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
* Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

#### Bible References:

* Amos 02:09
* Ezekiel 16:03
* Genesis 10:16
* Genesis 15:14-16
* Joshua 09:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H567

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Amorite, Amorites, Amorites'

### Aram

#### Related Words:

Aram of Damascus, Aramaic, Aramean

#### Facts:

"Aram" was the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a region northeast of Canaan, where modern-day Syria is located.

* One of Shem's sons was named Aram. Another man named Aram was a cousin of Rebekah.
* The region of Aram was probably named after one of the two men.
* The people living in Aram became known as "Arameans" and spoke "Aramaic."
* The region of Aram later became known by the Greek name "Syria."
* The term "Paddan Aram" means "plain of Aram" and this plain was located in the northern part of Aram.
* Some of Abraham's relatives lived in the city of Haran, which was located in "Paddan Aram."
* In the Old Testament, sometimes the terms "Aram" and "Paddan Aram" refer to the same region.
* The term "Aram Naharaim" may mean "Aram of Two Rivers." This region was located in the northern part of Mesopotamia and was to the east of "Paddan Aram."
* Jesus and other Jews of his time also spoke Aramaic.

(See also: [Mesopotamia](#en-Mesopotamia), [Paddan Aram](#en-Paddan Aram), [Rebekah](#en-Rebekah), [Shem](#en-Shem), [Syria](#en-Syria))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:17-19
* 2 Samuel 08:06
* Amos 01:5
* Ezekiel 27:16
* Genesis 31:19-21
* Hosea 12:12
* Psalm 060:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H130, H726, H758, H761, H762, H763, H1834, H7421

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Aram, Aram of Damascus, Aramaic, Aramean, Arameans

### Asher

#### Facts:

Asher was the eighth son of Jacob. His descendants formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel and this tribe was also called "Asher."

* Asher's mother was Zilpah, the servant of Leah.
* His name means "happy" or "blessed."
* Asher was also the name of the territory assigned to the tribe of Asher when the Israelites entered the promised land.

(See also: [Israel](#en-Israel), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
* 1 Kings 04:16
* Ezekiel 48:1-3
* Genesis 30:13
* Luke 02:36-38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H836

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Asher, Asher's

### Asherah

#### Related Words:

Asherah pole, Ashtoreth

#### Facts:

Asherah was the name of a goddess that was worshiped by Canaanite people groups during Old Testament times. "Ashtoreth" may be another name for "Asherah," or it could be the name of a different goddess that was very similar.

* The term "Asherah poles" refers to carved wooden images or carved trees that were made to represent this goddess.
* Asherah poles were often set up near altars of the false god Baal, who was thought of as Asherah's husband. Some people groups worshiped Baal as the sun god and Asherah or Ashtoreth as the moon goddess.
* God commanded the Israelites to destroy all the carved images of Asherah.
* Some Israelite leaders such as Gideon, King Asa, and King Josiah obeyed God and led the people in destroying these idols.
* But other Israelite leaders such as King Solomon, King Manasseh, and King Ahab did not get rid of the Asherah poles and influenced the people to worship these idols.

(See also: [god](#en-god), [Baal](#en-Baal), [Gideon](#en-Gideon), [image](#en-image), [Solomon](#en-Solomon))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 18:04
* 2 Kings 21:03
* Isaiah 27:9
* Judges 03:7-8
* Micah 05:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H842, H6253

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Asherah, Asherah pole, Asherah poles, Asherahs, Ashtoreth, Ashtoreths

### Ashkelon

#### Facts:

In Bible times, Ashkelon was a major Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. It still exists in Israel today.

* Ashkelon was one of the five most important Philistine cities, along with Ashdod, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
* The Israelites did not completely conquer the people of Ashkelon, even though the kingdom of Judah occupied its hill country.
* Ashkelon remained occupied by the Philistines for hundreds of years.

(See also: [Ashdod](#en-Ashdod), [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Ekron](#en-Ekron), [Gath](#en-Gath), [Gaza](#en-Gaza), [Philistines](#en-Philistines), [the sea](#en-the sea))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 06:17-18
* Amos 01:8
* Jeremiah 25:19-21
* Joshua 13:2-3
* Judges 01:18-19
* Zechariah 09:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H831

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ashkelon

### Baal

#### Facts:

"Baal" means "lord" or "master" and was the name of the primary false god that was worshiped by the Canaanites.

* There were also local false gods that had "Baal" as part of their names, such as "Baal of Peor." Sometimes all these gods together are referred to as "the Baals."
* Some people had names that included the word "Baal" in them.
* The worship of Baal included evil practices such as sacrificing children and using prostitutes.
* At different time periods throughout their history, the Israelites also became deeply involved in Baal worship, following the example of the pagan nations around them.
* During the reign of King Ahab, God's prophet Elijah set up a test to prove to the people that Baal does not exist and that Yahweh is the only true God. As a result, the prophets of Baal were destroyed and the people started worshiping Yahweh again.

(See also: [Ahab](#en-Ahab), [Asherah](#en-Asherah), [Elijah](#en-Elijah), [god](#en-god), [prostitute](#en-prostitute), [Yahweh](#en-Yahweh))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 16:31
* 1 Samuel 07:3-4
* Jeremiah 02:7-8
* Judges 02:11
* Numbers 22:41

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G896

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Baal, Baal's

### Beersheba

#### Facts:

In Old Testament times, Beersheba was a city located about 45 miles southwest of Jerusalem in a desert area that is now called the Negev.

* The desert surrounding Beersheba was the wilderness area where Hagar and Ishmael wandered after Abraham sent them away from his tents.
* The name of this city means "well of the oath." It was given this name when Abraham swore an oath to not punish King Abimelech's men for seizing control of one of Abraham's wells.

(See also: [Abimelek](#en-Abimelek), [Abraham](#en-Abraham), [Hagar](#en-Hagar), [Ishmael](#en-Ishmael), [Jerusalem](#en-Jerusalem), [oath](#en-oath))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 03:20
* 2 Samuel 17:11
* Genesis 21:14-16
* Genesis 21:31
* Genesis 46:01
* Nehemiah 11:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H884

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Beersheba

### Benjamin

#### Related Words:

Benjamite

#### Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, "son of my right hand."

* He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
* The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
* The term "Benjamite" refers to a person who belonged to the tribe of Benjamin.
* King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
* The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(See also: [Israel](#en-Israel), [Jacob](#en-Jacob), [Joseph (OT)](../names/josephot.md), [Paul](#en-Paul), [Rachel](#en-Rachel), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
* 1 Kings 02:08
* Acts 13:21-22
* Genesis 35:18
* Genesis 42:04
* Genesis 42:35-36
* Philippians 03:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1144, G958

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Benjamin, Benjamin's, Benjamite, Benjamites

### Beth Shemesh

#### Facts:

Beth Shemesh was the name of a Canaanite city approximately 30 kilometers west of Jerusalem.

* The Israelites captured Beth Shemesh during the time of Joshua's leadership.
* Beth Shemesh was a city that was set aside as a place for the Levite priests to live.
* When the Philistines were taking the captured ark of the covenant back to Jerusalem, Beth Shemesh was the first city where they stopped with it.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#en-ark of the covenant), [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Jerusalem](#en-Jerusalem), [Joshua](#en-Joshua), [Levi](#en-Levi), [Philistines](#en-Philistines))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 04:09
* 1 Samuel 06:09
* Joshua 19:20-22
* Judges 01:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1053

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Beth Shemesh

### Bethel

#### Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called "Luz."

* After receiving God's promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as "Bethel," which was better known.
* When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
* This city did not have the name "Bethel" until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as "Luz (later called Bethel)" in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
* Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(See also: [Abraham](#en-Abraham), [altar](#en-altar), [Jacob](#en-Jacob), [Jerusalem](#en-Jerusalem))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 12:8-9
* Genesis 35:01
* Hosea 10:15
* Judges 01:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1008

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bethel

### Bethlehem

#### Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as "Ephrathah," which was probably its original name.

* Bethlehem has been called the "city of David," since King David was born there.
* The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from "Bethlehem Ephrathah."
* Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
* The name "Bethlehem" means "house of bread" or "house of food."

(See also: [Caleb](#en-Caleb), [David](#en-David), [Micah](#en-Micah))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 35:16
* John 07:42
* Matthew 02:06
* Matthew 02:16
* Ruth 01:02
* Ruth 01:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H672, H1035, G965

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bethlehem

### Caleb

#### Facts:

Caleb was one of the twelve Israelite spies whom Moses sent to explore the land of Canaan.

* He and Joshua told the people to trust God to help them defeat the Canaanites.
* Joshua and Caleb were the only men of their generation who were allowed to enter the Promised Land of Canaan.
* Caleb requested that the land of Hebron be given to him and his family. He knew that God would help him defeat the people who lived there.

(See also: [Hebron](#en-Hebron), [Joshua](#en-Joshua))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 04:13
* Joshua 14:6-7
* Judges 01:12
* Numbers 32:10-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3612, H3614

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Caleb, Caleb's

### Cana

#### Facts:

Cana was a village or town in the province of Galilee, located about nine miles north of Nazareth.

* Cana was the hometown of Nathanael, one of the Twelve.
* Jesus attended a wedding feast in Cana and performed his first miracle there when he turned water into wine.
* Some time after that, Jesus came back to Cana and met an official there from Capernaum who requested healing for his son.

(See also: [Capernaum](#en-Capernaum), [Galilee](#en-Galilee), [the twelve](#en-the twelve))

#### Bible References:

* John 02:1-2
* John 04:46-47

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2580

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cana

### Canaan

#### Related Ideas:

Canaanite

#### Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

* The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
* This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
* God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(See also: [Ham](#en-Ham), [Promised Land](#en-Promised Land))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 13:19-20
* Exodus 03:7-8
* Genesis 09:18
* Genesis 10:19-20
* Genesis 13:07
* Genesis 47:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3667, H3669, G5478

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites

### Cush

#### Related Ideas:

Cushite

#### Facts:

Cush was the oldest son of Noah's son Ham. He was also the ancestor of Nimrod. Two of his brothers were named Egypt and Canaan.

* In Old Testament times, "Cush" was the name of a large region of land south of Israel. It is probable that the land was named after Ham's son Cush.
* The ancient region of Cush covered an area of land that may have, at different times, included parts of the modern-day countries of Sudan, Egypt, Ethiopia, and possibly, Saudi Arabia.
* Another man named Cush is mentioned in the Psalms. He was a Benjamite.

(See also: [Arabia](#en-Arabia), [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Egypt](#en-Egypt), [Ethiopia](#en-Ethiopia))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:8-10
* Ezekiel 29:10
* Genesis 02:13
* Genesis 10:6-7
* Jeremiah 13:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3568, H3569, H3570, H3571

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cush, Cushite, Cushites

### Dan

#### Related Words:

Danite

#### Facts:

Dan was the fifth son of Jacob and was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.The region settled by the tribe of Dan in the northern part of Canaan also was given this name.

* During the time of Abram, there was a city named Dan located west of Jerusalem.
* Years later, during the time the nation of Israel entered the promised land, a different city named Dan was located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem.
* The term "Danites" refers to the descendants of Dan, who were also members of his clan.

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Jerusalem](#en-Jerusalem), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 12:35
* 1 Kings 04:25
* Exodus 01:1-5
* Genesis 14:14
* Genesis 30:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1835, H1839, H2051

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Dan, Dan's, Danite, Danites

### Delilah

#### Facts:

Delilah was a Philistine woman who was loved by Samson, but was not his wife.

* Delilah loved money more than she loved Samson.
* The Philistines bribed Delilah to trick Samson into telling her how he could be made weak. When his strength was gone, the Philistines captured him.

(See also: [bribe](#en-bribe), [Philistines](#en-Philistines), [Samson](#en-Samson))

#### Bible References:

* Judges 16:4-5
* Judges 16:6-7
* Judges 16:10
* Judges 16:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1807

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Delilah, Delilah's

### Edom

#### Related Words:

Edomite, Idumea

#### Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as "Edom" and later, "Idumea." The "Edomites" were his descendants.

* The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
* During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it "Idumea."
* The name "Edom" means "red," which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
* In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
* The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(See also: [adversary](#en-adversary), [birthright](#en-birthright), [Esau](#en-Esau), [Obadiah](#en-Obadiah), [prophet](#en-prophet))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 25:30
* Genesis 32:03
* Genesis 36:01
* Isaiah 11:14-15
* Joshua 11:16-17
* Obadiah 01:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H123, H130, G2401

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Edom, Edom's, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea

### Egypt

#### Related Words:

Egyptian

#### Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

* In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
* Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
* Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
* For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
* Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(See also: [Herod the Great](#en-Herod the Great), [Joseph (NT)](../names/josephnt.md), [Nile River](#en-Nile River), [patriarch](#en-patriarch))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 04:7-9
* Acts 07:10
* Exodus 03:07
* Genesis 41:29
* Genesis 41:57
* Matthew 02:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4692, H4693, H4713, H4714, G124, G125

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Egypt, Egypt's, Egyptian, Egyptians, Egyptians'

### Ekron

#### Related Words:

Ekronite

#### Facts:

Ekron was a major city of the Philistines, located nine miles inland from the Mediterranean Sea.

* A temple of the false god Baal-zebub was located at Ekron.
* When the Philistines captured the ark of the covenant, they took it to Ashdod and then moved it to Gath and Ekron because God kept causing people to get sick and die in whatever city the ark was taken to. Finally the Philistines sent the ark back to Israel.
* When King Ahaziah fell through the roof of his house and injured himself, he sinned by trying to find out from the false god Baal-zebub of Ekron as to whether or not he would die from his injuries. Because of this sin, Yahweh said that he would die.

(See also: [Ahaziah](#en-Ahaziah), [ark of the covenant](#en-ark of the covenant), [Ashdod](#en-Ashdod), [Beelzebul](#en-Beelzebul), [god](#en-god), [Gath](#en-Gath), [Philistines](#en-Philistines))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 05:10
* Joshua 13:2-3
* Judges 01:18-19
* Zechariah 09:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6138, H6139

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ekron, Ekronites

### Eleazar

#### Facts:

Eleazar was the name of several men in the Bible.

* Eleazar was the third son of Moses' brother Aaron. After Aaron died, Eleazar became the high priest in Israel.
* Eleazar was also the name of one of David's "mighty men."
* Another Eleazar was one of Jesus' ancestors.

(See also: [Aaron](#en-Aaron), [high priest](#en-high priest), [David](#en-David), [mighty](#en-mighty))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 24:03
* Judges 20:27-28
* Numbers 26:1-2
* Numbers 34:16-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H499, G1648

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Eleazar, Eleazar's

### Ephraim

#### Related Words:

Ephraimite

#### Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

* The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
* Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel.
* Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to "the hill country of Ephraim" or "the mountains of Ephraim."

(See also: [kingdom of Israel](#en-kingdom of Israel), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:66-69
* 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
* Ezekiel 37:16
* Genesis 41:52
* Genesis 48:1-2
* John 11:54

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H669, H673, G2187

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ephraim, Ephraim's, Ephraimite, Ephraimites

### Eve

#### Facts:

This was the name of the first woman. Her name means "life" or "living."

* God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
* Eve was created to be Adam's "helper." She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
* Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(See also: [Adam](#en-Adam), [life](#en-life), [Satan](#en-Satan))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 02:13
* 2 Corinthians 11:03
* Genesis 03:20
* Genesis 04:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2332, G2096

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Eve, Eve's

### Gaza

#### Related Words

Gazite

#### Facts:

During Bible times, Gaza was a prosperous Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 38 kilometers south of Ashdod. It was one of the Philistines' five major cities.

* Because of its location, Gaza was a key seaport where commercial activities took place between many different people groups and nations.
* Today, the city of Gaza is still an important seaport in the Gaza Strip, which is a region of land located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea bordered by Israel on the north and east, and by Egypt on the south.
* Gaza was the city that the Philistines took Samson to after they had captured him.
* Philip the evangelist was walking along the desert road to Gaza when he met an Ethiopian eunuch.
* A Gazite was a person from the city of Gaz.

(See also: [Ashdod](#en-Ashdod), [Philip](#en-Philip), [Philistines](#en-Philistines), [Ethiopia](#en-Ethiopia), [Gath](#en-Gath))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 04:24-25
* Acts 08:26
* Genesis 10:19
* Joshua 10:40-41
* Judges 06:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5804, H5841, G1048

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gaza, Gazites

### Gibeah

#### Facts:

Gibeah was a city located north of Jerusalem and south of Bethel.

* Gibeah was in the territory of the tribe of Benjamin.
* It was the site of a huge battle between the Benjamites and Israel.

(See also: [Benjamin](#en-Benjamin), [Bethel](#en-Bethel), [Jerusalem](#en-Jerusalem))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:26-27
* 2 Samuel 21:06
* Hosea 09:09
* Judges 19:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1390

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gibeah

### Gideon

#### Facts:

Gideon was an Israelite man whom God raised up to deliver the Israelites from their enemies.

* During the time when Gideon lived, a people group called the Midianites kept attacking the Israelites and destroying their crops.
* Even though Gideon was afraid, God used him to lead the Israelites to fight against the Midianites and defeat them.
* Gideon also obeyed God by taking down altars to the false gods Baal and Asherah.
* He not only led the people in defeating their enemies but also encouraged them to obey and worship Yahweh, the one true God.

(See also: [Baal](#en-Baal), [Asherah](#en-Asherah), [deliver](#en-deliver), [Midian](#en-Midian), [Yahweh](#en-Yahweh))

#### Bible References:

* Hebrews 11:32-34
* Judges 06:11
* Judges 06:23
* Judges 08:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1439, H1441

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gideon, Gideon's

### Gilead

#### Gileadite

#### Facts:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

* This region was also referred to as the "hill country of Gilead" or "Mount Gilead."
* "Gilead" was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.
* A Giliadite was a descendant of Gilead and a member of his clan.

(See also: [Gad](#en-Gad), [Jephthah](#en-Jephthah), [Manasseh](#en-Manasseh), [Reuben](#en-Reuben), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:22
* 1 Samuel 11:01
* Amos 01:03
* Deuteronomy 02:36-37
* Genesis 31:21
* Genesis 37:25-26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1568, H1569

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites

### Gilgal

#### Facts:

Gilgal was a town north of Jericho and was the first place that the Israelites camped after crossing the Jordan River to enter Canaan.

* At Gilgal, Joshua set up twelve stones taken from the dry river bed of the Jordan River that they had just crossed over.
* Gilgal was the city that Elijah and Elisha were leaving as they crossed the Jordan when Elijah was taken up to heaven.
* There were also several other places called "Gilgal" in the Old Testament.
* The word "gilgal" means "circle of stones," perhaps referring to a place where a circular altar was built.
* In the Old Testament, this name almost always occurs as "the gilgal." This may indicate that it was not a specific place name but rather was a description of a certain kind of place.

(See also: [Elijah](#en-Elijah), , [Elisha](#en-Elisha), [Jericho](#en-Jericho), [Jordan River](#en-Jordan River))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 07:15-17
* 2 Kings 02:1-2
* Hosea 04:15
* Judges 02:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1537

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gilgal

### God

#### Related Ideas:

the living God

#### Facts:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

* God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
* He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
* God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
* He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
* People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
* God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
* The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being."
* Other ways to translate "God" could be "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
* Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
* Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
* Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god."
* The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(See also: [create](#en-create), [god](#en-god), [God the Father](#en-God the Father), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [god](#en-god), [Son of God](#en-Son of God), [Yahweh](#en-Yahweh))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 Samuel 10:7-8
* 1 Timothy 04:10
* Colossians 01:16
* Deuteronomy 29:14-16
* Ezra 03:1-2
* Genesis 01:02
* Hosea 04:11-12
* Isaiah 36:6-7
* James 02:20
* Jeremiah 05:05
* John 01:03
* Joshua 03:9-11
* Lamentations 03:43
* Micah 04:05
* Philippians 02:06
* Proverbs 24:12
* Psalms 047:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H136, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2623, H3069, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2312, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God, God's, the living God

### Ham

#### Related Words:

Hamite

#### Facts:

Ham was the second of Noah's three sons.

* During the worldwide flood that covered the whole earth, Ham and his brothers were with Noah in the ark, along with their wives.
* After the flood, there was an occasion where Ham was very dishonoring to his father, Noah. As a result, Noah cursed Ham's son Canaan and all his descendants, who eventually became known as the Canaanites.

(See also: [ark](#en-ark), [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [dishonor](#en-dishonor), [Noah](#en-Noah))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 05:32
* Genesis 06:10
* Genesis 07:13-14
* Genesis 10:1
* Genesis 10:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2526

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ham, Hamite, Hamites

### Hamath

#### Related Words:

Hamath Zobah, Hamathite, Lebo Hamath

#### Facts:

Hamath was an important city in northern Syria, north of the land of Canaan. The Hamathites were descendants of Noah's son Canaan.

* The name "Lebo Hamath" probably refers to a mountain pass near the city of Hamath.
* Some versions translate "Lebo Hamath" as "entrance to Hamath."
* King David defeated enemies of King Tou of Hamath, causing them to be on good terms.
* Hamath Zobah was one of Solomon's storehouse cities which he had conquered. Hamath Zobah was used as a place to keep provisions (see 2 Chronicles 8:3).
* The land of Hamath was where King Zedekiah was killed by King Nebuchadnezzar and where King Jehoahaz was captured by an Egyptian pharaoh.
* The term "Hamathite" could also be translated as "person from Hamath."

(See also: [Babylon](#en-Babylon), [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Nebuchadnezzar](#en-Nebuchadnezzar), [Syria](#en-Syria), [Zedekiah](#en-Zedekiah))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:3-4
* 2 Samuel 08:09
* Amos 06:1-2
* Ezekiel 47:15-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2574, H2577

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hamath, Hamath Zobah, Hamathites, Lebo Hamath

### Hamor

#### Facts:

Hamor was a Canaanite man living in the city of Shechem when Jacob and his family were living in nearby Sukkoth. He was a Hivite.

* Jacob bought a family burial ground from Hamor's sons.
* While they were there, Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah.
* Dinah's brothers took revenge on Hamor's family and killed all the men in the city of Shechem.

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Hivite](#en-Hivite), [Jacob](#en-Jacob), [Shechem](#en-Shechem), [Sukkoth](#en-Sukkoth))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:14-16
* Genesis 34:02
* Genesis 34:21
* Joshua 24:32-33
* Judges 09:28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2544

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hamor, Hamor's

### Hebron

#### Related Words:

Hebronite

#### Facts:

Hebron was a city located in the high, rocky hills about 20 miles south of Jerusalem.

* The city was built around 2000 BC during the time of Abram. It was mentioned many times in the historical accounts given in the Old Testament.
* Hebron had a very important role in King David's life. Several of his sons, including Absalom, were born there.
* The city was destroyed around AD 70 by the Romans.

(See also: [Absalom](#en-Absalom))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 02:10-11
* Genesis 13:18
* Genesis 23:1-2
* Genesis 35:27
* Genesis 37:12-14
* Judges 01:10
* Numbers 13:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2275, H2276

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hebron, Hebronites, Hebronites', Hebronite's, Hebron's

### Hermon

#### Facts:

Mount Hermon is the name of the tallest mountain in Israel at the southern tip of the Lebanon mountain range.

* It is located north of the Sea of Galilee, at the northern border between Israel and Syria.
* Other names given to Mount Hermon by other people groups were "Mount Sirion" and "Mount Senir."
* Mount Hermon has three major peaks. The tallest peak is around 2,800 meters high.

(See also: [Israel](#en-Israel), [Sea of Galilee](#en-Sea of Galilee), [Syria](#en-Syria))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 05:23-24
* Ezekiel 27:4-5
* Joshua 11:16-17
* Psalms 042:06
* Song of Solomon 04:8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2768, H2769, H8149

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hermon, Mount Hermon, Senir

### Hittite

#### Facts:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

* Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
* Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
* One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
* Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
* The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: [descendant](#en-descendant), [Esau](#en-Esau), [foreigner](#en-foreigner), [Ham](#en-Ham), [mighty](#en-mighty), [Solomon](#en-Solomon), [Uriah](#en-Uriah))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 09:20-21
* Exodus 03:7-8
* Genesis 23:11
* Genesis 25:10
* Joshua 01:4-5
* Nehemiah 09:08
* Numbers 13:27-29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2850

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hittite, Hittites

### Hivite

#### Facts:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

* All these groups, including the Hivites, were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
* Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
* When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Hamor](#en-Hamor), [Noah](#en-Noah), [Shechem](#en-Shechem))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 08:7-8
* Exodus 03:7-8
* Genesis 34:02
* Joshua 09:1-2
* Judges 03:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2340

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hivite, Hivites

### Ishmael

Related Words:

Ishmaelite

#### Facts:

Ishmael was the son of Abraham and the Egyptian slave Hagar. There were several other men in the Old Testament named Ishmael.

* The name "Ishmael" means "God hears."
* God promised to bless Abraham's son Ishmael, but he was not the son God had promised to establish his covenant with.
* God protected Hagar and Ishmael when they were sent into the desert.
* While Ishmael was living in the desert of Paran, he married an Egyptian woman.
* Ishmael son of Nethaniah was an army officer from Judah who led a group of men to kill a governor who had been appointed by the Babylonian king, Nebuchadnezzar.
* There were also four other men named Ishmael in the Old Testament.
* An Ishmaelite was a descendant of Ishmael.

(See also: [Abraham](#en-Abraham), [Babylon](#en-Babylon), [covenant](#en-covenant), [desert](#en-desert), [Egypt](#en-Egypt), [Hagar](#en-Hagar), [Isaac](#en-Isaac), [Nebuchadnezzar](#en-Nebuchadnezzar), [Paran](#en-Paran), [Sarah](#en-Sarah))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:28-31
* 2 Chronicles 23:01
* Genesis 16:12
* Genesis 25:9-11
* Genesis 25:16
* Genesis 37:25-26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3458, H3459

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ishmael, Ishmaelite, Ishmaelites, Ishmael's

### Israel

#### Related Ideas:

Israelite

#### Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means "he struggles with God."

* The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
* God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
* The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
* Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
* Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#en-Jacob), [kingdom of Israel](#en-kingdom of Israel), [Judah](#en-Judah), [nation](#en-nation), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 10:01
* 1 Kings 08:02
* Acts 02:36
* Acts 07:24
* Acts 13:23
* John 01:49-51
* Luke 24:21
* Mark 12:29
* Matthew 02:06
* Matthew 27:09
* Philippians 03:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Israel, Israel's, Israelite, Israelite's, Israelites, Israelites'

### Issachar

#### Facts:

Issachar was the fifth son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

* The tribe of Issachar was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
* Issachar's land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.
* It was located just south of the Sea of Galilee.

(See also: [Gad](#en-Gad), [Manasseh](#en-Manasseh), [Naphtali](#en-Naphtali), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel), [Zebulun](#en-Zebulun))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 01:1-5
* Ezekiel 48:23-26
* Genesis 30:18
* Joshua 17:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3485, G2466

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Issachar, Issachar's

### Jebus

#### Related Words

Jebusite

#### Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

* The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
* Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Ham](#en-Ham), [Jerusalem](#en-Jerusalem), [Melchizedek](#en-Melchizedek))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:14
* 1 Kings 09:20-21
* Exodus 03:7-8
* Genesis 10:16
* Joshua 03:9-11
* Judges 01:20-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2982, H2983

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jebus, Jebusite, Jebusites

### Jephthah

#### Facts:

Jephthah was a warrior from Gilead who served as a judge over Israel.

* In Hebrews 11:32, Jephthah is praised as an important leader who delivered his people from their enemies.
* He rescued the Israelites from the Ammonites and led his people to defeat the Ephraimites.
* Jepthah however, made a foolish, hasty vow to God which resulted in the sacrifice of his daughter.

(See also: [Ammon](#en-Ammon), [deliver](#en-deliver), [Ephraim](#en-Ephraim), [judge](#en-judge), [vow](#en-vow))

#### Bible References:

* Hebrews 11:32-34
* Judges 11:1-3
* Judges 11:35
* Judges 12:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3316

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jephthah, Jephthah's

### Jerusalem

#### Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

* The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
* Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
* It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
* Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
* People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#en-Babylon), [Christ](#en-Christ), [David](#en-David), [Jebus](#en-Jebus), [Jesus](#en-Jesus), [Solomon](#en-Solomon), [temple](#en-temple), [Zion](#en-Zion))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:26-27
* John 02:13
* Luke 04:9-11
* Luke 13:05
* Mark 03:7-8
* Mark 03:20-22
* Matthew 03:06
* Matthew 04:23-25
* Matthew 20:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jerusalem, Jerusalem's

### Jezreel

Related Words:

Jezreelite

#### Facts:

Jezreel was an important Israelite city in the territory of the Issachar tribe, located southwest of the Salt Sea. A Jezreelite is a person from this city.

* The city of Jezreel is one of the western points in the Plain of Megiddo, which is also called the "Valley of Jezreel."
* Several kings of Israel had their palaces in the city of Jezreel.
* Naboth's vineyard was located near King Ahab's palace in Jezreel. The prophet Elijah prophesied against Ahab there.
* Ahab's evil wife Jezebel was killed in Jezreel.
* Many other significant events happened in this city, including several battles.

(See also: [Ahab](#en-Ahab), [Elijah](#en-Elijah), [Issachar](#en-Issachar), [Jezebel](#en-Jezebel), [palace](#en-palace), [Salt Sea](#en-Salt Sea))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 04:12
* 1 Samuel 25:43-44
* 2 Kings 08:28-29
* 2 Samuel 02:1-3
* Judges 06:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3157, H3158, H3159

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jezreel, Jezreelite

### Joash

#### Facts:

Joash was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

* One Joash was the father of the Israelite deliverer Gideon.
* Another man named Joash was a descendant of Jacob's youngest son, Benjamin.
* The most well-known Joash became king of Judah at the age of seven. He was the son of Ahaziah, king of Judah, who had been murdered.
* When Joash was a very young child, his aunt saved him from being killed by hiding him away until he was old enough to be crowned king.
* King Joash was a good king who at first obeyed God. But he did not remove the high places, and the Israelites started worshiping idols again.
* King Joash ruled Judah during some of the years that King Jehoash was ruling Israel. They were two distinct kings.

(See also: [Ahaziah](#en-Ahaziah), [altar](#en-altar), [Benjamin](#en-Benjamin), [god](#en-god), [Gideon](#en-Gideon), [high place](#en-high place), [god](#en-god))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 03:10-12
* 2 Chronicles 18:25-27
* 2 Kings 11:03
* Amos 01:01
* Judges 06:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3101, H3135

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Joash, Joash's

### Jonathan

#### Facts:

Jonathan was the name of at least ten men in the Old Testament. The name means "Yahweh has given."

* David's best friend, Jonathan, is the most well-known Jonathan in the Bible with this name. This Jonathan was King Saul's oldest son.
* Other Jonathans mentioned in the Old Testament include a descendant of Moses; a nephew of King David; several priests, including a son of Abiathar; and an Old Testament scribe in whose house the prophet Jeremiah was imprisoned.

(See also: [Abiathar](#en-Abiathar), [David](#en-David), [Moses](#en-Moses), [Jeremiah](#en-Jeremiah), [priest](#en-priest), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md), [scribe](#en-scribe))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 01:41-42
* 1 Samuel 14:1
* 1 Samuel 20:02
* 2 Samuel 01:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3083, H3129

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jonathan, Jonathan's

### Jordan River

#### Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

* Today, the Jordan River separates the countries of Israel and Jordan. Israel is on the west side of the river, and Jordan is on the east side of the river.
* The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
* When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
* Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as "the Jordan."

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Salt Sea](#en-Salt Sea), [Sea of Galilee](#en-Sea of Galilee))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 32:9-10
* John 01:26-28
* John 03:25-26
* Luke 03:3
* Matthew 03:06
* Matthew 03:13-15
* Matthew 04:14-16
* Matthew 19:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3383, G2446

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jordan River, Jordan

### Joshua

#### Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

* Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
* Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
* Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
* In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
* The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
* Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
* There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Haggai](#en-Haggai), [Jericho](#en-Jericho), [Moses](#en-Moses), [Promised Land](#en-Promised Land), [Zechariah (OT)](../names/zechariahot.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 07:25-27
* Deuteronomy 03:21
* Exodus 17:10
* Joshua 01:03
* Numbers 27:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1954, H3091, G2424

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Joshua, Joshua's

### Jotham

#### Facts:

In the Old Testament, there were three men with the name Jotham.

* One man named Jotham was the youngest son of Gideon. Jotham helped defeat his older brother Abimelech, who had killed all the rest of their brothers.
* Another man named Jotham was a king over Judah for sixteen years following the death of his father Uzziah (Azariah).
* Like his father, King Jotham obeyed God and was a good king.
* However, by not removing the places of idol worship he caused the people of Judah to later turn away from God again.
* Jotham is also one of the ancestors listed in the genealogy of Jesus Christ in the book of Matthew.

(See also: [Abimelek](#en-Abimelek), [Ahaz](#en-Ahaz), [Gideon](#en-Gideon), [Uzziah](#en-Uzziah))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 26:21
* 2 Kings 15:05
* Isaiah 01:1
* Judges 09:5-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3147

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jotham, Jotham's

### Judah

#### Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

* It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
* King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
* When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
* In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
* The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(See also: [Jacob](#en-Jacob), [Jew](#en-Jew), [Judah](#en-Judah), [Judea](#en-Judea), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
* 1 Kings 01:09
* Genesis 29:35
* Genesis 38:02
* Luke 03:33
* Ruth 01:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3061, H3063

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judah, Judah's

### Judah

#### Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

* After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
* The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
* Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
* Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: [Judah](#en-Judah), [Salt Sea](#en-Salt Sea))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 30:26-28
* 2 Samuel 12:08
* Hosea 05:14
* Jeremiah 07:33
* Judges 01:16-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4438, H3063, G2455

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judah, kingdom of Judah, language of Judah

### Kadesh

#### Facts:

The names Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, and Meribah Kadesh all refer to an important city in Israel's history which was located in the southern part of Israel, near the region of Edom.

* The city of Kadesh was an oasis, a place where there was water and fertile soil in the middle of a desert named Zin.
* Moses sent twelve spies into the land of Canaan from Kadesh Barnea.
* Israel also encamped at Kadesh during the wandering in the wilderness.
* Kadesh Barnea was where Miriam died.
* It was at Meribah Kadesh where Moses disobeyed God and hit a rock to get water for the Israelites, instead of speaking to it as God had told him to do.
* The name "kadesh" comes from the Hebrew word meaning "holy" or "set apart."

(See also: [desert](#en-desert), [Edom](#en-Edom), [holy](#en-holy))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 48:28
* Genesis 14:7-9
* Genesis 16:14
* Genesis 20:1-3
* Joshua 10:40-41
* Numbers 20:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4809, H6946, H6947

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh

### Kedesh

#### Facts:

Kedesh was a Canaanite city that was taken over by the Israelites when they entered the land of Canaan.

* This city was located in the northern part of Israel, in the portion of land that was given to the tribe of Naphtali.
* Kedesh was one of the cities that was chosen as a place where the Levite priests could live, since they did not have any land of their own.
* It was also set apart as a "city of refuge."

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Hebron](#en-Hebron), [Levi](#en-Levi), [Naphtali](#en-Naphtali), [priest](#en-priest), [refuge](#en-refuge), [Shechem](#en-Shechem), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:72
* Joshua 19:37
* Judges 04:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6943

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Kedesh

### Lebanon

#### Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

* King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
* Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people, who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
* The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(See also: [cedar](#en-cedar), [cypress](#en-cypress), [fir](#en-fir), [Phoenicia](#en-Phoenicia))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 04:32-34
* 2 Chronicles 02:8-10
* Deuteronomy 01:7-8
* Psalms 029:3-5
* Zechariah 10:8-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3844

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lebanon

### Levi

#### Facts:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term "Levite" refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

* The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
* All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
* The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
* Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
* Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: [Matthew](#en-Matthew), [priest](#en-priest), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice), [temple](#en-temple), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
* 1 Kings 08:3-5
* Acts 04:36-37
* Genesis 29:34
* John 01:19-21
* Luke 10:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical, Levi's, Levite's, Levites'

### Lord Yahweh

#### Related Ideas:

Yahweh God

#### Facts:

In the Old Testament, "Lord Yahweh" is frequently used to refer to the one true God.

* The term "Lord" is a divine title and "Yahweh" is God's personal name.
* "Yahweh" is also often combined with the term "God" to form "Yahweh God."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If some form of "Yahweh" is used for the translation of God's personal name, the terms "Lord Yahweh" and "Yahweh God" can be translated literally. Also consider how the term "Lord" is translated in other contexts when referring to God.
* Some languages put titles after the name and would translate this as "Yahweh Lord." Consider what is natural in the project language: should the title "Lord" come before or after "Yahweh"?
* "Yahweh God" could also be rendered as "God who is called Yahweh" or "God who is the Living One" or "I am, who is God."
* If the translation follows the tradition of rendering "Yahweh" as "Lord" or "LORD," the term "Lord Yahweh" could be translated as "Lord God" or "God who is the Lord." Other possible translations could be, "Master LORD" or "God the LORD."
* The term "Lord Yahweh" *should not* be rendered as "Lord LORD" because readers may not notice the difference in letter size that has traditionally been used to distinguish these two words and it would look very strange.

(See also: [God](#en-God), [lord](#en-lord), [lord](#en-lord), [Yahweh](#en-Yahweh))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:3-4
* 2 Samuel 07:21-23
* Deuteronomy 03:23-25
* Ezekiel 39:25-27
* Ezekiel 45:18
* Jeremiah 44:26
* Judges 06:22
* Micah 01:2-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H136, H3068

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

### Manasseh

#### Facts:

There were five men by the name of Manasseh in the Old Testament:

* Manasseh was the name of Joseph's firstborn son.
* Both Manasseh and his younger brother Ephraim were adopted by Joseph's father, Jacob which gave their descendants the privilege of being among the twelve tribes of Israel.
* The descendants of Manasseh formed one of the tribes of Israel.

The tribe of Manasseh was often called the "half-tribe of Manasseh" because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan. Members of the tribe are called "Manassites."

One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh.

* King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
* God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.
* Two men named Manasseh lived during the time of Ezra. These men were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.
* One other Manasseh was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods.

(See also: [altar](#en-altar), [Dan](#en-Dan), [Ephraim](#en-Ephraim), [Ezra](#en-Ezra), [god](#en-god), [Jacob](#en-Jacob), [Judah](#en-Judah), [pagan](#en-pagan), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 15:09
* Deuteronomy 03:12-13
* Genesis 41:51
* Genesis 48:1-2
* Judges 01:27-28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4519, H4520, G3128

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Manasseh, Manassites, Manasseh's

### Micah

#### Facts:

Micah was a prophet of Judah around 700 years before Christ, when the prophet Isaiah was also ministering to Judah. Another man named Micah lived during the time of the judges.

* The book of Micah is near the end of the Old Testament.
* Micah prophesied about the destruction of Samaria by the Assyrians.
* Micah rebuked the people of Judah for disobeying God and warned them that their enemies would attack them.
* His prophecy ends with a message of hope in God, who is faithful and saves his people.
* In the book of Judges, the story is told of a man named Micah living in Ephraim who made an idol out of silver. A young Levite priest who came to live with him stole the idol and other things, and took off with a group of Danites. Eventually the Danites and the priest settled in the city of Laish and they set up that same silver idol to worship.

(See also: [Assyria](#en-Assyria), [Dan](#en-Dan), [Ephraim](#en-Ephraim), [god](#en-god), [Isaiah](#en-Isaiah), [Judah](#en-Judah), [judge](#en-judge), [Levi](#en-Levi), [priest](#en-priest), [prophet](#en-prophet), [Samaria](#en-Samaria), [silver](#en-silver))

#### Bible References:

* Jeremiah 26:18-19
* Micah 01:1
* Micah 06:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4318

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Micah, Micah's

### Midian

#### Related Words

Midianite

#### Facts:

Midian was a son of Abraham and his wife Keturah. Midian was also the name of a people group and region located in the northern Arabian Desert to the south of the land of Canaan. The people of that group were called "Midianites."

* When Moses first left Egypt, he went to the region of Midian where he met the daughters of Jethro and helped them water their flocks. Later Moses married one of Jethro's daughters.
* Joseph was taken to Egypt by a group of Midianite slave traders.
* Many years later the Midianites attacked and raided the Israelites in the land of Canaan. Gideon led the Israelites in defeating them.
* Many of the modern-day Arabian tribes are descendants of this group.

(See also [Arabia](#en-Arabia), [Egypt](#en-Egypt), [flock](#en-flock), [Gideon](#en-Gideon), [Jethro](#en-Jethro), [Moses](#en-Moses))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:30
* Exodus 02:16
* Genesis 25:1-4
* Genesis 36:34-36
* Genesis 37:28
* Judges 07:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4080, H4084, H4092

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Midian, Midianite, Midianites, Midian's

### Mizpah

#### Facts:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means, "look-out point" or "watchtower."

* When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
* One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(See also: [David](#en-David), [Judah](#en-Judah), [kingdom of Israel](#en-kingdom of Israel), [Moab](#en-Moab), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 15:20-22
* 1 Samuel 07:5-6
* 1 Samuel 07:10-11
* Jeremiah 40:5-6
* Judges 10:17-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4708, H4709

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mizpah

### Moab

#### Facts:

Moab was the son of Lot's elder daughter. Moab also became the name of the land where Moab and his family lived. The term "Moabite" refers to a person who is descended from Moab or who lives in the country of Moab.

* The country of Moab was located east of the Salt Sea.
* Moab was southeast from the town of Bethlehem where Naomi's family lived.
* The people in Bethlehem called Ruth a "Moabitess" because she was a woman from the country of Moab. This term could also be translated as "Moabite woman" or "woman from Moab."

(See also: [Bethlehem](#en-Bethlehem), [Judea](#en-Judea), [Lot](#en-Lot), [Ruth](#en-Ruth), [Salt Sea](#en-Salt Sea))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 19:37
* Genesis 36:34-36
* Ruth 01:1-2
* Ruth 01:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4124, H4125

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Moab, Moabite, Moabites, Moabitess, Moab's

### Moses

#### Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

* When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
* God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
* After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
* Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(See also: [Miriam](#en-Miriam), [Promised Land](#en-Promised Land), [Ten Commandments](#en-Ten Commandments))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:21
* Acts 07:30
* Exodus 02:10
* Exodus 09:01
* Matthew 17:04
* Romans 05:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Moses, Moses'

### Naphtali

#### Facts:

Naphtali was the sixth son of Jacob. His descendants formed the tribe of Naphtali, which was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

* Sometimes the name Naphtali was used to refer to the land where the tribe lived.
* The land of Naphtali was located in the northern part of Israel, next to the tribes of Dan and Asher. its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Kinnereth.
* This tribe was mentioned in both the Old and New Testaments of the Bible.

(See also: [Asher](#en-Asher), [Dan](#en-Dan), [Jacob](#en-Jacob), [Sea of Galilee](#en-Sea of Galilee), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 04:15
* Deuteronomy 27:13-14
* Ezekiel 48:1-3
* Genesis 30:08
* Judges 01:33
* Matthew 04:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5321, G3508

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Naphtali, Naphtali's

### Nazirite

#### Related Ideas:

Nazirite vow

#### Facts:

The term "Nazirite" refers to a person who has taken a "Nazirite vow." Mostly men took this vow, but women could also take it.

* A person who took the Nazirite vow agreed to not have any food or drink made from grapes for period that had been agreed upon for the fulfillment of the vow. During this period he was also not to get his hair cut and not go near a dead body.
* When the required length of time had passed, and the vow had been fulfilled, the Nazirite would go to the priest and provide an offering. This would include the cutting and burning of his hair. All other restrictions would also be removed.
* Samson is a well-known man in the Old Testament who was under the Nazirite vow.
* The angel announcing John the Baptist's birth told Zechariah that his son would not drink strong drink, which may indicate that John was under the Nazirite vow.
* According to a passage in the book of Acts the apostle Paul may also have at one time taken this vow, according to one passage in the book of Acts.

(See also: [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice), [Samson](#en-Samson), [vow](#en-vow), [Zechariah (OT)](../names/zechariahot.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 18:18-19
* Amos 02:11-12
* Judges 13:05
* Numbers 06:1-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5139

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Nazirite, Nazirite vow, Nazirites

### Negev

#### Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

* The original word means "the South," and some English versions translate it this way.
* It could be that the "South" is not located where the Negev Desert is today.
* When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
* Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
* The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
* The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(See also: [Abraham](#en-Abraham), [Beersheba](#en-Beersheba), [Israel](#en-Israel), [Judah](#en-Judah), [Kadesh](#en-Kadesh), [Salt Sea](#en-Salt Sea), [Simeon](#en-Simeon))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 12:09
* Genesis 20:1-3
* Genesis 24:62
* Joshua 03:14-16
* Numbers 13:17-20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5045, H6160

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Negev

### Perizzite

#### Facts:

​The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

* The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament Book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
* Note that the clan of Perez, called the "Perezites," was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [god](#en-god))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 09:20-21
* 2 Chronicles 08:7-8
* Exodus 03:16-18
* Genesis 13:07
* Joshua 03:9-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6522

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Perizzite, Perizzites

### Philistines

#### Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia​ along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means "people of the sea."

* There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
* The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
* The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
* The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
* King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(See also: [Ashdod](#en-Ashdod), [Ashkelon](#en-Ashkelon), [David](#en-David), [Ekron](#en-Ekron), [Gath](#en-Gath), [Gaza](#en-Gaza), [Goliath](#en-Goliath), [Salt Sea](#en-Salt Sea))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
* 1 Samuel 13:04
* 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
* Genesis 10:11-14
* Psalm 056:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6429, H6430

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Philistines, Philistine, Philistines', Philistine's

### Phinehas

#### Facts:

Phineas was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

* One of Aaron's grandsons was a priest named Phinehas, who strongly opposed the worship of false gods in Israel.
* Phineas saved the Israelites from a plague that Yahweh had sent to punish them for marrying Midianite women and worshiping their false gods.
* On several occasions Phinehas went with the Israelite army to destroy the Midianites.
* The other Phinehas mentioned in the Old Testament was one of the evil sons of Eli the priest during the time of the prophet Samuel.
* Phinehas and his brother Hophni were both killed when the Philistines attacked Israel and stole the Ark of the Covenant.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#en-ark of the covenant), [Jordan River](#en-Jordan River), [Midian](#en-Midian), [Philistines](#en-Philistines), [Samuel](#en-Samuel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 04:04
* Ezra 08:02
* Joshua 22:13-14
* Numbers 25:6-7

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6372

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Phinehas, Phinehas'

### Ramah

#### Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

* Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
* When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before being moved to Babylon.
* Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(See also: [Benjamin](#en-Benjamin), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 27:27
* 1 Samuel 02:11
* 2 Chronicles 16:1
* Jeremiah 31:15
* Joshua 18:25-28
* Matthew 02:17-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7414, G4471

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ramah

### Reuben

#### Facts:

Reuben was the firstborn son of Jacob. His mother was Leah. Reuben's descendants were called Reubenites. \* When his brothers were planning to kill their younger brother Joseph, Reuben spared Joseph's life by telling them to put him into a pit instead. \* Reuben came back later to rescue Joseph, but the other brothers had sold him as a slave to merchants passing by. \* Reuben's descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

(See also: [Jacob](#en-Jacob), [Joseph (OT)](../names/josephot.md), [Leah](#en-Leah), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 29:32
* Genesis 35:21-22
* Genesis 42:22
* Genesis 42:37

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7205, H7206, G4502

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Reuben, Reubenites, Reubenite, Reuben's

### Rimmon

#### Facts:

Rimmon was the name of a man and of several places mentioned in the Bible. It was also the name of a false god.

* A man named Rimmon was a Benjamite from the city of Beeroth in Zebulun. This man's sons murdered Ishbosheth, the crippled son of Jonathan.
* Rimmon was a town in the southern part of Judah, in the region occupied by the tribe of Benjamin.
* The "rock of Rimmon" was a place of safety where the Benjamites went to escape from being killed in a battle.
* Rimmon Perez was an unknown location in the Judean wilderness.
* The Syrian commander Naaman spoke of the temple of the false god Rimmon, where the king of Syria worshiped.

(See also: [Benjamin](#en-Benjamin), [Judea](#en-Judea), [Naaman](#en-Naaman), [Syria](#en-Syria), [Zebulun](#en-Zebulun))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 05:18
* 2 Samuel 04:5-7
* Judges 20:45-46
* Judges 21:13-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7417

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Rimmon, Rimmon's

### Samson

#### Facts:

Samson was one of the judges, or deliverers, of Israel. He was from the tribe of Dan.

* God gave Samson superhuman strength, which he used to fight against Israel's enemies, the Philistines.
* Samson was put under a vow to never cut his hair and to never drink wine or any other fermented drink. As long as he kept this vow, God continued to give him strength.
* He finally broke his vow and allowed his hair to be cut, enabling the Philistines to capture him.
* While Samson was in captivity, God enabled him to regain his strength and gave him the opportunity to destroy the temple of the false god Dagon, along with many Philistines.

(See also: [deliver](#en-deliver), [Philistines](#en-Philistines), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* Hebrews 11:32-34
* Judges 13:25
* Judges 16:02
* Judges 16:31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8123, G4546

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Samson, Samson's

### Sea of Reeds

#### Facts:

The "Sea of Reeds" was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the "Red Sea."

* The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
* The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God performed a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
* The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
* This could also be translated as "Reed Sea."

(See also: [Arabia](#en-Arabia)**.** [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Egypt](#en-Egypt))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:35-37
* Exodus 13:17-18
* Joshua 04:22-24
* Numbers 14:23-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3220, H5488, G2063, G2281

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

### Shechem

#### Facts:

Shechem was a town in Canaan located about 40 miles north of Jerusalem. Shechem was also the name of a man in the Old Testament.

* The town of Shechem was where Jacob settled after being reconciled to his brother Esau.
* Jacob bought land from the sons of Hamor the Hivite in Shechem. This land later became his family burial ground and the place where his sons buried him.
* Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, resulting in Jacob's sons killing all the men in the town of Shechem.

(Translation suggestions: [Hamor](#en-Hamor)

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Esau](#en-Esau), [Hamor](#en-Hamor), [Hivite](#en-Hivite), [Jacob](#en-Jacob))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:14-16
* Genesis 12:6-7
* Genesis 33:19
* Genesis 37:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7928, H7930

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Shechem, Shechem's

### Shem

#### Facts:

Shem was one of Noah's three sons, all of whom went with him into the ark during the worldwide flood described in the book of Genesis.

* Shem was the ancestor of Abraham and his descendants.
* The descendants of Shem were known as "Semites"; they spoke "Semitic" languages such as Hebrew and Arabic.
* The Bible indicates that Shem lived nearly 600 years.

(See also: [Abraham](#en-Abraham), [Arabia](#en-Arabia), [ark](#en-ark), [flood](../other/flood.md), [Noah](#en-Noah))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 05:32
* Genesis 06:10
* Genesis 07:13-14
* Genesis 10:1
* Genesis 10:31
* Genesis 11:10
* Luke 03:36-38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8035, G4590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Shem, Shem's

### Shiloh

#### Facts:

Shiloh was a walled Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites under the leadership of Joshua.

* The city of Shiloh was located west of the Jordan River and northeast of the city of Bethel.
* During the time that Joshua was leading Israel, the city of Shiloh was a meeting place for the people of Israel.
* The twelve tribes of Israel met together at Shiloh to hear Joshua tell them which portion of the land of Canaan had been assigned to each of them.
* Before any temple was built in Jerusalem, Shiloh was the place where the Israelites came to sacrifice to God.
* When Samuel was a young boy, his mother Hannah took him to live in Shiloh to be trained by the priest Eli to serve Yahweh.

(See also: [Bethel](#en-Bethel), [dedicate](#en-dedicate), [Hannah](#en-Hannah), [Jerusalem](#en-Jerusalem), [Jordan River](#en-Jordan River), [priest](#en-priest), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice), [Samuel](#en-Samuel), [temple](#en-temple))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 02:26-27
* 1 Samuel 01:9-10
* Joshua 18:1-2
* Judges 18:30-31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7886, H7887

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Shiloh

### Sidon

#### Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

* The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
* The "Sidonians" were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
* In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Noah](#en-Noah), [Phoenicia](#en-Phoenicia), [the sea](#en-the sea), [Tyre](#en-Tyre))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 12:20
* Acts 27:3-6
* Genesis 10:15-18
* Genesis 10:19
* Mark 03:7-8
* Matthew 11:22
* Matthew 15:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6721, H6722, G4605, G4606

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sidon, Sidonians

### Simeon

#### Facts:

In the Bible, there were several men named Simeon.

* In the Old Testament, the second son of Jacob (Israel) was named Simeon. His mother was Leah. His descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel. They were the Simeonites.
* The tribe of Simeon occupied part of the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan. Its land was entirely surrounded by the land that belonged to Judah.
* When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Christ](#en-Christ), [dedicate](#en-dedicate), [Jacob](#en-Jacob), [Judah](#en-Judah), [temple](#en-temple))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 29:33
* Genesis 34:25
* Genesis 42:35-36
* Genesis 43:21-23
* Luke 02:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8095, H8099, G4826

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Simeon, Simeon's, Simeonites

### Sinai

#### Facts:

Mount Sinai is a mountain that was probably located in the southern part of what is now called the Sinai Peninsula. It was also known as "Mount Horeb."

* Mount Sinai is part of a large, rocky desert.
* The Israelites came to Mount Sinai as they were traveling from Egypt to the Promised Land.
* God gave Moses the Ten Commandments on Mount Sinai.

(See also: [desert](#en-desert), [Egypt](#en-Egypt), [Horeb](#en-Horeb), [Promised Land](#en-Promised Land), [Ten Commandments](#en-Ten Commandments))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:29-30
* Exodus 16:1-3
* Galatians 04:24
* Leviticus 27:34
* Numbers 01:17-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5514, G3735, G4614

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sinai, Mount Sinai

### Sukkoth

#### Facts:

Sukkoth was the name of two Old Testament cities. The word "sukkoth" (some English versions say "succoth" or "Succoth") means "shelters."

* The first city called Sukkoth was located on the east side of the Jordan River.
* Jacob stayed at Sukkoth with his family and flocks, building shelters for them there.
* Hundreds of years later, Gideon and his exhausted men stopped at Sukkoth as they were chasing the Midanites, but the people there refused to give them any food.
* The second Sukkoth was located on the northern border of Egypt and was a place where the Israelites stopped after they crossed the Red Sea as they were escaping from slavery in Egypt.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 07:46
* Exodus 12:37-40
* Joshua 13:27-28
* Judges 08:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5523, H5524

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sukkoth

### Tamar

#### Facts:

Tamar was the name of several women in the Old Testament. It was also the name of several cities or other places in the Old Testament.

* Tamar was the daughter-in-law of Judah. She gave birth to Perez who was an ancestor of Jesus Christ.
* One of King David's daughters was named Tamar; she was the sister of Absalom. Her half-brother Amnon raped her and left her desolate.
* Absalom also had a daughter named Tamar.
* A city called "Hazezon Tamar" was the same as the city of Engedi on the western shore of the Salt Sea.
* There was also a place called "Baal Tamar," and general references to a place called "Tamar" which may have been different from the cities.

(See also: [Absalom](#en-Absalom), [father](#en-father), [Amnon](#en-Amnon), [David](#en-David), [father](#en-father), [Judah](#en-Judah), [Salt Sea](#en-Salt Sea))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:04
* 2 Samuel 13:02
* 2 Samuel 14:25-27
* Genesis 38:6-7
* Genesis 38:24
* Matthew 01:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1193, H2688, H8559

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Tamar, Tamar's

### Yahweh

#### Related Ideas:

Yah

#### Facts:

The term "Yahweh" is God's personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

* The name "Yahweh" comes from the word that means to "be" or to "exist."
* The name "Yah" is short for "Yahweh."
* Possible meanings of "Yahweh" include, "he is" or "I am" or "the one who causes to be."
* This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
* Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term "LORD" or "the LORD" to represent "Yahweh." This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh's name and started saying "Lord" every time the term "Yahweh" appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write "LORD" with all capital letters to show respect for God's personal name and to distinguish it from "Lord" which is a different Hebrew word.
* The ULB and UDB texts always translate this term as, "Yahweh," as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
* The term "Yahweh" does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for "Lord" is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.
* In the Old Testament, God sometimes referred to himself as "I, Yahweh" and sometimes he referred to himself simply as "Yahweh." When he referred to himself simply as "Yahweh," the ULB and UDB add the pronoun "I" or "me" to show the reader that God was speaking about himself.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* "Yahweh" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "I am" or "living one" or "the one who is" or "he who is alive."
* This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how "Yahweh" is spelled.
* Some church denominations prefer not to use the term "Yahweh" and instead use the traditional rendering, "LORD." An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title "Lord." Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish "LORD" as a name (Yahweh) from "Lord" as a title.
* It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
* When Yahweh referred to himself as Yahweh, you can make it clear that Yahweh was speaking by introducing the quote with something like, "This is what Yahweh says."

(See also: [God](#en-God), [lord](#en-lord), [lord](#en-lord), [Moses](#en-Moses), [reveal](#en-reveal))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 21:20
* 1 Samuel 16:07
* Daniel 09:03
* Ezekiel 17:24
* Genesis 02:04
* Genesis 04:3-5
* Genesis 28:13
* Hosea 11:12
* Isaiah 10:04
* Isaiah 38:08
* Job 12:10
* Joshua 01:09
* Lamentations 01:05
* Leviticus 25:35
* Malachi 03:04
* Micah 02:05
* Micah 06:05
* Numbers 08:11
* Psalm 124:03
* Ruth 01:21
* Zechariah 14:5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Yah, Yahweh, Yahweh's

### Zebulun

#### Facts:

Zebulun was the last son born to Jacob and Leah and is the name of one of the twelve tribes of Israel. His descendants were called Zebulunites.

* The Israelite tribe of Zebulun was given the land directly west of the Salt Sea.
* Sometimes the name "Zebulun" is also used to refer to the land where this Israelite tribe lived.

(See also: [Jacob](#en-Jacob), [Leah](#en-Leah), [Salt Sea](#en-Salt Sea), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 01:1-5
* Genesis 30:20
* Isaiah 09:01
* Judges 04:10
* Matthew 04:13
* Matthew 04:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2074, H2075, G2194

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Zebulun, Zebulunite, Zebulunites, Zebulun's

### afflict

#### Related Ideas:

affliction, difficulty

#### Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

* God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
* God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
* To "be afflicted with" means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To afflict someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
* In certain contexts "afflict" could be translated as "happen to" or "come to" or "bring suffering."
* A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
* When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
* Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
* The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: [leper](#en-leper), [plague](#en-plague), [suffer](#en-suffer))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Thessalonians 01:06
* Amos 05:12
* Colossians 01:24
* Exodus 22:22-24
* Genesis 12:17-20
* Genesis 15:12-13
* Genesis 29:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H5221, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G1453, G2346, G2347, G2852, G3804, G4912

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions, difficulties

### age

#### Related Ideas:

aged, from ancient times, old age

#### Definition:

The term "age" refers to the length of time a person has lived. The term "aged" describes a person who is very old. The term "age" is also used to refer generally to a time period.

* Jesus refers to "this age" as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
* There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.
* Other words used to express an extended period of time include "era" and "season."
* The phrase "ancient times" refers to times long ago.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "age" could also be translated as "era" or "number of years old" or "time period" or "time."
* The phrase "at a very old age" could be translated as "when he was very old" or "when he had lived a very long time."
* The phrase "this present evil age" means "during this time right now when people are very evil."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 29:28
* 1 Corinthians 02:07
* Hebrews 06:05
* Job 05:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5769, H7872, G165, G166, G1074

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

age, aged, ages, from ancient times, old age

### alms

#### Related Ideas:

merciful deeds for the poor

#### Definition:

The term "alms" refers to money, food, or other things that are given to help poor people.

* Often the giving of alms was seen by people as something that their religion required them to do in order to be righteous.
* Jesus said that giving alms should not be done publicly for the purpose of getting other people to notice.
* This term could be translated as "money" or "gifts to poor people" or "help for the poor."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 03:1-3
* Matthew 06:01
* Matthew 06:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1654

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alms, merciful deeds ... for the poor

### altar

#### Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

* During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
* Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
* Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: [altar of incense](#en-altar of incense), [god](#en-god), [grain offering](#en-grain offering), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 08:20
* Genesis 22:09
* James 02:21
* Luke 11:49-51
* Matthew 05:23
* Matthew 23:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

altar, altars

### amen

#### Related Ideas:

let it be so

#### Definition:

The term "amen" is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as "truly."

* When used at the end of a prayer, "amen" communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
* In his teaching, Jesus used "amen" to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by "and I say to you" to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
* When Jesus uses "amen" this way, some English versions (and the ULB) translate this as "verily" or "truly."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
* When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, "amen" could be translated as "let it be so" or "may this happen" or "that is true."
* When Jesus says, "truly I tell you," this could also be translated as "Yes, I tell you sincerely" or "That is true, and I also tell you."
* The phrase "truly, truly I tell you" could be translated as "I tell you this very sincerely" or "I tell you this very earnestly" or "what I am telling you is true."

(See also: [fulfill](#en-fulfill), [true](#en-true))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 27:15
* John 05:19
* Jude 01:24-25
* Matthew 26:33-35
* Philemon 01:23-25
* Revelation 22:20-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H543, G281

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

amen, let it be so

### angel

#### Related Ideas:

archangel

#### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

* The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
* The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
* In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
* Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
* Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
* Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
* A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
* The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
* Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
* The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh, who looked like an angel."

(See also: [chief](#en-chief), [head](#en-head), [messenger](#en-messenger), [Michael](#en-Michael), [ruler](#en-ruler), [servant](#en-servant))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 24:16
* Acts 10:3-6
* Acts 12:23
* Colossians 02:18-19
* Genesis 48:16
* Luke 02:13
* Mark 08:38
* Matthew 13:50
* Revelation 01:20
* Zechariah 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H4397, G32, G743, G2465

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

angel, angels, archangel

### anger

#### Related Ideas:

angry, indignant, indignation, quick-tempered

#### Definition:

To "be angry" or to "have anger" means to be very displeased, irritated, and upset about something or against someone.

* When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
* God's anger (also called "wrath") expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
* The phrase "provoke to anger" means "cause to be angry."
* A "quick-tempered" person becomes angry quickly and easily.
* To be "indignant" is to grieve to the point of anger or to be angry because someone has been arrogant.

(See also: [wrath](#en-wrath))

#### Bible References:

* Ephesians 04:26
* Exodus 32:11
* Isaiah 57:16-17
* John 06:52-53
* Mark 10:14
* Matthew 26:08
* Psalms 018:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H599, H639, H1149, H1984, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2740, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110, H7266, H7307, H7852, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G3950, G4360, G5520

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

anger, anger burned, angered, angry, burning anger, indignant, indignation, quick-tempered

### anoint

#### Related Ideas:

perfume, sons of fresh olive oil

#### Definition:

The term "anoint" means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

* In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
* Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
* In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
* The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
* After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
* The titles "Messiah" (Hebrew) and "Christ" (Greek) mean "the Anointed (One)."
* Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "anoint" could be translated as "pour oil on" or "put oil on" or "consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on."
* To "be anointed" could be translated as "be consecrated with oil." or "be appointed" or "be consecrated."
* In some contexts the term "anoint" could be translated as "appoint."
* A phrase like "the anointed priest," could be translated as "the priest who was consecrated with oil" or "the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil."

(See also: [Christ](#en-Christ), [consecrate](#en-consecrate), [high priest](#en-high priest), [King of the Jews](#en-King of the Jews), [priest](#en-priest), [prophet](#en-prophet) )

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:20
* 1 John 02:27
* 1 Samuel 16:2-3
* Acts 04:27-28
* Amos 06:5-6
* Exodus 29:5-7
* James 05:13-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1101, H1878, H3323, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, G218, G1472, G3462, G3464, G5545, G5548

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

anoint, anointed, anointing, perfume, sons of fresh olive oil

### ark

#### Related Ideas:

chest

#### Definition:

The term "ark" literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

* In the English Bible, the word "ark" is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
* Ways to translate this term could include "very large boat" or "barge" or "cargo ship" or "large, box-shaped boat."
* The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as "basket."
* In the phrase "ark of the covenant," a different Hebrew word is used for "ark." This could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
* When choosing a term to translate "ark," it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#en-ark of the covenant), [basket](#en-basket))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 03:20
* Exodus 16:33-36
* Exodus 30:06
* Genesis 08:4-5
* Luke 17:27
* Matthew 24:37-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H727, H8392, G2787

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ark, chest

### ark of the covenant

#### Related Ideas:

ark of Yahweh, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of the covenant of Yahweh

#### Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

* The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
* The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
* The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
* God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
* During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
* Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: [ark](#en-ark), [covenant](#en-covenant), [atonement](#en-atonement), [holy place](#en-holy place), [testimony](#en-testimony))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 06:15
* Exodus 25:10-11
* Hebrews 09:05
* Judges 20:27
* Numbers 07:89
* Revelation 11:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H727, H1285, H3068, H5715

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ark of Yahweh, ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of the covenant of Yahweh

### armor

#### Related Ideas:

armory, body armor, weapon

#### Definition:

The term "armor" refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

* Parts of a soldier's armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
* Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
* The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
* This could be translated with a term that means "soldier gear" or "protective battle clothing" or "protective covering" or "weapons."

(See also: [faith](#en-faith), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [peace](#en-peace), [save](#en-save), [spirit](#en-spirit))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 31:9-10
* 2 Samuel 20:8
* Ephesians 06:11
* Jeremiah 51:3-4
* Luke 11:22
* Nehemiah 04:15-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2290, H2488, H3627, H4055, H5402, H8302, G3696, G3833

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

armor, armory, body armor, weapon, weapons

### ash

#### Related Ideas:

powder

#### Definitions:

The term "ash" or "ashes" refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned. It is sometimes used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or useless.

* In the Bible sometimes the word "dust" is used when speaking about ashes. It can also refer to the fine, loose dirt that can form on dry ground.
* An "ash heap" is a pile of ashes.
* In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving.
* When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or sprinkle the ashes on the head.
* Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
* Striving for something worthless, is said to be like "feeding on ashes."
* When translating "ashes," use the word in the project language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.
* Note that an "ash tree" is a completely different term.

(See also: [fire](#en-fire), [sackcloth](#en-sackcloth))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 20:10
* Jeremiah 06:26
* Psalms 102:09
* Psalms 113:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H80, H665, H6083, H6368, H7834, G2868, G4700, G5077, G5522

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ash, ashes, powder

### asleep

#### Related Ideas:

sleep, sleeper

#### Definition:

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

* To "sleep" or "be asleep" can be a metaphor meaning to "be dead."
* The expression "fall asleep" means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
* To "sleep with one’s fathers" means to die, as one’s ancestors have, or to be dead, as one's ancestors are.
* To "lie down" with others who have died means to die, as they have died, or to be dead, as they are dead.
* The word "lie" often appears in connection with the idea of sleep. This "lie" refers to lying down on a bed or other sleeping place, not to saying things that are untrue.

The phrases "lie with" and "sleep with," when referring to what a man and a woman do together, is a euphemism for them having sexual relations.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To "fall asleep" could be translated as to "suddenly become asleep" or to "start sleeping" or to "die," depending on its meaning.
* Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus had "fallen asleep" they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as "he died."
* Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions "sleep" and "asleep" do not make sense.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:27-29
* 1 Thessalonians 04:14
* Acts 07:60
* Daniel 12:02
* Psalms 044:23
* Romans 13:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G879, G1852, G1853, G2518, G2837, G5258

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

asleep, fallen asleep, fell asleep, sleep, lay down, lies down, sleeper, sleeping, sleeps, slept

### assembly

#### Related Ideas:

assemble together, bring together, call together, come together, community, congregation, crowd, gather, gathering, group, meet, meeting

#### Definition:

The term "assembly" usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

* An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
* In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a "sacred assembly" in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
* Sometimes the term "assembly" referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
* A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an "assembly." This could be translated as "army."
* In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the "Sanhedrin" or the "Council."

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, "assembly" could also be translated as "special gathering" or "congregation" or "council" or "army" or "large group."
* When the term "assembly" refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as "community" or "people of Israel."
* The phrase, "all the assembly" could be translated as "all the people" or "the whole group of Israelites" or "everyone."

(See also: [council](#en-council))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:14
* Acts 07:38
* Ezra 10:12-13
* Hebrews 12:22-24
* Leviticus 04:20-21
* Nehemiah 08:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, H7125, G1218, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

assemble, assembled, assembled together, assemblies, assembling, assembly, bring ... together, brought ... together, called ... together, came together, come together, comes together, community, community's, congregation, crowd, gather, gather ... together, gathered, gathered ... together, gathering, gathers, group, joyful assembly, meet, meeting, meetings, met

### assign

#### Related Ideas:

assignment, portion, reassign

#### Definitions:

The term "assign" or "assigned" refers to appointing someone to do a specific task or designating something to be provided to one or more people.

* The prophet Samuel foretold that King Saul would "assign" the best young men of Israel to serve in the military.
* Moses "assigned" to each of the twelve tribes of Israel a portion of the land of Canaan for them to live on.
* Under the Old Testament law, certain tribes of Israel were assigned to serve as priests, artists, singers and builders.
* Depending on the context, "assign" could be translated as "give" or "appoint" or "choose for the task of."
* The term "assigned" could be translated as "appointed" or "given the task."

(See also: [appoint](#en-appoint), [Samuel](#en-Samuel), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:48
* Daniel 12:13
* Jeremiah 43:11
* Joshua 18:02
* Numbers 04:27-28
* Psalms 078:55

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1486, H2505, H2506, H2706, H3335, H4487, H4864, H4888, H4941, H5157, H5307, H5344, H5414, H5596, H5975, H6485, H7760, G3307

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

assign, assigned, assigned portion, assigning, assignment, assignments, given ... portion, place assigned, portion, portions, reassign

### avenge

#### Related Ideas:

avenger, revenge, see justice done, vengeance, vengefully

#### Definition:

To "avenge" or "take revenge" or "execute vengeance" is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is "vengeance."

* Usually "avenge" implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong.
* When referring to people, the expression "take revenge" or "get revenge" usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
* When God "takes vengeance" or "executes vengeance," he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The expression to "avenge" could also be translated as to "right a wrong" or to "get justice for."
* When referring to human beings, to "take revenge" could be translated as "pay back" or "hurt in order to punish" or "get back at."
* Depending on the context, "vengeance" could be translated as "punishment" or "punishment of sin" or "payment for wrongs done." If a word meaning "retaliation" is used, this would apply to human beings only.
* When God says, "take my vengeance," this could be translated by "punish them for wrongs done against me" or "cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me."
* When referring to God's vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#en-punish), [justice](#en-justice), [righteous](#en-righteous))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 24:12-13
* Ezekiel 25:15
* Isaiah 47:3-5
* Leviticus 19:17-18
* Psalms 018:47
* Romans 12:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1350, H3467, H5352, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G1556, G1557, G1558, G3709

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

avenge, avenged, avenger, avenges, avenging, have revenge, revenge, see ... justice ... done, vengeance, vengefully

### ax

#### Definition:

An ax is tool used for cutting or chopping trees or wood.

* An ax usually has a long wooden handle with a large metal blade attached to the end.
* If your culture has a tool that is similar to an ax, the name of that tool could be used to translate "ax."
* Other ways to translate this term could include "tree-cutting tool" or "wooden tool with blade" or "long-handled wood-chopping tool."
* In one Old Testament event, the blade of an ax fell into a river, so it is best if the tool that is described has a blade that can come loose from the wooden handle.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 06:7-8
* 2 Kings 06:05
* Judges 09:48-49
* Luke 03:9
* Matthew 03:10
* Psalm 035:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1631, H2719, H7134, G513

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ax, axes

### barley

#### Definition:

The term "barley" refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

* The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
* Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
* When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
* Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
* If barley is not known, this could be translated as "grain called barley" or "barley grain."

(See also: [grain](#en-grain), [thresh](#en-thresh), [wheat](#en-wheat))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
* Job 31:40
* Judges 07:14
* Numbers 05:15
* Revelation 06:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8184, G2915, G2916

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

barley

### barren

#### Related Ideas:

dried, faded, salt land, withered

#### Definition:

To be "barren" means to not be fertile or fruitful.

* Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
* A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When "barren" is used to refer to land, it could be translated as "not fertile" or "unfruitful" or "without plants."
* When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as "childless" or "not able to bear children" or "unable to conceive a child."
* "Salt land" is barren because nothing can grow in salty soil.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 02:5
* Galatians 04:27
* Genesis 11:30
* Job 03:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H535, H1565, H2717, H3001, H4420, H5034, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7921, G692, G4723

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

barren, dried, dry, fade, fades, fading, salt land, wither, withered, withers

### basket

#### Related Ideas:

basketful, cage

#### Definition:

The term "basket" refers to a container made of woven material.

* In biblical times, baskets were probably woven with strong plant materials, such as wood from peeled tree branches or twigs.
* A basket could be coated with a waterproof substance so that it could float.
* When Moses was a baby, his mother made a waterproof basket to put him in and floated it among the reeds of the Nile River.
* The word translated as "basket" in that story is the same word that is translated as "ark" referring to the boat that Noah built. The common meaning of its use in these two contexts may be "floating container."
* A "cage" is a container in which people keep animals.

(See also: [ark](#en-ark), [Moses](#en-Moses), [Nile River](#en-Nile River), [Noah](#en-Noah))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 11:33
* Acts 09:25
* Amos 08:01
* John 06:13-15
* Judges 06:19-20
* Matthew 14:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H374, H1731, H1736, H2935, H3619, H5536, H8392, G2894, G3426, G4553, G4711

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

basket, basketfuls, baskets, cage

### bear

#### Related Ideas:

bearer, bear with, birth, carry, childbirth, support, sustain, tolerate

#### Definitions:

The term "bear" literally means "carry" something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

* When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means "give birth to" a child.
* To "bear a burden" means to "experience difficult things." These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
* To "bear with" someone means to be patient with them and their faults.
* A common expression in the Bible is "bear fruit," which means "produce fruit" or "have fruit."
* The expression "bear witness" means "testify" or "report what one has seen or experienced."
* The statement that "a son will not bear the iniquity of his father" means that he "will not be held responsible for" or "will not be punished for" his father's sins.
* In general, this term could be translated as "carry" or "be responsible for" or "produce" or "have" or "endure," depending on the context.

(See also: [burden](#en-burden), [Elisha](#en-Elisha), [endure](#en-endure), [fruit](#en-fruit), [iniquity](#en-iniquity), [report](#en-report), [sheep](#en-sheep), [strength](#en-strength), [testimony](#en-testimony), [testimony](#en-testimony))

#### Bible References:

* Lamentations 03:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2032, H2232, H3201, H3205, H3211, H4138, H4853, H5375, H5445, H5449, H5582, H6030, H6403, H6509, H6779, H7617, G142, G430, G941, G1080, G1627, G2592, G3140, G4722, G4828, G5041, G5088, G5342, G5409, G5576

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear, bearer, bearing, bearing with, bears, birth, bore, born, borne, carried, carry, carrying, childbirth, gave birth, give birth, given birth, gives birth, has ... borne, have ... borne, support, supported, supports, sustain, sustains, tolerate

### bear

#### Definition:

A bear is a large, four-legged furry animal with dark brown or black hair, with sharp teeth and claws. Bears were common in Israel during Bible times.

* These animals live in forests and mountain areas; they eat fish, insects, and plants.
* In the Old Testament, the bear is used as a symbol of strength.
* While tending sheep, the shepherd David fought a bear and defeated it.
* Two bears came out of the forest and attacked a group of youths who had mocked the prophet Elisha.

(See also: [David](#en-David), [Elisha](#en-Elisha))

#### Bible References:

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1677, G715

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear, bears

### beg

#### Related Ideas:

ask, beggar, needy

#### Definition:

The term "beg" means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

* Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don't know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
* A "beggar" is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
* Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, "plead" or "urgently ask" or "demand money" or "regularly ask for money."

(See also: [plead](#en-plead))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 16:20
* Mark 06:56
* Matthew 14:36
* Psalm 045:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H34, H577, H1245, H6035, H7592, G154, G1189, G1871, G2065, G3726, G3870, G4319, G4434

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ask, asking, asks, beg, beggar, begged, begging, needy

### betray

#### Related Ideas:

betrayal, betrayer, give over, hand over, traitor, treacherous, treacherously, treachery, turn over

#### Definition:

The term "betray" means to act in a way that deceives a person and allows other people to harm that person. A "betrayer" is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

* Judas was "the betrayer" because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
* The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus' unjust death.
* "Betrayal" and "treachery" are two words for what happens when one person betrays another.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "betray" could be translated as "deceive and cause harm to" or "turn over to the enemy" or "treat treacherously."
* The term "betrayer" could be translated as "person who betrays" or "double dealer" or "traitor."

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#en-Judas Iscariot), [Jewish authorities](#en-Jewish authorities), [apostle](#en-apostle))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:52
* John 06:64
* John 13:22
* Matthew 10:04
* Matthew 26:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H898, H4042, H4603, H4604, H4820, H5462, H7411, G1560, G3860, G4273, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

betray, betrayal, betrayed, betrayer, betrayers, betraying, betrays, give ... over, given ... over, hand ... over, handed ... over, traitor, traitors, treacherous, treacherously, treachery, turn ... over

### bind

#### Related Ideas:

bond, bound, chain, fetter, put in bonds, put on, restrain, tie, wrap

#### Definition:

The term "bind" means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a "bond." The term "bound" is the past tense of this term.

* To be "bound" means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
* In a figurative sense, a person can be "bound" to a vow, which means he is "required to fulfill" what he promised to do.
* The term "bonds" refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
* In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
* The term "bind" can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
* A dead person would be "bound" with cloth in preparation for burial.
* The term "bond" is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
* A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
* For example, a husband and wife are "bound" or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.
* The term "bind" can also refer to forbidding an activity.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "bind" could also be translated as "tie" or "tie up" or "wrap (around)."
* Figuratively, it could be translated as to "restrain" or to "prevent" or to "keep from (something)."
* A special use of "bind" in Matthew 16 and 18 means "forbid" or "not permit."
* The term "bonds" could be translated as "chains" or "ropes" or "shackles."
* Figuratively the term "bond" could be translated as "knot" or "connection" or "close relationship."
* The phrase "bond of peace" means "being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other" or "the tying together that peace brings."
* To "bind up" could be translated as "wrap around" or "put a bandage on."
* To "bind" oneself with a vow could be translated as "promise to fulfill a vow" or "commit to fulfill a vow."
* Depending on the context, the term "bound" could also be translated as "tied" or "tied up" or "chained" or "obligated (to fulfill)" or "required to do."

(See also: [fulfill](#en-fulfill), [peace](#en-peace), [prison](#en-prison), [servant](#en-servant), [vow](#en-vow))

#### Bible References:

* Leviticus 08:07
* Matthew 16:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H247, H481, H612, H615, H631, H632, H640, H2296, H3729, H4147, H5178, H6029, H6123, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7576, H8244, G254, G1195, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1249, G1402, G2611, G3784, G4019, G4029, G4886, G4887

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bind, binding, bond, bonds, bound, chain, chained, chains, fetters, is bound, put ... in bonds, puts on, restrain, tie, tie up, tied, tied up, tying, wrapped

### bless

#### Related Ideas:

happier, happy

#### Definition:

To "bless" someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

* Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
* In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
* When people "bless" God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
* The term "bless" is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To "bless" could also be translated as to "provide abundantly for" or to "be very kind and favorable toward."
* "God has brought great blessing to" could be translated as "God has given many good things to" or "God has provided abundantly for" or "God has caused many good things to happen to".
* "He is blessed" could be translated as "he will greatly benefit" or "he will experience good things" or "God will cause him to flourish."
* "Blessed is the person who" could be translated as "How good it is for the person who."
* Expressions like "blessed be the Lord" could be translated as "May the Lord be praised" or "Praise the Lord" or "I praise the Lord."
* In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as "thanked God for the food" or "praised God for giving them food" or "consecrated the food by praising God for it."

(See also: [praise](#en-praise))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 10:16
* Acts 13:34
* Ephesians 01:03
* Genesis 14:20
* Isaiah 44:03
* James 01:25
* Luke 06:20
* Matthew 26:26
* Nehemiah 09:05
* Romans 04:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H833, H835, H8055, H1288, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G3741

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bless, blessed, blesses, blessing, blessings, happier, happy

### blood

#### Related Ideas:

bleeding

#### Definition:

The term "blood" refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person's skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person's entire body.

* Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
* When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal's life to pay for people's sins.
* Through his death on the cross, Jesus' blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
* The expression "flesh and blood" refers to human beings.
* The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to people who are biologically related.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
* The expression "flesh and blood" could be translated as "people" or "human beings."
* Depending on the context, the expression "my own flesh and blood" could be translated as "my own family" or "my own relatives" or "my own people."
* If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate "flesh and blood."

(See also: [flesh](#en-flesh))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 Samuel 14:32
* Acts 02:20
* Acts 05:28
* Colossians 01:20
* Galatians 01:16
* Genesis 04:11
* Psalms 016:4
* Psalms 105:28-30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bleeding, blood

### boast

#### Related Ideas:

boastful

#### Definition:

The term "boast" means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

* Someone who is "boastful" talks about himself in a proud way.
* God rebuked the Israelites for "boasting in" their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
* The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
* God urged the Israelites to instead "boast" or be proud about the fact that they know him.
* The apostle Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "boast" could include "brag" or "talk proudly" or "be proud."
* The term "boastful" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "full of prideful talk" or "prideful" or "talking proudly about oneself."
* In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as "take pride in" or "exalt in" or "be very glad about" or "give thanks to God about."
* Some languages have two words for "pride": one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in one's work, family, or country.

#### Translation Suggestions:

(See also: [proud](#en-proud))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 20:11
* 2 Timothy 03:1-4
* James 03:14
* James 04:15-17
* Psalms 044:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1984, H3235, H6286, G212, G213, G1461, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3166

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

boast, boasted, boastful, boasting, boasts, reason for boasting

### body

#### Related Ideas:

bodily, body of Christ, carcass, corpse

#### Definition:

The term "body" literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

* Often the term "body" refers to a dead person. Sometimes this is referred to as a "dead body" or a "corpse." The dead body of an animal is called a "carcass."
* When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, "This (bread) is my body," he was referring to his physical body that would be "broken" (killed) to pay for their sins.
* In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the "body of Christ." Just as a physical body has many parts, the "body of Christ" has many individual members. Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
* Jesus is also referred to as the "head" (leader) of the "body" of his believers. Just as a person's head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his "body."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
* When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say "spiritual body of Christ."
* When Jesus says, "This is my body," it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
* Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as "corpse" for a person or "carcass" for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#en-head), [spirit](#en-spirit))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 10:12
* 1 Corinthians 05:05
* Ephesians 04:04
* Judges 14:08
* Numbers 06:6-8
* Psalm 031:09
* Romans 12:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H990, H1320, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5315, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4561, G4954, G4983

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bodies, bodily, body, carcass, carcasses, corpse, corpses

### bow

#### Related Ideas:

bend, bend the knee, bow down, fall down before, kneel

#### Note

For the weapon called a bow, [click here](./bowweapon.md).

#### Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To "bow down" means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

* Other expressions include "bow the knee" (meaning to kneel) and "bow the head" (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
* Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is "bowed down" has been brought to a low position of humility.
* Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
* Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
* In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
* The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "bend forward" or "bend the head" or "kneel."
* The term "bow down" could be translated as "kneel down" or "prostrate oneself."
* Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#en-humble), [worship](#en-worship))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 05:18
* Exodus 20:05
* Genesis 24:26
* Genesis 44:14
* Isaiah 44:19
* Luke 24:05
* Matthew 02:11
* Revelation 03:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H86, H1288, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098, G4352, G4364

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

are bent, bend, bend the knee, bow, bow down, bowed, bowed ... down, bowed ... down ... before, bowing, bowing down, bows, bows down, fall down, fell, fell down, has ... bent, have ... bent, kneel, kneeling, knelt, will bend

### bread

#### Related Ideas:

food, loaf of bread

#### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

* When the term "loaf" occurs by itself, it means "loaf of bread."
* Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
* Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called "unleavened bread" and was used for the Jews' passover meal.
* Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general.
* The term "bread of the presence" referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as "bread showing that God lived among them."
* The figurative term "bread from heaven" referred to the special white food called "manna" that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
* Jesus also called himself the "bread that came down from heaven" and the "bread of life."
* When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
* Many times the term "bread" can be translated more generally as "food."

(See also: [Passover](#en-Passover), [tabernacle](#en-tabernacle), [temple](#en-temple), [unleavened bread](#en-unleavened bread), [yeast](#en-yeast))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:46
* Acts 27:35
* Exodus 16:15
* Luke 09:13
* Mark 06:38
* Matthew 04:04
* Matthew 11:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bread, food, loaf of ... bread, loaves, loaves of ... bread

### bronze

#### Definition:

The term "bronze" refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

* Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
* In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers' armor, among other things.
* Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
* Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
* Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called "casting."

(See also: [armor](#en-armor), [tabernacle](#en-tabernacle), [temple](#en-temple))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 07:16
* 1 Samuel 17:37-38
* Daniel 02:44-45
* Exodus 25:3-7
* Revelation 01:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bronze

### brother

#### Related Ideas:

brotherhood

#### Definition:

The term "brother" usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

* In the Old Testament, the term "brothers" is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
* In the New Testament, the apostles often used "brothers" to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
* A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term "sister" when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to "a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
* In the Old Testament especially, when "brothers" is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include "relatives" or "clan members" or "fellow Israelites."
* In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as "brother in Christ" or "spiritual brother."
* If both males and females are being referred to and "brother" would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
* Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be "fellow believers" or "Christian brothers and sisters."
* Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#en-apostle), [God the Father](#en-God the Father), [sister](#en-sister), [spirit](#en-spirit))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:26
* Genesis 29:10
* Leviticus 19:17
* Nehemiah 03:01
* Philippians 04:21
* Revelation 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2993, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

brother, brother's, brotherhood, brothers, brothers'

### burnt offering

#### Related Ideas:

offering by fire

#### Definition:

A "burnt offering" was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an "offering by fire."

* Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
* Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
* God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#en-altar), [atonement](#en-atonement), [cow](#en-cow), [priest](#en-priest), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 40:5-7
* Genesis 08:20
* Genesis 22:1-3
* Leviticus 03:05
* Mark 12:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, G3646

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire, offering made by fire

### call

#### Related Ideas:

appeal to, invite, summon

#### Definition:

The terms "call to" and "call out" mean to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. To "call" someone means to summon that person. There are also some other meanings.

* To "call out" to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
* Often in the Bible, "call" has a meaning of "summon" or "command to come" or "request to come."
* God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their "calling."
* When God "calls" people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
* This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, "His name is called John," means, "He is named John" or "His name is John."
* To be "called by the name of" means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
* A different expression, "I have called you by name" means that God has specifically chosen that person.
* To appeal to someone is to ask someone to do something.
* To invite someone is to ask them to do something that they might like to do.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "call" could be translated by a word that means "summon," which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
* The expression "call out to you" could be translated as "ask you for help" or "pray to you urgently."
* When the Bible says that God has "called" us to be his servants, this could be translated as, "specially chose us" or "appointed us" to be his servants.
* "You must call his name" can also be translated as, "you must name him."
* "His name is called" could also be translated as, "his name is" or "he is named."
* To "call out" could be translated as, "say loudly" or "shout" or "say with a loud voice." Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
* The expression "your calling" could be translated as "your purpose" or "God's purpose for you" or "God's special work for you."
* To "call on the name of the Lord" could be translated as "seek the Lord and depend on him" or "trust in the Lord and obey him."
* To "call on" an official is to tell him to do what he is supposed to do as part of his job.
* To "call for" something could be translated by "demand" or "ask for" or "command."
* The expression "you are called by my name" could be translated as, "I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me."
* When God says, "I have called you by name," this could be translated as, "I know you and have chosen you."

(See also: [pray](#en-pray))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:24
* 1 Thessalonians 04:07
* 2 Timothy 01:09
* Ephesians 04:01
* Galatians 01:15
* Matthew 02:15
* Philippians 03:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2199, H3259, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G1528, G1793, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G3870, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appeal to, appealed to, appealing to, call, called, called on, called out, calling, calling out, calls, calls out, invite, invited, summon, summoned, summoning

### camel

#### Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back.

* In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
* The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
* Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
* Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#en-burden), [clean](#en-clean))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 05:21
* 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
* Exodus 09:1-4
* Mark 10:25
* Matthew 03:04
* Matthew 19:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1581, G2574

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

camel, camel's, camels, camels'

### caught up

#### Related Ideas:

catch up with

#### Definition:

The term "caught up" often refers to God taking a person up to heaven in a sudden, miraculous way.

* The phrase "caught up with" refers to coming up to someone after hurrying to reach him. A term with a similar meaning is "overtake."
* The apostle Paul talked about being "caught up" to the third heaven. This could also be translated as "taken up."
* Paul said that when Christ comes back, Christians will be "caught up" together to meet him in the air.
* The figurative expression, "my sins have caught up with me" could be translated as, "I am receiving the consequences of my sin" or "because of my sin I am suffering" or "my sin is causing me trouble."

(see: [miracle](#en-miracle), [overtake](#en-overtake), [suffer](#en-suffer), [trouble](#en-trouble))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 12:1-2
* Acts 08:39-40

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1692, G726

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

catch up with, caught up, caught up with

### cedar

#### Related Ideas:

cedarwood

#### Definition:

The term "cedar" refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

* The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
* Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
* It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: [fir](#en-fir), [pure](#en-pure), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice), [temple](#en-temple))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
* 1 Kings 07:1-2
* Isaiah 02:13
* Zechariah 11:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H730

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cedar, cedars, cedarwood

### chariot

#### Related Ideas:

charioteer

#### Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

* People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
* In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
* The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.
* A "charioteer" was a person who drove a chariot.

(See also: [Egypt](#en-Egypt), [Rome](#en-Rome))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 09:22
* 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
* Acts 08:29
* Acts 08:38
* Daniel 11:40-41
* Exodus 14:25
* Genesis 41:43

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G716, G4480

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chariot, charioteer, charioteers, chariots

### children

#### Related Ideas:

child, childhood, childless

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "child" is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. \* The word "childhood" refers to the time that a person is a child. \* The word "childless" describes a person who has no children. \* The word "children" is the plural form of "child."

The words "child" and "children" also have several figurative uses.

* In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
* Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
* The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
* children of the light
* children of obedience
* children of the devil
* This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, "children of God" refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
* Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
* If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
* When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
* When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
* The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: [descendant](#en-descendant), [promise](#en-promise), [son](#en-son), [spirit](#en-spirit), [believe](#en-believe), [beloved](#en-beloved))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:28
* 3 John 01:04
* Galatians 04:19
* Genesis 45:11
* Joshua 08:34-35
* Nehemiah 05:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G4690, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5207, G5388

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

child, childhood, childless, children

### circumcise

#### Related Ideas:

circumcision, uncircumcision

#### Definition:

The term "circumcise" means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

* God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God's covenant with them.
* God also commanded Abraham's descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
* The phrase, "circumcision of the heart" refers figuratively to the "cutting away" or removal of sin from a person.
* In a spiritual sense, "the circumcised" refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
* The term "uncircumcised" refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms "uncircumcised" and "uncircumcision" refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

* Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the "uncircumcised," he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.

The Bible refers to people who have an "uncircumcised heart" or who are "uncircumcised in heart." This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God's people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.

If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, "uncircumcised" could be translated as "not circumcised."

* The expression "the uncircumcision" could be translated as "people who are not circumcised" or "people who do not belong to God," depending on the context.
* Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include "not God's people" or "rebellious like those who don't belong to God" or "people who have no sign of belonging to God."
* The expression "uncircumcised in heart" could be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to believe." However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
* Other ways to translate this term would be, "cut around" or "cut in a circle" or "cut off the foreskin."
* In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
* Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of "male."

(See also: [Abraham](#en-Abraham), [covenant](#en-covenant))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 17:11
* Genesis 17:14
* Exodus 12:48
* Leviticus 26:41
* Joshua 05:03
* Judges 15:18
* 2 Samuel 01:20
* Jeremiah 09:26
* Ezekiel 32:25
* Acts 10:44-45
* Acts 11:03
* Acts 15:01
* Acts 11:03
* Romans 02:27
* Galatians 05:03
* Ephesians 02:11
* Philippians 03:03
* Colossians 02:11
* Colossians 02:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

### clan

#### Related Ideas:

ancestral clan

#### Definition:

The term "clan" refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

* In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
* Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
* Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses' father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
* Clan could be translated as "family group" or "extended family" or "relatives."

(See also: [family](#en-family), [Jethro](#en-Jethro), [tribe](#en-tribe))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:33-35
* Genesis 10:2-5
* Genesis 36:15-16
* Genesis 36:29-30
* Genesis 36:40
* Joshua 15:20
* Numbers 03:38-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1, H441, H504, H1004, H4940

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ancestral clan, ancestral clans, clan, clans

### clean

#### Related Ideas:

cleanness, cleanse, unclean, uncleanness, wash

#### Definition:

The term "clean" literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, words like "clean" and "washed" are often used figuratively to mean, "pure," "holy," "free from sin," or "innocent".

* "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
* In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
* A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
* Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

* God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
* People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
* If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
* Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
* This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
* In another figurative sense, "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "clean": \* This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty). \* Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God." \* "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify." \* Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.

Translating "unclean"" \* The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled." \* When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled." \* The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [defile](#en-defile), [demon](#en-demon), [holy](#en-holy), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 07:02
* Genesis 07:08
* Deuteronomy 12:15
* Psalms 051:07
* Proverbs 20:30
* Ezekiel 24:13
* Matthew 23:27
* Luke 05:13
* Acts 08:07
* Acts 10:27-29
* Colossians 03:05
* 1 Thessalonians 04:07
* James 04:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H1351, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6663, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514, G2839, G2840

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clean, cleaned, cleanness, cleans, cleanse, cleansed, cleanses, cleansing, purge, unclean, uncleanness, wash, washed, washes, washing

### clothed

#### Related Ideas:

cloth, clothe, cover, dressed, garment, put on, unclothed, wardrobe, wear

#### Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, "clothed with" means to be endowed or equipped with something. To "clothe" oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

* In the same way that clothing is outside your body and is visible to all, when you are "clothed" with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To "clothe yourself with kindness" means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
* To be "clothed with power from on high" means to have power given to you.
* This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as "clothed with shame" or "clothed with terror."
* All of the clothes a person wears is called his "wardrobe."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, "clothe yourselves with." Another way to translate this could be "put on" if this refers to putting on clothes.
* If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate "clothed with" could be "showing" or "manifesting" or "filled with" or "having the quality of."
* The term "clothe yourself with" could also be translated as "cover yourself with" or "behave in a way that shows."

#### Bible References:

* Luke 24:49

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H155, H899, H2290, H3680, H3736, H3801, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4254, H4374, H5526, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2224, G2439, G2440, G4016, G4749, G5409, G5509

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cloth, clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, cover, covered, coverings, coverings for their loins, covers, dressed, garment, garments, put ... on, putting ... on, unclothed, wardrobe, wear, wearing, worn

### command

#### Related Ideas:

commandment, forbid, order, requirement, solemn command

#### Definition:

The term to "command" means to order someone to do something. A "command" or "commandment" is what the person was ordered to do.

* Although these terms have basically the same meaning, "commandment" often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
* A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
* To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.
* To "forbid" is to command that someone not do something.

#### Translation Suggestions

* It is best to translate this term differently from the term "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
* Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
* Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#en-decree), [statute](#en-statute), [law](#en-law), [Ten Commandments](#en-Ten Commandments))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 01:06
* Matthew 01:24
* Matthew 22:38
* Matthew 28:20
* Numbers 01:17-19
* Romans 07:7-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H560, H565, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3245, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4687, H4931, H5713, H5749, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3143, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4487, G5506

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

command, commanded, commanding, commandment, commandments, commands, forbid, forbidden, forbidding, give ... solemn command, given ... solemn commands, given an order, given orders, order, ordered, orders, requirement, solemn commands

### commander

#### Related Ideas:

captain, leader, military officer, one who leads

#### Definition:

The term "commander" refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

* A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
* This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
* Other ways to translate "commander" could include, "leader" or "captain" or "officer."
* The term to "command" an army could be translated as to "lead" or to "be in charge of."

(See also: [command](#en-command), [ruler](#en-ruler), [centurion](#en-centurion))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
* 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
* Daniel 02:14
* Mark 06:21-22
* Proverbs 06:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H1368, H2710, H2951, H1169, G4755, H5057, H5257, H6260, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7860, H7990, H8269, G758, G2233, G4291, G5506

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

captain, captains, commander, commanders, leader, leaders, leading, military officers, one who leads

### commit

#### Related Ideas:

commitment

#### Definition:

The terms "commit" and "commitment" refer to making a decision or promising to do something.

* A person who promises to do something is also described as being "committed" to doing it.
* To "commit" to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has "committed" (or "given") to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
* To "commit" something to someone is to give that thing completely to that person.
* To "commit" someone to another person is to put someone either in the care of or under the guard of that other person.
* The terms "commit" and "committed" also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as "commit a sin" or "commit adultery" or "commit murder."
* The expression "committed to him the task" could also be translated as "gave him the task" or "entrusted to him the task" or "assigned the task to him."
* The term "commitment" could be translated by, "task that was given" or "promise that was made," depending on the context.

(See also: [adultery](#en-adultery), [faithful](#en-faithful), [promise](#en-promise), [sin](#en-sin))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 28:07
* 1 Peter 02:21-23
* Jeremiah 02:12-13
* Matthew 13:41
* Psalm 058:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H539, H817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G264, G2038, G2716, G3429, G3431, G3860, G3872, G3908, G4102, G4203

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

commit, commitment, commits, committed, committing

### companion

#### Related Ideas:

associate, company, fellow worker, friend, partner, private advisor

#### Definitions:

The term "companion" refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage. The term "fellow worker" refers to someone who works with another person.

* Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
* Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, "friend" or "fellow traveler" or "supporting-person who goes with" or "person who works with."
* The word "company" refers to a person's companions.
* The word "associates" refers to companions who are involved in official activities.

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 37:16
* Hebrews 01:09
* Proverbs 02:17
* Psalms 038:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H157, H251, H441, H2269, H2270, H2273, H2278, H3674, H3675, H4828, H5712, H6116, H6951, H7474, H7453, H7462, H7464, G2844, G3353, G3657, G4898, G4904

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

associates, companion, companions, company, fellow worker, fellow workers, friend, friends, keeps company with, partner, partners, private advisor

### compassion

#### Related Ideas:

compassionate, deal gently with, pity, sympathy

#### Definition:

The term "compassion" refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A "compassionate" person cares about other people and helps them.

* The word "compassion" usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
* The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
* In Paul's letter to the Colossians, he tells them to "clothe themselves with compassion." He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.
* To have "sympathy" for someone is to understand how that person feels and to want to help him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The literal meaning of "compassion" is "bowels of mercy." This is an expression that means "mercy" or "pity." Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
* Ways of translating "compassion" could include, "a deep caring for" or "helpful mercy."
* The term "compassionate" could also be translated as, "caring and helpful" or "deeply loving and merciful."

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 01:8-10
* Hosea 13:14
* James 05:9-11
* Jonah 04:1-3
* Mark 01:41
* Romans 09:14-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2550, H2580, H2603, H5150, H5162, H5164, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

compassion, compassionate, compassions, deal gently with, pitied, pity, sympathy

### conceive

#### Related Ideas:

conception

#### Definition:

The terms "conceive" and "conception" usually refer to becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

* The phrase "conceive a child" could be translated as, "become pregnant" or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
* The related term "conception" could be translated as, "beginning of a pregnancy" or "moment of becoming pregnant."
* These terms can also refer to creating something or thinking of something, such as an idea, a plan, or a task. Ways to translate this could include, "think of" or "plan" or "create," depending on the context.
* Sometimes this term can be used figuratively as in, "when sin is conceived" which means "when sin is first thought of" or "at the very start of a sin" or "when a sin first begins."

(See also: [create](#en-create), [womb](#en-womb))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 21:1-4
* Hosea 02:4-5
* Job 15:35
* Luke 01:24-25
* Luke 02:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2029, H2030, H2032, H2232, H2254, H2803, H3179, G1080, G2602, G2845, G4815

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

conceive, conceived, conceives, conception

### concubine

#### Definition:

A concubine is a woman who is a secondary wife for a man who already has a wife. Usually a concubine is not legally married to the man.

* In the Old Testament, concubines were often female slaves.
* A concubine could be acquired by purchase, through military conquest, or in payment of a debt.
* For a king, having many concubines was a sign of power.
* The New Testament teaches that the practice of having a concubine is against God's will.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 03:07
* Genesis 22:24
* Genesis 25:5-6
* Genesis 35:21-22
* Genesis 36:12
* Judges 19:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3904, H6370

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

concubine, concubines

### confidence

#### Related Ideas:

assure, carefree, confident, convinced, fully assured, without fear

#### Definition:

The term "confidence" refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

* In the Bible, the term "hope" often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULB often translates this as "confidence" or "confidence for the future" or "future confidence" especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
* Often the term "confidence" refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
* The phrase, "have confidence in God" means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
* Being "confident" means believing in God's promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "confident" could be translated as "assured" or "very sure."
* The phrase "be confident" could also be translated as "trust completely" or "be completely sure about" or "know for certain."
* The term "confidently" could also be translated as "boldly" or "with certainty."
* Depending on the context, ways to translate "confidence" could include, "complete assurance" or "sure expectation" or "certainty."

(See also: [believe](#en-believe), [believe](#en-believe), [bold](#en-bold), [faithful](#en-faithful), [hope](#en-hope), [trust](#en-trust))

#### Bible References:

{{topic>confidence&nocomments}}

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H982, H983, H986, H3689, H3690, H4009, H7961, G2292, G3954, G3982, G4006, G4135, G5287

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

assure, carefree, confidence, confident, confidently, convinced, fully assured, source of ... confidence, without fear

### confirm

#### Related Ideas:

carry out, cause someone to believe firmly, confirmation, guarantee

#### Definition:

The terms "confirm" and "confirmation" refer to stating or assuring that something is true or sure or trustworthy.

* In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will "confirm" his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
* When a king is "confirmed" it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
* To confirm what someone wrote means to say that what was written is true.
* The "confirmation" of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
* To give an oath "as confirmation" means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
* Ways to translate "confirm" could include, "state as true" or "prove to be trustworthy" or "agree with" or "assure" or "promise," depending on the context.
* To "carry out" a promise is to do what one has promised to do.

(See also: [covenant](#en-covenant), [oath](#en-oath), [trust](#en-trust))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
* 2 Corinthians 01:21
* 2 Kings 23:3
* Hebrews 06:16-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G950, G951, G3315, G4741, G4972

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

carry out, cause ... to believe firmly, confirm, confirmation, confirmed, confirms, guaranteed

### consume

#### Related Ideas:

swallow

#### Definition:

The term "consume" literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

* In the Bible, the word "consume" often refers to destroying things or people.
* A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
* God is described as a "consuming fire," which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
* To consume food means to eat or drink something.
* The phrase, "consume the land" could be translated as "destroy the land."

#### Translation Suggestions

* In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as "destroy."
* When fire is referred to, "consume" could be translated as "burn up."
* The burning bush that Moses saw "was not consumed" which could be translated as, "did not get burned up" or "did not burn up."
* When referring to eating, "consume" could be translated as "eat" or "devour."
* If someone's strength is "consumed," it means his strength is "used up" or "gone."
* The expression, "God is a consuming fire" could be translated as, "God is like a fire that burns things up" or "God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire."

(See also: [devour](#en-devour), [wrath](#en-wrath))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:38-40
* Deuteronomy 07:16
* Jeremiah 03:23-25
* Job 07:09
* Numbers 11:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H398, H1086, H1104, H1105, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H5595, H7462, H8046, H8552, G355, G2068, G2618, G2654, G2666, G2719, G5315

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

consume, consumed, consumes, consuming, swallow, swallowed, swallows

### corrupt

#### Related Ideas:

corruption, depraved, flawed, incorruptibility, incorruptible

#### Definition:

The terms "corrupt" and "corruption" refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

* The term "corrupt" literally means to be "bent" or "broken" morally.
* A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
* To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term to "corrupt" could be translated as to "influence to do evil" or to "cause to be immoral."
* A corrupt person could be described as a person "who has become immoral" or "who practices evil."
* This term could also be translated as "bad" or "immoral" or "evil."
* The term "corruption" could be translated as "the practice of evil" or "evil" or "immorality."
* Something that cannot be corrupted is "incorruptible" and is characterized as having "incorruptibility."

(See also: [evil](#en-evil))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 20:42-44
* Galatians 06:6-8
* Genesis 06:12
* Matthew 12:33-35
* Psalm 014:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2254, H2610, H3891, H4889, H7843, H7844, G861, G1311, G2704, G3392, G3394, G5351, G5356

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

corrupt, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly, corrupts, depraved, flawed, incorruptibility, incorruptible

### counsel

#### Related Ideas:

advice, advise, advisor, consultation, consult, counselor

#### Definition:

The terms "counsel" and "advice" have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide about what to do in a certain situation. A wise "counselor" or "advisor" is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

* Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
* Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
* To "consult" someone is to ask him for counsel or advice.
* Note that "counsel" is a different word from "council," which refers to a group of people.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, "advice" or "counsel" could also be translated as "help in deciding" or "warnings" or "exhortations" or "guidance."
* The action, to "counsel" could be translated as to "advise" or to "make suggestions" or to "exhort."

(See also: [exhort](#en-exhort), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [wise](#en-wise))

#### Bible References:

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H2803, H3245, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6485, H6963, H6098, H7194, H7592, H8458, G1011, G1012, G1106, G3540, G3622, G4286, G4823, G4824, G4825

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

advice, advise, advised, advisor, advisors, consult, consultation, consultations, consulted, counsel, counselor, counselors, counsels, guidance

### courage

#### Related Ideas:

brave, courageous, discourage, discouragement, encourage, encouragement

#### Definitions:

The term "courage" refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

* The term, "courageous" describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
* A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
* The expression "take courage" means, "don't be afraid" or "be assured that things will turn out well."
* When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be "strong and courageous."
* The term "courageous" could also be translated as "brave" or "unafraid" or "bold."
* Depending on the context, to "have courage" could also be translated as, "be emotionally strong" or "be confident" or "stand firm."
* To "speak with courage" could be translated as, "speak boldly" or "speak without being afraid" or "speak confidently."

The terms "encourage" and encouragement" refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

* A similar term is "exhort," which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
* The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term "discourage" refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "encourage" could include "urge" or "comfort" or "say kind things" or "help and support."
* The phrase "give words of encouragement" means "say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered."

(See also: [confidence](#en-confidence), [exhort](#en-exhort), [fear](#en-fear), [strength](#en-strength))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 01:37-38
* 2 Kings 18:19-21
* 1 Chronicles 17:25
* Matthew 09:20-22
* 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
* 2 Corinthians 07:13
* Acts 05:12-13
* Acts 16:40
* Hebrews 03:12-13
* Hebrews 13:5-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H533, H553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G2114, G2115, G2174, G2292, G2293, G2294, H2865, G3870, G3874, G3954, G4389, G4837, G5111

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

brave, bravest, courage, courageous, dare, dared, discourage, discouraged, discouragement, discouraging, encourage, encouraged, encouragement, encouraging, take courage

### covenant

#### Related Ideas:

agreed, contract, new covenant, will

#### Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

* This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
* When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
* Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements or contracts, and treaties between countries.
* Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
* In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
* In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

* God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
* This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
* The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
* God writes the new covenant on the hearts of those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
* The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
* Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."

Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."

* The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](#en-covenant), [promise](#en-promise))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 09:12
* Genesis 17:07
* Genesis 31:44
* Exodus 34:10-11
* Joshua 24:24-26
* 2 Samuel 23:5
* 2 Kings 18:11-12
* Mark 14:24
* Luke 01:73
* Luke 22:20
* Acts 07:08
* 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
* 2 Corinthians 03:06
* Galatians 03:17-18
* Hebrews 12:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1285, H1697, H2319, H2374, G1242, G4934

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

agreed, contract, covenant, covenants, new covenant, will

### create

#### Related Ideas:

creation, creator, workmanship

#### Definition:

The term "create" means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a "creation." God is called the "Creator" because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

* When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
* When human beings "create" something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
* Sometimes "create" is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
* The term "creation" can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word "creation" refers more specifically to just the people in the world.
* "Workmanship" is anything that a person makes.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world "out of nothing" to make sure this meaning is clear.
* The phrase, "since the creation of the world" means, "since the time when God created the world."
* A similar phrase, "at the beginning of creation" could be translated as, "when God created the world at the beginning of time," or "when the world was first created."
* To preach the good news to "all creation" means to preach the good news to "all people everywhere on earth."
* The phrase "Let all creation rejoice" means "Let everything that God created rejoice."
* Depending on the context, "create" could be translated as "make" or "cause to be" or "make out of nothing."
* The term "the Creator" could be translated as "the One who created everything" or "God, who made the whole world."
* Phrases like "your Creator" could be translated as "God, who created you."

(See also: [God](#en-God), [good news](#en-good news), [world](#en-world))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
* 1 Peter 04:17-19
* Colossians 01:15
* Galatians 06:15
* Genesis 01:01
* Genesis 14:19-20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1254, H3335, H4639, H6213, H7069, G2041, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2938, G2939, G5480

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

create, created, created thing, creates, creation, creator, thing that has been created, workmanship

### cross

#### Definition:

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

* During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
* Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
* Note that this is a completely different word from the verb "cross" that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
* Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as "execution post" or "tree of death."
* Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [crucify](#en-crucify), [Rome](#en-Rome))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 01:17
* Colossians 02:15
* Galatians 06:12
* John 19:18
* Luke 09:23
* Luke 23:26
* Matthew 10:38
* Philippians 02:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4716

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cross

### curse

#### Related Ideas:

accursed, speak evil

#### Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

* A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
* To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
* It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
* In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
* The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
* The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
* The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
* "Cursed be the day I was born" could also be translated as, "I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born."
* However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#en-bless))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 14:24-26
* 2 Peter 02:12-14
* Galatians 03:10
* Galatians 03:14
* Genesis 03:14
* Genesis 03:17
* James 03:10
* Numbers 22:06
* Psalms 109:28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2194, H2778, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

accursed, curse, cursed, curses, cursing, speaks evil

### cut off

#### Related Ideas:

chop down, cut down, cut in two, pluck out, shear, tear off

#### Definition:

The expression "cut off" literally means to use a sharp instrument to remove a part of something. This can refer to, for example, removing a limb from a tree or an arm or leg from a person, or to chopping a tree completely down.

The expression "cut off" is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

The metaphor "cut off" refers to people or God separating a person from his nation or community either by driving him away or by killing him.

To "shear" is to cut the hair off of an animal.

To "pluck" is to separate a part of something from the rest by pulling it off or out.

* In the Old Testament, disobeying God's commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God's people and from his presence.
* God also said he would "cut off" or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.

#### Picture of Cut Off From People:

<image: https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/c/Cutofffrompeople.png>

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The expression "be cut off" could be translated as "be banished" or "be sent away" or "be separated from" or "be killed" or "be destroyed."
* Depending on the context, to "cut off" could be translated as, to "destroy" or to "send away" or to "separate from" or to "destroy."
* In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as "were stopped" or "were caused to stop flowing" or "were divided."

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 17:14
* Judges 21:06
* Proverbs 23:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1497, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581, G1807

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chop ... down, chopped ... down, cut ... down, cut ... off, cut ... out of, cut in two, cut off, cuts ... off, cutting ... off, eliminate, pluck ... out, shear, sheared, tear ... off

### day

#### Related Ideas:

daily, daytime, morning, today

#### Definition:

The term "day" literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

* For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
* Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days."
* Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" nonfiguratively.
* Other translations of "day" could include, "time" or "season" or "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: [judgment day](#en-judgment day), [last day](#en-last day))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 20:06
* Daniel 10:04
* Ezra 06:15
* Ezra 06:19
* Matthew 09:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3117, H3118, H3119, H6242, G2250, G4594

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

daily, day, day's, days, days', daytime, morning, today

### death

#### Related Ideas:

breathed their last, dead, deadly, deadness, deathly, die, lethal, mortal, stop breathing

#### Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

#### 1. Physical death

* To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
* A person's spirit leaves his body when he dies.
* When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
* The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.
* The words "deadly" and "lethal" describe something that causes someone to die.
* Something that is "mortal" can die; it does not live forever.

#### 2. Spiritual death

* Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
* Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
* Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To translate the words "die," death," and dead," it is usually best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death. This is true both when “death” refers to physical death and when it refers to spiritual death.
* In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
* The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died."
* The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#en-believe), [faith](#en-faith), [life](#en-life), [spirit](#en-spirit))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:21
* 1 Thessalonians 4:17
* Acts 10:42
* Acts 14:19
* Colossians 2:15
* Colossians 2:20
* Genesis 2:15-17
* Genesis 34:27
* Matthew 16:28
* Romans 5:10
* Romans 5:12
* Romans 6:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H7819, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

about to die, breathed ... last, causes ... death, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deathly, deaths, die, die with, died, dies, dying, fatal, lethal, mortal, stop breathing, stops breathing

### deceive

#### Related Ideas:

lie, deal falsely, deceit, deception, deceptive, delusion, entice, error, false, falsehood, flatter, illusion, trick

#### Definition:

The word "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true.

* The words "deceit" and "deception" can refer to an act or habit of deceiving others or to a message that is not truthful.
* A "deceiver" is someone who causes others to believe something that is not true. For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
* The words “deceitful” and “deceptive” can describe people who deceive others or to messages or actions that are meant to deceive others.
* To “entice” someone is to deceive him into thinking that he will enjoy doing something evil.
* To “defraud” someone is to use deceit to get from him something that he would not give if he knew the truth.
* To “flatter” someone is to praise him falsely so that he will do what the speaker wants him to do.
* To “lie” to someone or to tell a “lie” is not the same as to lie down to go to sleep.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, “deceive” could be translated as "lie to," "mislead," "trick," or "fool."
* "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
* Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
* The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#en-true))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 1:8
* 1 Timothy 2:14
* 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
* Genesis 3:12-13
* Genesis 31:26-28
* Leviticus 19:11-12
* Matthew 27:64
* Micah 6:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H898, H2048, H2505, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4604, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7723, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G2296, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423, G5571

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

a lie, deal falsely, deceit, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deceive, deceived, deceiver, deceivers, deceives, deceiving, deception, deceptive, defraud, defrauded, delusion, entice, error, false, falsehood, falsely, flatter, flattering, flatters, flattery, illusions, liar, liars, lies, trick

### declare

#### Related Ideas:

announce, declaration, proclaim, proclamation, pronounce

#### Definition:

The terms "declare" and "declaration" refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. To "proclaim" means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

* A "declaration" not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
* For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by "the declaration of Yahweh" or "this is what Yahweh declares." This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.
* Often in the Bible, "proclaim" means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
* In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
* The term "proclaim" can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "declare" could be translated as "proclaim" or "publicly state" or "strongly say" or "emphatically state."
* The term "declaration" could be translated as "statement" or "proclamation."
* The term "proclaim" could be translated as "announce" or "openly preach" or "publicly declare."
* The term "proclamation" could be translated as "announcement" or "public preaching."
* The phrase "this is Yahweh's declaration" could be translated as "this is what Yahweh declares" or "this is what Yahweh says."

(See also: [preach](#en-preach))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 16:24
* 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
* 1 Samuel 24:17-18
* Amos 02:16
* Ezekiel 05:11-12
* Matthew 07:21-23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H262, H816, H874, H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H6963, H7121, H7150, H7440, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G591, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1861, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3004, G3140, G3142, G3670, G3724, G3870, G3955, G4135, G4296, G5335

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

announce, announced, announces, declaration, declarations, declare, declared, declares, declaring, proclaim, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclaims, proclamation, proclamations, pronounces

### deliver

#### Related Ideas:

defend, deliverance, deliverer, escape, relieve, rescue, rescuer

#### Definition:

To "deliver" someone means to rescue that person. The term "deliverer" refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term "deliverance" refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

* In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
* These deliverers were also called "judges" and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
* God is also called a "deliverer." Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
* The term "deliver over to" or "deliver up to" has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term "deliver" can be translated as "rescue" or "liberate" or "save."
* When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, "deliver over" can be translated as "betray to" or "hand over" or "give over."
* The word "deliverer" can also be translated as "rescuer" or "liberator."
* When the term "deliverer" refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as "governor" or "judge" or "leader."

(See also: [judge](#en-judge), [save](#en-save))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 01:10
* Acts 07:35
* Galatians 01:04
* Judges 10:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4498, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5437, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7378, H7611, H7725, H7804, H8199, H8668, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1659, G1807, G1929, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be rescued, defend, defended, deliver, deliverance, delivered, delivered ... over, deliverer, deliverers, delivering, delivers, escape, escaped, permit ... to escape, relieve, rescue, rescued, rescuer, rescues

### descendant

#### Related Ideas:

descend, posterity

#### Definition:

A "descendant" is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

* For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
* A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
* The phrase "descended from" is another way of saying "a descendant of" as in "Abraham was descended from Noah." This could also be translated as "from the family line of."
* A person's "posterity" is all of his descendants.

(See also: [Abraham](#en-Abraham), [father](#en-father), [Jacob](#en-Jacob), [Noah](#en-Noah), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 09:4-5
* Acts 13:23
* Deuteronomy 02:20-22
* Genesis 10:1
* Genesis 28:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H319, H1004, H1121, H1247, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6631, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G3624, G4690

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clans descended, descend, descendant, descendants, descended, posterity

### desert

#### Related Ideas:

remote place, solitary place, wilderness

#### Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

* A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
* Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
* "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
* This word can also be translated as "deserted place," "remote place," "solitary place," or "uninhabited place."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 13:16-18
* Acts 21:38
* Exodus 04:27-28
* Genesis 37:21-22
* John 03:14
* Luke 01:80
* Luke 09:12-14
* Mark 01:03
* Matthew 04:01
* Matthew 11:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

desert, deserts, remote places, solitary place, wilderness, wildernesses

### destroy

#### Related Ideas:

break down, bring ... to nothing, destruction, remove, cut to pieces, demolish, destroyer, destructive, downfall, overthrow, pass away, put an end to, shatter, spoil, throw down, waste away

#### Definition:

To destroy something is to completely make an end to it, so that it no longer exists.

* The term "destroyer" literally means "person who destroys."
* This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
* When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
* In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.
* The word "overthrown" is a metaphor that speaks of a ruler or a great city as if it were a person sitting or standing on a high place whom another person has pushed off of the high place and who is now lying helpless.

(See also: [angel](#en-angel), [Egypt](#en-Egypt), [firstborn](#en-firstborn), [Passover](#en-Passover))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 12:23
* Hebrews 11:28
* Jeremiah 06:26
* Judges 16:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H622, H398, H1104, H1197, H1760, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H2865, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H3832, H4191, H4229, H4288, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5486, H5487, H5493, H5595, H5642, H5674, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7112, H7701, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8213, H8552, G355, G396, G622, G853, G684, G1311, G1842, G2049, G2506, G2507, G2647, G2704, G3089, G3639, G3645, G4199, G5351, G5356

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

an end is put to, be destroyed, break ... down, breaking ... down, breaks ... down, bring ... to nothing, broke to pieces, broken, broken to pieces, brought ... down, brought ... to nothing, complete destruction, completely destroy, completely destroyed, crashing sound, cut ... to pieces, cut into pieces, cuts ... into pieces, demolish, destroy, destroy ... completely, destroyed, destroyer, destroyers, destroying, destroys, destruction, destructive, downfall, overthrew, overthrown, pass away, put an end to, shatter, shattered, shattering, spoil, throw down, throws ... down, thrown down, wasting away

### disgrace

#### Related Ideas:

disgraceful, vile

#### Definitions:

The term "disgrace" refers to a loss of honor and respect.

* When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
* The term "disgraceful" is used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it.
* Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame.
* For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
* Ways to translate "disgrace" could include "shame" or "dishonor."
* Ways to translate "disgraceful" could include "shameful" or dishonoring."

(See also: [dishonor](#en-dishonor), [honor](#en-honor), [shame](#en-shame))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 03:07
* Genesis 34:07
* Hebrews 11:26
* Lamentations 02:1-2
* Psalms 022:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H954, H1984, H2490, H2617, H2659, H2781, H2865, H3637, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6031, H7036, G149, G150, G819, G3680, G3856

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

disgrace, disgraced, disgraceful, disgraceful thing, disgraces, vile

### divine

#### Related Ideas:

deity, divine nature

#### Definition:

The term "divine" refers to anything pertaining to God.

* Some ways this term is used include "divine authority," "divine judgment," "divine nature," "divine power," and "divine glory."
* In one passage in the Bible, the term "divine" is used to describe something about a false deity.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate the term "divine" could include "God's" or "from God" or "pertaining to God" or "characterized by God."
* For example, "divine authority" could be translated as "God's authority" or "authority that comes from God."
* The phrase "divine glory" could be translated as "God's glory" or "the glory that God has" or "glory that comes from God."
* Some translations may prefer to use a different word when describing something that pertains to a false god.

(See also: [authority](#en-authority), [god](#en-god), [glory](#en-glory), [God](#en-God), [judge](#en-judge), [power](#en-power))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 10:3-4
* 2 Peter 01:04
* Romans 01:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2303, G2304, G2305, G2316

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deity, divine, divine nature

### donkey

#### Related Ideas:

mule

#### Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

* A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
* Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
* Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
* In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
* Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 01:32-34
* 1 Samuel 09:04
* 2 Kings 04:21-22
* Deuteronomy 05:12-14
* Luke 13:15
* Matthew 21:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G3678, G3688, G5268

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

donkey, donkey's, donkeys, mule, mules, wild donkey

### dream

#### Related Ideas:

dreamer

#### Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

* Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
* Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
* In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
* A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: [vision](#en-vision))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:16-17
* Daniel 01:17-18
* Daniel 02:01
* Genesis 37:06
* Genesis 40:4-5
* Matthew 02:13
* Matthew 02:19-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G1797, G1798, G3677

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dream, dreamed, dreamer, dreamers, dreaming, dreams

### earth

#### Related Ideas:

clay, dust, earthen, earthly, ground, land, soil

#### Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

* "Earth" can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
* This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth.
* The expressions "let the earth be glad" and "he will judge the earth" are examples of figurative uses of this term.
* The term "earthly" usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.
* The term "earthen" describes something that is made of clay

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
* Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil" or "clay."
* When used figuratively, "earth" could be translated as "people on the earth" or "people living on earth" or "everything on earth."
* Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: [spirit](#en-spirit), [world](#en-world))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 01:38-40
* 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
* Daniel 04:35
* Luke 12:51
* Matthew 06:10
* Matthew 11:25
* Zechariah 06:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H80, H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2868, G2886, G3625, G5517, G5522

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clay, dust, earth, earth's, earthen, earthly, ground, land, lands, soil

### elder

#### Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

* The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
* In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
* In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
* In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
* Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
* This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
* 1 Timothy 03:1-3
* 1 Timothy 04:14
* Acts 05:19-21
* Acts 14:23
* Mark 11:28
* Matthew 21:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

elder, elders

### ephod

#### Definition:

An ephod was an apron-like garment worn by the Israelite priests. It had two parts, front and back, that were joined together at the shoulders and tied around the waist with a cloth belt.

* One kind of ephod was made of plain linen and was worn by the ordinary priests.
* The ephod worn by the high priest was specially embroidered with gold, blue, purple, and red yarn.
* The breastpiece of the high priest was attached to the front of the ephod. Behind the breastpiece were stored the Urim and Thummim, which were stones used for asking God what his will was in certain matters.
* The judge Gideon foolishly made an ephod out of gold and it became something that the Israelites worshiped as an idol.

(See also: [priest](#en-priest))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 02:18-19
* Exodus 28:4-5
* Hosea 03:04
* Judges 08:27
* Leviticus 08:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H641, H642, H646

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ephod

### evil

#### Related Ideas:

deal violently, displeasing, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly

#### Definition:

The terms "evil" and "wicked" both refer to anything that is opposed to God's holy character and will.

* While "evil" may describe a person's character, "wicked" may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
* The term "wickedness" refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
* The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the terms "evil" and "wicked" can be translated as "bad" or "sinful" or "immoral."
* Other ways to translate these could include "not good" or "not righteous" or "not moral."
* Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#en-disobey), [sin](#en-sin), [good](#en-good), [righteous](#en-righteous), [demon](#en-demon))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 24:11
* 1 Timothy 06:10
* 3 John 01:10
* Genesis 02:17
* Genesis 06:5-6
* Job 01:01
* Job 08:20
* Judges 09:57
* Luke 06:22-23
* Matthew 07:11-12
* Proverbs 03:07
* Psalms 022:16-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H1100, H1431, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2554, H2555, H5765, H2162, H2248, H2254, H3238, H3399, H3415, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5771, H5807, H5999, H6090, H6184, H6293, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, H7701, H8133, G92, G93, G94, G932, G983, G984, G987, G988, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G4550, G5337

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deal violently, deal worse, displeasing, do ... evil, do ... violence, done ... violence, evil, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, evils, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violated, violates, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly, wretches

### face

#### Related Ideas:

before, facedown, facial, presence, surface

#### Definition:

The word "face" literally refers to the front part of a person's head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

* The expression "your face" is often a figurative way of saying "you." Similarly, the expression "my face" often means "I" or "me."
* In a physical sense, to "face" someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
* To "face each other" means to "look directly at each other."
* Being "face to face" means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
* When Jesus "steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem," it means that he very firmly decided to go.
* To "set one's face against" people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
* The expression "face of the land" refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a "famine covering the face of the earth" refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
* The figurative expression "do not hide your face from your people" means "do not reject your people" or "do not desert your people" or "do not stop taking care of your people."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
* The term to "face" could be translated as to "turn toward" or to "look at directly" or to "look at the face of."
* The expression "face to face" could be translated as "up close" or "right in front of" or "in the presence of."
* Depending on the context, the expression "before his face" could be translated as "ahead of him" or "in front of him" or "before him" or "in his presence."
* The expression "set his face toward" could be translated as "began traveling toward" or "firmly made up his mind to go to."
* The expression "hide his face from" could be translated as "turn away from" or "stop helping or protecting" or "reject."
* To "set his face against" a city or people could be translated as "look at with anger and condemn" or "refuse to accept" or "decide to reject" or "condemn and reject" or "pass judgment on."
* The expression "say it to their face" could be translated as "say it to them directly" or "say it to them in their presence" or "say it to them in person."
* The expression "on the face of the land" could also be translated as "throughout the land" or "over the whole earth" or "living throughout the earth."

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 05:04
* Genesis 33:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H600, H639, H2122, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

before, face, faced, facedown, faces, facial, facing, presence, surface

### faith

#### Definition:

In general, the term "faith" refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

* To "have faith" in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
* To "have faith in Jesus" means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
* True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
* Sometimes "faith" refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression "the truths of the faith."
* In contexts such as "keep the faith" or "abandon the faith," the term "faith" refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In some contexts, "faith" can be translated as "belief" or "conviction" or "confidence" or "trust."
* For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb "believe."
* The expression "keep the faith" could be translated by "keep believing in Jesus" or "continue to believe in Jesus."
* The sentence "they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith" could be translated by "they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught."
* The expression "my true son in the faith" could be translated by something like "who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus" or "my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus."

(See also: [believe](#en-believe), [faithful](#en-faithful))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:07
* Acts 06:7
* Galatians 02:20-21
* James 02:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

faith

### faithful

#### Related Ideas:

faithfully, faithfulness, reliable

#### Definition:

To be "faithful" to God means to consistently live according to God's teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him.The state or condition of being faithful is "faithfulness."

* A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
* A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
* Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term "unfaithful" describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is "unfaithfulness."

* The people of Israel were called "unfaithful" when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
* In marriage, someone who commits adultery is "unfaithful" to his or her spouse.
* God used the term "unfaithfulness" to describe Israel's disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "faithful" and "faithfulness" \* In many contexts, "faithful" can be translated as "loyal" or "dedicated" or "dependable." \* In other contexts, "faithful" can be translated by a word or phrase that means "continuing to believe" or "persevering in believing and obeying God." \* Ways that "faithfulness" could be translated could include "persevering in believing" or "loyalty" or "trustworthiness" or "believing and obeying God."

Translating "unfaithful" and "unfaithfulness" \* Depending on the context, "unfaithful" could be translated as "not faithful" or "unbelieving" or "not obedient" or "not loyal." \* The phrase "the unfaithful" could be translated as "people who are not faithful (to God)" or "unfaithful people" or "those who disobey God" or "people who rebel against God." \* The term "unfaithfulness" could be translated as "disobedience" or "disloyalty" or "not believing or obeying." \* In some languages, the term "unfaithful" is related to the word for "unbelief."

(See also: [adultery](#en-adultery), [believe](#en-believe), [disobey](#en-disobey), [faith](#en-faith), [believe](#en-believe))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 24:49
* Leviticus 26:40
* Numbers 12:07
* Joshua 02:14
* Judges 02:16-17
* 1 Samuel 02:9
* Psalm 012:1
* Proverbs 11:12-13
* Isaiah 01:26
* Jeremiah 09:7-9
* Hosea 05:07
* Luke 12:46
* Luke 16:10
* Colossians 01:07
* 1 Thessalonians 05:24
* 3 John 01:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H2181, H2616, H2623, H4603, H4820, G569, G4102, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

faithful, faithful one, faithful people, faithfully, faithfulness, reliable, show ... self ... faithful

### family

#### Related Ideas:

family line, genealogical record

#### Definition:

The term "family" refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. It often also includes other relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

* The Hebrew family was a religious community passing on traditions through worship and instruction.
* Usually the father was the major authority of the family.
* Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
* Some languages may have a broader word such as "clan" or "household" that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
* The term "family" is also used to refer to people who are related spiritually, such as people who are part of God's family because they believe in Jesus.
* A "genealogy" is a record of a person's family that tells who his ancestors were.

(See also: [clan](#en-clan), [father](#en-father), [house](#en-house))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:1-2
* 1 Samuel 18:18
* Exodus 01:21
* Joshua 02:12-13
* Luke 02:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H3188, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, H8435, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

families, family, family line, genealogical record, genealogical records, genealogies, genealogy, recorded in ... genealogies, recorded in ... genealogy

### fast

#### Definition:

The term to "fast" means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

* Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
* Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
* Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
* The verb to "fast" can also be translated as to "refrain from eating" or to "not eat."
* The noun "fast" could be translated as "time of not eating" or "time of abstaining from food."

(See also: [Jewish authorities](#en-Jewish authorities))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 21:8-10
* 2 Chronicles 20:03
* Acts 13:1-3
* Jonah 03:4-5
* Luke 05:34
* Mark 02:19
* Matthew 06:18
* Matthew 09:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fast, fasted, fasting, fastings, fasts

### father

#### Related Ideas:

ancestor, ancestral, beget, fatherless, forefather, grandfather, orphan

#### Definition:

When used literally, the term "father" refers to a person's male parent. \* A "grandfather" is someone's father's father or someone's mother's father. \* A "forefather" is one of a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather. \* An "ancestral household" is a social unit of those people who are descended from one ancestor. \* A person who is "fatherless" does not have a father. \* An "orphan" is a person who has no parents. In Bible times widows were often not able to care for their children, so a child with a mother but no father could also be thought of as an orphan. \* To "beget" someone is to become that person's father.

There are also several figurative uses of the term "father."

* The term "fathers" often refers to a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather.
* The term "father" can refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 "the father of all who live in tents" could mean, "the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents."
* The apostle Paul called himself the "father" of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

#### Translation Suggestions

* When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
* "God the Father" should also be translated using the usual, common word for "father."
* When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as "ancestors" or "ancestral fathers."
* Sometimes the word "father" can be translated as "clan leader."
* When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as "spiritual father" or "father in Christ."
* The phrase "father of all lies" could be translated as "source of all lies" or "the one from whom all lies come."

(See also: [God the Father](#en-God the Father), [son](#en-son), [Son of God](#en-Son of God))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:02
* Acts 07:32
* Acts 07:45
* Acts 22:03
* Genesis 31:30
* Genesis 31:42
* Genesis 31:53
* Hebrews 07:4-6
* John 04:12
* Joshua 24:3-4
* Malachi 03:07
* Mark 10:7-9
* Matthew 01:07
* Matthew 03:09
* Matthew 10:21
* Matthew 18:14
* Romans 04:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H539, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ancestor, ancestor's, ancestors, ancestors', ancestral, beget, begot, father, father's, fathered, fathering, fatherless, fathers, fathers', forefather, forefathers, grandfather, orphan, orphans

### favor

#### Related Ideas:

favorable, favoritism, privilege, request for favor, show favor

#### Definition:

To "favor" is to prefer. When someone favors a person, he regards that person positively and does more to benefit that person than he does to benefit others.

* The term "favoritism" means the attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoratism is considered unfair.
* Jesus grew up "in favor with" God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
* The expression "find favor" with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
* When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person's request and grants it.
* A "favor" can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate the term "favor" could include, "blessing" or "benefit" or "credit."
* The "favorable year of Yahweh" could be translated as "the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing."
* The term "favoritism" could be translated as "partiality" or "being prejudiced" or "unjust treatment." This word is related to the word "favorite," which means "the one who is preferred or loved best."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 02:25-26
* 2 Chronicles 19:07
* 2 Corinthians 01:11
* Acts 24:27
* Genesis 41:16
* Genesis 47:25
* Genesis 50:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2604, H2617, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7522, H7965, H8467, G1184, G3685, G3982, G4380, G4382, G5485, G5486

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

favor, favorable, favored, favoritism, favors, privilege, request for favor, seek ... favor, seeking the favor, show favor, shown favor, sought ... favor

### feast

#### Related Ideas:

dinner

#### Definition:

The term "feast" refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action to "feast" means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

* Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
* The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called "feasts."
* In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
* In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
* A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
* The term to "feast" could also be translated as to "eat lavishly" or to "celebrate by eating lots of food" or to "eat a special, large meal."
* Depending on the context, "feast" could be translated as "celebrating together with a large meal" or "a meal with a lot of food" or "a celebration meal."

(See also: [festival](#en-festival))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 02:12-14
* Genesis 26:30
* Genesis 29:22
* Genesis 40:20
* Jude 01:12-13
* Luke 02:43
* Luke 14:7-9
* Matthew 22:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G1173, G1859, G2165, G4910

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dinner, feast, feasting, feasts

### festival

#### Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

* The word for "festival" in the Old Testament literally means "appointed time."
* The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
* In some English translations, the word "feast" is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.

There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:

Passover

* Festival of Unleavened Bread
* Firstfruits
* Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
* Festival of Trumpets
* Day of Atonement

Festival of Shelters

The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

* A person who "celebrates" acts as if he were at a festival.

(See also: [feast](#en-feast))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 23:31
* 2 Chronicles 08:13
* Exodus 05:01
* John 04:45
* Luke 22:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, H8057, G1456, G1858, G1859

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

festival, festivals

### fig

#### Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

* Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
* Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
* Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
* In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
* The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
* Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

#### Bible References:

* Habakkuk 03:17
* James 03:12
* Luke 13:07
* Mark 11:14
* Matthew 07:17
* Matthew 21:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1061, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fig, figs

### fir

#### Definition:

A fir tree is a kind of tree that stays green all year and has cones that contain seeds.

* Fir trees are also referred to as "evergreen" trees.
* In ancient times, the wood of fir trees was used for making musical instruments and for building structures such as boats, houses, and the temple.
* Some examples of fir trees mentioned in the Bible are pine, cedar, cypress, and juniper.

(See also: [cedar](#en-cedar), [cypress](#en-cypress))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 27:4-5
* Isaiah 37:24-25
* Isaiah 41:19-20
* Isaiah 44:14
* Isaiah 60:12-13
* Psalms 104:16-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H766, H1265, H1266

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fir, firs

### fire

#### Related Ideas:

blazing, fiery, firebrands, inflame, kindle

#### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

* A fire that is "blazing" is very hot and has large flames.
* A "fire brand" is a piece of burning wood.
* To "set on fire" or "set fire to" something is to make it start burning with fire.
* To "inflame" something is to make it start burning.
* To "kindle" a fire is to start that fire burning.
* The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.

The word "fire" and ideas related to fire are also used figuratively. \* The term "fire" can refer to judgment or purification. \* The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified." \* Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.

(See also: [pure](#en-pure))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 16:18-20
* 2 Kings 01:10
* 2 Thessalonians 01:08
* Acts 07:29-30
* John 15:06
* Luke 03:16
* Matthew 03:12
* Nehemiah 01:3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H1814, H2734, H2740, H3341, H3857, H4168, H5135, H6315, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G2618, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

blazing, fiery, fire, firebrands, fires, flaming, kindle, kindled, kindles, set fire to, set ... on fire, sets ... on fire

### firstborn

#### Related Ideas:

first issue

#### Definition:

The term "firstborn" refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

* In the Bible, "firstborn" usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
* In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
* Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
* This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God's firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
* Jesus, the Son of God is called God's firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.
* The phrase "first issue of the womb" is another way of saying "firstborn."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When "firstborn" occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as "firstborn male" or "firstborn son," since that is what is implied.
* Other ways to translate this term could include "the son who was born first" or "the eldest son" or "the number one son."
* When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the son who has authority over everything" or "the Son who is first in honor."
* Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#en-inherit), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice), [son](#en-son))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 01:15
* Genesis 04:3-5
* Genesis 29:26-27
* Genesis 43:33
* Luke 02:6-7
* Revelation 01:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, H6363, G4416, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

first ... issue, firstborn

### flesh

#### Related Ideas:

fleshly, human, living creatures, meat, physical

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "flesh" literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

* The Bible also uses the term "flesh" in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
* In the New Testament, the term "flesh" can be used to talk about something that is associated with being human. For example, to decide something according to the flesh means to decide something according to human standards.
* In the New Testament, the term "flesh" can be used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
* The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
* The expression "flesh and blood" can also refer to a person's ancestors or descendants.
* The expression "one flesh" refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In the context of an animal's body, "flesh" could be translated as "body" or "skin" or "meat."
* When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as "living beings" or "everything that is alive."
* When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as "people" or "human beings" or "everyone who lives."
* The expression "flesh and blood" could also be translated as "relatives" or "family" or "kinfolk" or "family clan." There may be contexts where it could be translated as "ancestors" or "descendants."
* Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to "flesh and blood."
* The expression "become one flesh" could be translated as "unite sexually" or "become as one body" or "become like one person in body and spirit." The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. . It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who "become one flesh" literally become one person.

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:16
* 2 John 01:07
* Ephesians 06:12
* Galatians 01:16
* Genesis 02:24
* John 01:14
* Matthew 16:17
* Romans 08:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H120, H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4561

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

flesh, fleshly, human, humans, living creatures, meat, physical

### flock

#### Related Ideas:

herd

#### Definition:

In the Bible, "flock" refers to a group of sheep or goats and "herd" refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

* Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
* For example, in English the term "herd" can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
* The term "flock" in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
* Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
* For verses that refer to "flocks and herds" it may be better to add "of sheep" or "of cattle" for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: [goat](#en-goat), [cow](#en-cow), [pig](#en-pig), [sheep](#en-sheep), )

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 10:28-29
* 2 Chronicles 17:11
* Deuteronomy 14:22-23
* Luke 02:8-9
* Matthew 08:30
* Matthew 26:31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H504, H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7473, H7716, H7462, H7794, G34, G4167, G4168

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

flock, flocking, flocks, herd, herds

### foreigner

#### Related Ideas:

alien, barbarian, foreign, sojourn, sojourner, stranger, tenant

#### Definition:

The term "foreigner" refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an "alien."

* In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
* A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
* For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a "foreigner" there because she was not originally from Israel.
* The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were "foreigners" to God's covenant.
* Sometimes "foreigner" is translated as "stranger," but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.
* A "sojourner" is a person who is living in one country that is not his but waiting for the chance to move to his own country.
* A "barbarian" is a person from another country who does not speak the local language or obey the local customs and so the natives do not like or respect him.
* A "strangers" are persons who do not know each other.
* To be "alienated" is to no longer be living in loving relationship with another. For example, a husband and wife who are no longer living together but are not divorced are "alienated" or "estranged."
* A "tenant" is a person who rents his dwelling place.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 02:17
* Acts 07:29-30
* Deuteronomy 01:15-16
* Genesis 15:12-13
* Genesis 17:27
* Luke 17:18
* Matthew 17:24-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H312, H628, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G241, G245, G246, G526, G915, G3581, G3927, G3941

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alien, alienated, alienates, barbarian, foreign, foreigner, foreigners, live as a foreigner, living as foreigners, sojourn, sojourned, sojourner, sojourners, sojourning, stranger, strangers, tenant, tenants

### found

#### Related Ideas:

establish, foundation, founder

#### Definition:

The verb "found" means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase "founded on" means supported by or based on. A "foundation" is the base of support on which something is built or created.

* The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
* The term "foundation" can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
* In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
* A "foundation stone" was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.
* To "establish" something is for a person to start or make or create something that he wants to endure for a long time.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The phrase "before the foundation of the world" could be translated as "before the creation of the world" or "before the time when the world first existed" or "before everything was first created."
* The term "founded on" could be translated as "securely built on" or "firmly based on."
* Depending on the context, "foundation" could be translated as "strong base" or "solid support" or "beginning" or "creation."

(See also: [cornerstone](#en-cornerstone), [create](#en-create))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 06:37-38
* 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
* Ezekiel 13:13-14
* Luke 14:29
* Matthew 13:35
* Matthew 25:34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H134, H553, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H3559, H3772, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H5975, H7760, H8356, G747, G950, G1457, G2310, G2311, G2602

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

established, establishes, found, foundation, foundations, founded, founder, founds, lay ... foundation, lay ... foundations

### free

#### Related Ideas:

freedom, freeman, liberty, volunteer, without cost, without paying for it

#### Definition:

The terms "free" or "freedom" refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for "freedom" is "liberty."

* The expression to "set someone free" or to "free someone" means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
* In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
* Having "liberty" or "freedom" can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.
* To "volunteer" is to freely and willingly agree to do something.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "free" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "not bound" or "not enslaved" or "not in slavery" or "not in bondage."
* The term "freedom" or "liberty" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the state of being free" or "the condition of not being a slave" or "not being bound."
* The expression to "set free" could be translated as to "cause to be free" or to "rescue from slavery" or to "release from bondage."
* A person who has been "set free" has been "released" or "taken out of" bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#en-bind), [enslave](#en-enslave), [servant](#en-servant))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:26
* Galatians 05:01
* Isaiah 61:1
* Leviticus 25:10
* Romans 06:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6340, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G558, G629, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G3089, G3955, G4506, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

free, freed, freedom, freeing, freely, freely gave, freeman, frees, liberty, set ... free, volunteer, volunteered, without cost, without paying for it

### fruit

#### Related Ideas:

bear fruit, crop, fruitful, produce, productive land, unfruitful

#### Definition:

The term "fruit" literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. \* A "fruitful" plant is one that has a lot of good fruit. \* The expression "fruit of the land" refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains. \* The term "crop" can refer to what people have planted for for food. \* The term "crop" can refer to the food that is harvested at one time.

Sometimes the term "fruit" and ideas related to it are used figuratively. \* In general, the expression "fruit of" refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the "fruit of wisdom" refers to the good things that come from being wise. \* The expression "fruit of the womb" refers to "what the womb produces"—that is, children. \* The Bible often uses "fruit" to refer to a person's actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person's words and actions reveal what his character is like. \* The expression "fruit of the Spirit" refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him. \* The term "fruitful" can be used figuratively to mean "prosperous." This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term using the general word for "fruit" that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural "fruits" whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
* Depending on the context, the term "fruitful" could be translated as "producing much spiritual fruit" or "having many children" or "prosperous."
* The expression "fruit of the land" could also be translated as "food that the land produces" or "food crops that are growing in that region."
* When God created animals and people, he commanded them to "be fruitful and multiply," which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as "have many offspring" or "have many children and descendants" or "have many children so that you will have many descendants."
* The expression "fruit of the womb" could be translated as "what the womb produces" or "children a women gives birth to" or just "children." When Elizabeth says to Mary "blessed is the fruit of your womb," she means "blessed is the child you will give birth to." The project language may also have a different expression for this.
* Another expression "fruit of the vine," could be translated as "vine fruit" or "grapes."
* Depending on the context, the expression "will be more fruitful" could also be translated as "will produce more fruit" or "will have more children" or "will be prosperous."
* The apostle Paul's expression "fruitful labor" could be translated as "work that brings very good results" or "efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus."
* The "fruit of the Spirit" could also be translated as "works that the Holy Spirit produces" or "words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone."

(See also: [descendant](#en-descendant), [grain](#en-grain), [grape](#en-grape), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [vine](#en-vine), [womb](#en-womb))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 05:23
* Genesis 01:11
* Luke 08:15
* Matthew 03:08
* Matthew 07:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3018, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6499, H6509, H6529, H6631, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear fruit, crop, crops, fruit, fruitful, fruits, produce, productive land, unfruitful

### fulfill

#### Related Ideas:

carry out, fill to the limit, finish, fulfillment, in full, make something full

#### Definition:

The term "fulfill" means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

* When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
* If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
* To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "fulfill" could be translated as "accomplish" or "complete" or "cause to happen" or "obey" or "perform."
* The phrase "has been fulfilled" could also be translated as "has come true" or "has happened" or "has taken place."
* Ways to translate "fulfill," as in "fulfill your ministry," could include "complete" or "perform" or "practice" or "serve other people as God has called you to do."

(See also: [prophet](#en-prophet), [Christ](#en-Christ), [minister](#en-minister), [call](#en-call))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 02:27
* Acts 03:17-18
* Leviticus 22:17-19
* Luke 04:21
* Matthew 01:22-23
* Matthew 05:17
* Psalms 116:12-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1214, H4390, H5487, H7999, G378, G4135, G4137, G4138, G5048, G5055

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

carried out, fill up ... to the limit, finishing, fulfill, fulfilled, fulfillment, fulfills, in full, make ... full

### gate

#### Related Ideas:

doorkeeper, entrance, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

#### Definition:

A "gate" is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city.

* A "gate bar" is a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.
* A "gatekeeper" was a person who was responsible to control who could go through the gateway.
* A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
* To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
* A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
* The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:24
* Acts 10:18
* Deuteronomy 21:18-19
* Genesis 19:01
* Genesis 24:60
* Matthew 07:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4259, G4439, G4440, G2377

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

entrance, gate, gate bars, gateposts, gates, gateway, gateways

### generation

#### Definition:

The term "generation" refers to a group of people who were all born around the same time period.

* A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
* Parents and their children are from two different generations.
* In the Bible, the term "generation" is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The phrase "this generation" or "people of this generation" could be translated as "the people living now" or "you people."
* "This wicked generation" could also be translated as "these wicked people living now."
* The expression "from generation to generation" or "from one generation to the next" could be translated as "people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren" or "people in every time period" or "people in this time period and future time periods" or "all people and their descendants."
* "A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh" could also be translated as "Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him."

(See also: [descendant](#en-descendant), [evil](#en-evil), [father](#en-father))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:19-21
* Exodus 03:13-15
* Genesis 15:16
* Genesis 17:07
* Mark 08:12
* Matthew 11:16
* Matthew 23:34-36
* Matthew 24:34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

generation, generations

### gift

#### Related Ideas:

give, gracious gift

#### Definition:

The term "gift" refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

* Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called "gifts."
* In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
* The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
* In the New Testament, the term "gifts" is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The general term for "gift" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "something that is given."
* In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term "gift from the Spirit" could be translated as "spiritual ability" or "special ability from the Holy Spirit" or "special spiritual skill that God gave."

(See also: [spirit](#en-spirit), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 12:01
* 2 Samuel 11:08
* Acts 08:20
* Acts 10:04
* Acts 11:17
* Acts 24:17
* James 01:17
* John 04:9-10
* Matthew 05:23
* Matthew 08:4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5379, H7810, H7964, H8641, G331, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5485, G5486

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gift, gifts, give, gracious gift

### glean

#### Related Ideas:

pick up

#### Definition:

The term "glean" means to go through a field or orchard and pick up whatever grain or fruit the harvesters have left behind.

* God told the Israelites to let the widows, poor people, and foreigners glean the leftover grain in order to provide food for themselves.
* Sometimes the owner of the field would allow the gleaners to go directly behind the harvesters to glean, which enabled them to glean much more of the grain.
* A clear example of how this worked is in the story of Ruth, who was generously allowed to glean among the harvesters in the fields of her relative Boaz.
* Other ways to translate "glean" can be "pick up" or "gather" or "collect."

(See also: [Boaz](#en-Boaz), [grain](#en-grain), [harvest](#en-harvest), [Ruth](#en-Ruth))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 24:21-22
* Isaiah 17:4-5
* Job 24:06
* Ruth 02:02
* Ruth 02:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3950, H3951, H5953, H5955

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

glean, gleaned, gleanings, gleans, picked up

### goat

#### Related Ideas:

goatskins, kid, scapegoat, young goat

#### Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a "kid."

* Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.

Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:

Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.

* The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.

Sheep usually like to stay with their flocks, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herds.

In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.

* Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
* In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
* The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people's sins.

(See also: [flock](#en-flock), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice), [sheep](#en-sheep), [righteous](#en-righteous), [wine](#en-wine))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 12:3-4
* Genesis 30:32
* Genesis 31:10
* Genesis 37:31
* Leviticus 03:12-14
* Matthew 25:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H689, H1423, H1429, H3277, H3629, H5795, H5796, H6260, H6629, H6842, H7716, H8163, H8166, H8495, G122, G2055, G2056, G5131

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

goat, goats, goats', goatskins, kid, kids, scapegoat, young goat

### god

#### Related Ideas:

disgusting figure, false god, goat idols, goddess, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

#### Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

* These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
* People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
* In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
* Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
* Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
* Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

* People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
* These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
* Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
* Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
* An "idolatrous kingdom" means a "kingdom of people who worship idols" or a "kingdom of people who worship earthly things."
* The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a "carved image" or an "idol."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* There may already be a word for "god" or "false god" in the language or in a nearby language.
* The term "idol" could be used to refer to false gods.
* In English, a lower case "g" is used to refer to false gods, and upper case "G" is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
* Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
* Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#en-God), [Asherah](#en-Asherah), [Baal](#en-Baal), [Molech](#en-Molech), [demon](#en-demon), [image](#en-image), [kingdom](#en-kingdom), [worship](#en-worship))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 35:02
* Exodus 32:01
* Psalms 031:06
* Psalms 081:8-10
* Isaiah 44:20
* Acts 07:41
* Acts 07:43
* Acts 15:20
* Acts 19:27
* Romans 02:22
* Galatians 04:8-9
* Galatians 05:19-21
* Colossians 03:05
* 1 Thessalonians 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1140, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

disgusting figure, disgusting figures, false god, goat idols, god, goddess, gods, idol, idol's, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry, idols, idols'

### gold

#### Related Ideas:

golden, goldsmith, purest gold

#### Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

* In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
* These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
* In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
* Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
* When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term "golden" or "gold-covered" or "gold-overlaid" could also be used.
* Sometimes an object is described as "gold-colored," which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.
* A "goldsmith" is a person who takes gold and makes it into useful things like jewelry.

(See also: [altar](#en-altar), [ark of the covenant](#en-ark of the covenant), [god](#en-god), [silver](#en-silver), [tabernacle](#en-tabernacle), [temple](#en-temple))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:07
* 1 Timothy 02:8-10
* 2 Chronicles 01:15
* Acts 03:06
* Daniel 02:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6337, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gold, golden, goldsmith, goldsmiths, purest gold

### good

#### Related Ideas:

best, better, fair, good things, goodness, improved, prefer, proper, well

#### Definition:

The word "good" has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

* In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
* Something that is "good" could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
* Land that is "good" could be called "fertile" or "productive."
* A "good" crop could be a "plentiful" crop.
* A person can be "good" at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, "a good farmer."
* In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."
* The term "goodness" usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
* The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.
* Actions that are "proper" are those that are good and right for the situation in which they are done.
* "Goods" are good things, valuable possessions.
* To "prefer" something is to think it is better than other things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
* "Good land" could be translated as "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
* The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone.
* To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
* Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: [evil](#en-evil), [holy](#en-holy), [profit](#en-profit), [righteous](#en-righteous))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 05:22-24
* Genesis 01:12
* Genesis 02:09
* Genesis 02:17
* James 03:13
* Romans 02:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H155, H410, H1580, H1926, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3787, H3966, H4399, H5232, H6743, H7225, H7368, H7399, H7999, H8231, H8232, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1342, G1380, G1832, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2140, G2163, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2986, G3140, G4147, G4632, G4851, G5224, G5358, G5543, G5544, G5623

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

best, better, do ... good, fair, good, good things, goodness, goods, improved, made ... better, prefer, proper, seemed good, well

### grace

#### Related Ideas:

generous, gracious, graciously

#### Definition:

The word "grace" refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term "gracious" describes someone who shows grace to others.

* God's grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
* The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
* The expression to "find grace" is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways that "grace" could be translated include "divine kindness" or "God's favor" or "God's kindness and forgiveness for sinners" or "merciful kindness."
* The term "gracious" could be translated as "full of grace" or "kind" or "merciful" or "mercifully kind."
* The expression "he found grace in the eyes of God" could be translated as "he received mercy from God" or "God mercifully helped him" or "God showed his favor to him" or "God was pleased with him and helped him."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:33
* Acts 06:08
* Acts 14:04
* Colossians 04:06
* Colossians 04:18
* Genesis 43:28-29
* James 04:07
* John 01:16
* Philippians 04:21-23
* Revelation 22:20-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, G5485, G5543

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

act of grace, generous, grace, gracious, graciously, graciously given

### grain

#### Related Ideas:

grainfields, standing grain

#### Definition:

The term "grain" usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

* In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
* A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
* Note that some older Bible versions use the word "corn" to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, "corn" only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#en-head), [wheat](#en-wheat))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 42:03
* Genesis 42:26-28
* Genesis 43:1-2
* Luke 06:02
* Mark 02:24
* Matthew 13:7-9
* Ruth 01:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G2848, G3450, G4621, G4719

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

grain, grainfields, grains, standing grain

### grain offering

#### Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

* The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
* Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
* Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#en-burnt offering), [guilt offering](#en-guilt offering) , [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice), [sin offering](#en-sin offering))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
* Exodus 29:41-42
* Judges 13:19
* Leviticus 02:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4503, H8641

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

grain offering, grain offerings

### grape

#### Related Ideas:

raisin

#### Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

* There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
* Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
* People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
* Grapes were a very important food during Bible times, and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
* "Raisins" are dried grapes. People often dried grapes in order to keep them from rotting.
* Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God's kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#en-vine), [vineyard](#en-vineyard), [wine](#en-wine))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 23:24
* Hosea 09:10
* Job 15:33
* Luke 06:43-44
* Matthew 07:15-17
* Matthew 21:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H3196, H5955, H6025, H6528, G288, G4718

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

grape, grapes, raisin, raisins

### groan

#### Related Ideas:

sigh

#### Definition:

The term to "groan" refers to the uttering of a deep, low sound that is caused by physical or emotional distress. It could also be the sound someone makes without any words.

* A person can groan because of feeling grief.
* Groaning can be caused by feeling a terrible, oppressive burden.
* Other ways to translate "groan" could include, "give a low cry of pain" or "grieve deeply."
* As a noun, this could be translated as, "a low cry of distress" or "a deep murmur of pain."

(See also: [cry](#en-cry))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 05:02
* Hebrews 13:17
* Job 23:02
* Psalms 032:3-4
* Psalms 102:5-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H584, H585, H602, H603, H1901, H1993, H5008, H5009, H5098, H5594, H7581, G4726, G4727, G4959

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

groan, groaned, groaning, groanings, groans, sigh, sighed, sighed deeply, sighing

### hand

#### Related Ideas:

handbreadth, handful, lay a hand on

#### Definition:

There are several figurative ways that "hand" is used in the Bible:

* To "hand" something to someone means to put something into that person's hands.
* The term "hand" is often used in reference to God's power and action, such as when God says "Has not my hand made all these things?"
* Expressions such as "hand over to" or "deliver into the hands of" refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.

Some other figurative uses of "hand" include:

To "lay a hand on" means to "harm."

* To "save from the hand of" means to stop someone from harming someone else.
* The position of being "on the right hand" means "on the right side" or "to the right."

The expression "by the hand of" someone means "by" or "through" the action of that person. For example, "by the hand of the Lord" means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.

Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.

* The term "laying on of hands" refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service or to pray for healing.
* When Paul says "written by my hand," it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

#### Translation Suggestions

* These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
* The expression "handed him the scroll" could also be translated as "gave him the scroll" or "put the scroll in his hand." It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
* When "hand" refers to the person, such as in "the hand of God did this," it could be translated as "God did this."
* An expression such as "delivered them into the hands of their enemies" or "handed them over to their enemies," could be translated as, "allowed their enemies to conquer them" or "caused them to be captured by their enemies" or "empowered their enemies to gain control over them."
* To "die by the hand of" could be translated as "be killed by."
* The expression "on the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of."
* In regard to Jesus being "seated at the right hand of God," if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: "on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority."

(See also: [adversary](#en-adversary), [bless](#en-bless), [captive](#en-captive), [honor](#en-honor), [power](#en-power))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:25
* Acts 08:17
* Acts 11:21
* Genesis 09:05
* Genesis 14:20
* John 03:35
* Mark 07:32
* Matthew 06:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G710, G1188, G2176, G2902, G4084, G5495, G5496, G5497, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8042, H8168

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

by the hand of, fist, from the hand of, hand, handbreadth, handed, handful, handfuls, handing, hands, lay a hand on, lays his hand on

### hang

#### Definition:

The term "hang" means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

* Death by hanging typically is done by tying a rope that is tied around a person's neck and sustending him from an elevated object, like a tree limb. Judas killed himself by hanging.
* Although Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross, there was nothing around his neck: the soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
* To hang someone always refers to the way of killing someone by hanging them with a rope around their neck.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 17:23
* Acts 10:39
* Galatians 03:13
* Genesis 40:22
* Matthew 27:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hang, hanged, hanging, hangings, hangs, hung

### hard

#### Related Ideas:

hardly, hardness, hardship

#### Definition:

The term "hard" has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

* An object that is "hard" is solid and firm. It is not easily broken, bent, dented, or pierced.
* Work that is "hard" is difficult to do.
* When a person works "hard", he does that work diligently and with a lot of effort to do it well.
* A person who "hardly" does something either does not do it completely or does it rarely.
* A person who goes through "hardship" is suffering or does not have what he needs.

The term "hard" can be used figuratively \* A person who has a "hard heart" is stubborn. He continues to disobey God and will not repent. \* A person whose heart is hardened has become stubbornly disobedient.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The terms "hardness" or "hardness of heart" or "hard heart" could be translated as "stubbornness" or "persistent rebellion" or "rebellious attitude" or "stubborn disobedience" or "stubbornly not repenting."
* The term "hardened" could also be translated as "stubbornly unrepentant" or "refusing to obey."
* "Do not harden your heart" could be translated as "do not refuse to repent" or "do not stubbornly keep disobeying."
* Other ways to translate "hard-hearted" could include "stubbornly disobedient" or "continuing to disobey" or "refusing to repent" or "always rebelling."
* In expressions such as "work hard" or "try hard," the term "hard" could be translated as "with perseverance" or "diligently."
* The expression "press hard against" could also be translated as "shove with force" or "push strongly against."
* To "oppress people with hard labor" could be translated as "force people to work so hard that they suffer" or "cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work."
* A different kind of "hard labor" is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: [disobey](#en-disobey), [evil](#en-evil), [heart](#en-heart), [labor pains](#en-labor pains), [stiff-necked](#en-stiff-necked))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 11:23
* Deuteronomy 15:07
* Exodus 14:04
* Hebrews 04:07
* John 12:40
* Matthew 19:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4164, H4165, H4522, H4751, H4784, H4843, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H7185, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8513, H8631, G917, G1421, G1422, G1423, G2205, G2478, G2553, G2872, G2873, G3425, G3433, G4053, G4183, G4456, G4457, G4641, G4642, G4643, G4645, G4912

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hard, harden, hardened, hardening, hardens, harder, hardest, hardly, hardness, hardship, hardships

### harvest

#### Related Ideas:

harvester

#### Definition:

The term "harvest" refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

* The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
* The Israelites held a "Festival of Harvest" or "Festival of Ingathering" to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
* In a figurative sense, the word "harvest" can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person's spiritual growth.
* The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
* The event of harvesting could be translated as, "time of gathering in" or "crop gathering time" or "fruit picking time."
* The verb to "harvest" could be translated as, to "gather in" or to "pick up" or to "collect."

(See also: [firstfruit](#en-firstfruit), [festival](#en-festival))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
* 2 Samuel 21:7-9
* Galatians 06:9-10
* Isaiah 17:11
* James 05:7-8
* Leviticus 19:09
* Matthew 09:38
* Ruth 01:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2758, H7105, H7114, G270, G1081, G2326, G4863

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

harvest, harvested, harvester, harvesters, harvesting, harvests

### head

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the word "head" is used with several figurative meanings.

* Often this term is used to refer to a ruler or to someone who has authority over people, as in "you have made me the head over nations."
* Jesus is called the "head of the church." Just as a person's head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his "body," the Church.
* The New Testament teaches that a husband is the "head" or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
* The term "head" can also represent the whole person, as in "this gray head," referring to an elderly person, or as in "the head of Joseph," which refers to Joseph.
* The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means" he will never cut or shave his hair."
* The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
* The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top parts of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
* The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, as in the "head of the street."

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "ruler" or "the one who leads and directs" or "the one who is responsible for."
* The expression "head of" can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person's name. For example, "the head of Joseph" could simply be translated as "Joseph."
* The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "beginning" or "source" or "ruler" or "leader" or "top."

(See also: [grain](#en-grain))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
* 1 Kings 08:1-2
* 1 Samuel 09:22
* Colossians 02:10
* Colossians 02:19
* Numbers 01:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H441, H1538, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

head, heads

### heart

#### Related Ideas:

kidneys

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

* To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
* The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
* The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
* The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.
* The kidneys are also used as a synecdoche for the physical inner organs and as a metonym for a person's innermost thoughts and emotions.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
* Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
* If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires" or "inner self".
* Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
* The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
* The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
* Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: [hard](#en-hard))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:17
* 1 Thessalonians 02:04
* 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
* Acts 08:22
* Acts 15:09
* Luke 08:15
* Mark 02:06
* Matthew 05:08
* Matthew 22:37

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H7307, H7356, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heart, hearts, kidneys

### heaven

#### Related Ideas:

heavenly, in midair, overhead, sky

#### Definition:

The term that is translated as "heaven" usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

* The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
* The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
* In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
* When "heaven" is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the "kingdom of heaven" he is referring to the kingdom of God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When "heaven" is used figuratively, it could be translated as "God."
* For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
* The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as, "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
* The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See also: [kingdom of God](#en-kingdom of God))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:22-24
* 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
* 1 Thessalonians 04:17
* Deuteronomy 09:01
* Ephesians 06:9
* Genesis 01:01
* Genesis 07:11
* John 03:12
* John 03:27
* Matthew 05:18
* Matthew 05:46-48

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heaven, heavenly, heavens, in midair, overhead, skies, sky

### heir

#### Definition:

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

* In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
* The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
* As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
* The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: [firstborn](#en-firstborn), [inherit](#en-inherit))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:1-2
* Galatians 04:07
* Genesis 15:01
* Genesis 21:10-11
* Luke 20:14
* Mark 12:07
* Matthew 21:38-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1121, H3423, G2816, G2818, G2820, G4789

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heir, heirs

### honey

#### Related Ideas:

honeycomb

#### Definition:

"Honey" is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

* Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
* Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
* Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
* This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey."
* Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [Jonathan](#en-Jonathan), [Philistines](#en-Philistines), [Samson](#en-Samson))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 14:1-3
* Deuteronomy 06:3
* Exodus 13:3-5
* Joshua 05:06
* Proverbs 05:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G3192

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

honey, honeycomb

### honor

#### Related Ideas:

dignified, esteem, held in honor, highly regarded, honorable, of high standing, places of honor, recognition

#### Definition:

The terms "honor" and to "honor" refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

* Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
* God instructs Christians to honor others.
* Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
* The terms "honor" and "glory" are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
* Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.
* To "esteem" someone is to consider him worthy of great honor.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "honor" could include "respect" or "esteem" or "high regard."
* The term to "honor" could be translated as to "show special respect to" or to "cause to be praised" or to "show high regard for" or to "highly value."

(See also: [dishonor](#en-dishonor), [glory](#en-glory), [glory](#en-glory), [praise](#en-praise))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 02:8
* Acts 19:17
* John 04:44
* John 12:26
* Mark 06:04
* Matthew 15:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5082, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1741, G1784, G2151, G2233, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dignified, esteem, held in honor, highly regarded, honor, honorable, honored, honoring, honors, of high standing, places of honor, recognition

### hoof

#### Related Ideas:

tracks

#### Definitions:

These terms refer to the hard material covering the bottom of the feet of certain animals such as camels, cattle, deer, horses, donkeys, pigs, oxen, sheep, and goats.

* An animal's hooves protect its feet when walking.
* Some animals have hooves that are split into two parts and others do not.
* God told the Israelites that animals which had split hooves and chewed a cud were considered clean to eat. This included cattle, sheep, deer, and oxen.
* "Tracks" are the marks that animals' hooves make on the ground.

(See also: [camel](#en-camel), [cow](#en-cow), [donkey](#en-donkey), [goat](#en-goat), [pig](#en-pig), [sheep](#en-sheep))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 14:06
* Ezekiel 26:9-11
* Leviticus 11:04
* Psalms 069:31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6119, H6471, H6536, H6541, H7272

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hoof, hoofs, hooves, tracks

### horn

#### Related Ideas:

ram's horn

#### Definitions:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

* The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a "ram's horn" or "shofar," which was blown for special events such as religious festivals.
* The term "horn" was sometimes used to refer to a "flask" that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.
* This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet.
* The term "horn" is also used figuratively as a symbol of strength, power, authority, and royalty.
* God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called "horns," they were not actually animal horns.

(See also: [authority](#en-authority), [cow](#en-cow), [deer](#en-deer), [goat](#en-goat), [power](#en-power) [royal](#en-royal), [sheep](#en-sheep), [trumpet](#en-trumpet))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 15:27-28
* 1 Kings 01:39
* 2 Samuel 22:03
* Jeremiah 17:01
* Psalms 022:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's:H3104, H7160, H7161, H7162, H7782, G2768

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

horn, horned, horns, ram's horn, rams' horns

### horse

#### Related Ideas:

horseback, warhorse

#### Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

* Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
* Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
* In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
* Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#en-chariot), , [donkey](#en-donkey), [Solomon](#en-Solomon))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:04
* 2 Kings 02:11
* Exodus 14:23-25
* Ezekiel 23:5-7
* Zechariah 06:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

horse, horseback, horses, horses', strong horses, warhorse, warhorses

### house

#### Related Ideas:

home, residence

#### Definition:

The term "house" is often used figuratively in the Bible.

* Sometimes it means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
* Often "house" refers to a person's descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
* The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
* In Hebrews 3, "God's house" is used as a metaphor to refer to God's people or, more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
* A "residence" is any place in which people live without plans to move to another place.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
* The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
* Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
* The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells."
* "House of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#en-David), [descendant](#en-descendant), [house of God](#en-house of God), [household](#en-household), [kingdom of Israel](#en-kingdom of Israel), [tabernacle](#en-tabernacle), [temple](#en-temple), [Yahweh](#en-Yahweh))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:42
* Acts 07:49
* Genesis 39:04
* Genesis 41:40
* Luke 08:39
* Matthew 10:06
* Matthew 15:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1004, H1005, H4585, H5116, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

home, homes, house, house's, houses, residence

### house of God

#### Related Ideas:

house of Yahweh

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

* This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
* Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
* If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people.")
* The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#en-people of God), [tabernacle](#en-tabernacle), [temple](#en-temple))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 03:14-15
* 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
* Ezra 05:13
* Genesis 28:17
* Judges 18:30-31
* Mark 02:26
* Matthew 12:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H426, H430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G2316, G3624

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

house of ... God, house of Yahweh

### household

#### Related Ideas:

household members

#### Definition:

The term "household" refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

* Managing a household would involves directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
* Sometimes "household" can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#en-house))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:10
* Galatians 06:10
* Genesis 07:01
* Genesis 34:19
* John 04:53
* Matthew 10:25
* Matthew 10:36
* Philippians 04:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624, G3626

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

household, household members, households, members of household

### humiliate

#### Related Ideas:

abase, humiliation

#### Definitions:

The term "humiliate" means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced. This is usually done publicly. The act of shaming someone is called "humiliation."

* To "humiliate" could also be translated as to "shame" or to "cause to feel shame" or to "embarrass".
* Depending on the context, ways to translate "humiliation" could include "shame" or "degrading" or "disgrace."
* To "abase" something means to bring it down low.
* To "abase" someone means to humiliate him.
* When God humbles someone it means that he causes a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt a person.

(See also: [disgrace](#en-disgrace), [humble](#en-humble), [shame](#en-shame))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 21:14
* Ezra 09:05
* Proverbs 25:7-8
* Psalms 006:8-10
* Psalms 123:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H937, H954, H1421, H2659, H2778, H2781, H3001, H3637, H3639, H6030, H6031, H6256, H7034, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8216, H8213, H8217, H8589, G2617, G5014

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

abase, abased, humiliate, humiliated, humiliation

### image

#### Related Ideas:

carved figure, cast metal figure, statue

#### Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term "image" is a shortened form of "carved image."

* A "carved image" or "carved figure" is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
* A "cast metal figure" is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
* These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
* The term "image" when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When referring to an idol, the term "image" could also be translated as "statue" or "engraved idol" or "carved religious object."
* It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as "carved image" or "cast metal figure," even in places where only the term "image" or "figure" is in the original text.

(See also: [god](#en-god), [God](#en-God), [god](#en-god), [image of God](#en-image of God))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 14:9-10
* Acts 07:43
* Isaiah 21:8-9
* Matthew 22:21
* Romans 01:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H457, H1544, H1823, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G1504, G5179

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

carved figure, carved figures, carved image, carved images, cast metal figure, cast metal figures, cast metal images, castings, figure, figures, image, images, statue

### inherit

#### Related Ideas:

heritage, inheritance,legacy

#### Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The "inheritance" is what is received.

* A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
* A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
* The Bible also calls God's people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
* God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
* There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to "inherit the land." This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
* In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will "inherit salvation" and "inherit eternal life." It is also expressed as, "inherit the kingdom of God." This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.

There are other figurative meanings for these terms:

The Bible says that wise people will "inherit glory" and righteous people will "inherit good things."

* To "inherit the promises" means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
* This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who "inherit the wind" or "inherit folly." This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
* Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
* Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
* When God's people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as "valued ones belonging to him."
* The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions" or "person chosen to receive (God's) spiritual possessions or blessings."
* The term "heritage" could be translated as "blessings from God" or "inherited blessings."

(See also: [heir](#en-heir), [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Promised Land](#en-Promised Land))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:09
* 1 Peter 01:04
* 2 Samuel 21:03
* Acts 07:4-5
* Deuteronomy 20:16
* Galatians 05:21
* Genesis 15:07
* Hebrews 09:15
* Jeremiah 02:07
* Luke 15:11
* Matthew 19:29
* Psalm 079:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heritage, inherit, inheritance, inheritances, inherited, legacy

### innocent

#### Related Ideas:

guiltless, innocence

#### Definition:

The term "innocent" means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

* A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
* Sometimes the term "innocent" is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking "innocent people."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In most contexts, the term "innocent" can be translated as "not guilty" or "not responsible" or "not to blame" for something.
* When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as "who have done nothing wrong" or "who are not involved in evil."
* The frequently occurring expression "innocent blood" could be translated as "people who did nothing wrong to deserve being killed."
* The expression "shed innocent blood" could be translated as "kill innocent people" or "kill people who did nothing wrong to deserve it."
* In the context of someone being killed, "innocent of the blood of" could be translated as "not guilty for the death of."
* When talking about people not hearing the good news about Jesus but not accepting it, "innocent of the blood of" could be translated as "not responsible for whether they remain spiritually dead or not" or "not responsible for whether they accept this message."
* When Judas said "I have betrayed innocent blood," he was saying "I have betrayed a man who did nothing wrong" or "I have caused the death of a man who was sinless."
* When Pilate said about Jesus "I am innocent of the blood of this innocent man," this could be translated as "I am not responsible for the killing of this man who has done nothing wrong to deserve it."

(See also: [guilt](#en-guilt))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:04
* 1 Samuel 19:05
* Acts 20:26
* Exodus 23:07
* Jeremiah 22:17
* Job 09:23
* Romans 16:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6662, H6663, H8535, G53, G121, G172, G185, G338, G1342, G2513

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

declared innocent, guiltless, innocence, innocent

### instruct

#### Related Ideas:

instruction, instructor

#### Definitions:

The terms "instruct" and "instruction" refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

* To "give instructions" means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
* When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
* Depending on the context, the term "instruct" could also be translated as "tell" or "direct" or "teach" or "give instructions to."
* The term "instructions" could be translated as "directions" or "explanations" or "what he has told you to do."
* When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as "commands" or "orders."

(See also: [command](#en-command), [decree](#en-decree), [teach](#en-teach))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 14:04
* Genesis 26:05
* Hebrews 11:22
* Matthew 10:05
* Matthew 11:01
* Proverbs 01:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H631, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H3948, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H6098, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, G1256, G1291, G1299, G1319, G1321, G1378, G1781, G1785, G2012, G2727, G2753, G3559, G3560, G3807, G3810, G3811, G3852, G3853, G4264, G4367, G4822, G4929

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gave ... instructions, instruct, instructed, instructing, instruction, instructions, instructor, instructors, instructs

### integrity

#### Definition:

The term "integrity" refers to being honest, with strong moral principles and behavior is said to have integrity.

* Having integrity also means choosing to do what is honest and right even when nobody else is watching.
* Certain characters in the Bible, such as Joseph and Daniel, showed integrity when they refused to do evil and chose to obey God.
* The book of Proverbs says that it is better to be poor and have integrity than to be rich and corrupt or dishonest.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "integrity" could also be translated as "honesty" or "moral uprightness" or "behaving truthfully" or "acting in a trustworthy, honest manner."

(See also: [Daniel](#en-Daniel), [Joseph (OT)](../names/josephot.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 09:04
* Job 02:3
* Job 04:06
* Proverbs 10:8-9
* Psalm 026:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3476, H6664, H6666, H8535, H8537, H8537, H8538, H8549

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

integrity

### interpret

#### Related Ideas:

interpretation, interpreter, translate

#### Definitions:

The terms "interpret" and "interpretation" refer to understanding and explaining the meaning of something.

* Often in the Bible these terms are used in connection with explaining the meaning of dreams or visions.
* In the Old Testament, God sometimes used dreams to reveal to people what would happen in the future. So the interpretations of those dreams were prophecies.
* The term "interpret" can refer to figuring out the meaning of other things, such as seeing what the sky looks like and figuring out whether or not it will rain or be windy.
* The terms "interpret" and "translate" can refer to explaining what is said in one language to people who speak another language.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate the term "interpret" include "figure out the meaning of" or "explain" or "give the meaning of."
* The term "interpretation" could also be translated as "explanation" or "meaning."

(See also: [Babylon](#en-Babylon), [Daniel](#en-Daniel), [dream](#en-dream), [prophet](#en-prophet), [vision](#en-vision))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 12:10
* Daniel 04:4-6
* Genesis 40:4-5
* Judges 07:15-16
* Luke 12:56

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H995, H3887, H6591, H6622, H6623, H7760, H7922, G1252, G1328, G1329, G1381, G1955, G2058, G3177, G4793

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

interpret, interpretation, interpretations, interpreted, interpreter, interpreting, interprets, translated

### judge

#### Related Ideas:

act of judging, consider, decide, decision, give justice, give judgment, judgment, judgment seat

#### Definition:

The terms "judge" and "judgment" often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

* The "judgment of God" often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
* God's judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
* The term "judge" can also mean "condemn." God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
* Another meaning is "arbitrate between" or "judge between," as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
* In some contexts, God's "judgments" are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
* "Judgment" can refer to the ability to make decisions. A person with "sound judgment" is wise, able to make good decisions, while a person who lacks "judgment" does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.
* The "judgment seat" is a place where a judge sits while he listens to testimonies and gives his decision.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate to "judge" could include to "decide" or to "condemn" or to "punish" or to "decree."
* The term "judgment" could be translated as "punishment" or "decision" or "opinion" or "verdict" or "decree" or "condemnation."
* In some contexts, the phrase "in the judgment" could also be translated as "on judgment day" or "during the time when God judges people."

(See also: [decree](#en-decree), [judge](#en-judge), [judgment day](#en-judgment day), [justice](#en-justice), [law](#en-law), [law of Moses](#en-law of Moses))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:17
* 1 Kings 03:09
* Acts 10:42-43
* Isaiah 03:14
* James 02:04
* Luke 06:37
* Micah 03:9-11
* Psalm 054:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H2664, H2713, H2742, H2803, H2940, H3198, H4406, H4941, H6414, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H7081, H7378, H7379, H7663, H7760, H8196, H8199, H8201, G350, G968, G1097, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1380, G1492, G2233, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4997, G5272

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts of judgment, consider, considered, considering, decide, decided, decided on, decision, give justice, giving judgment, have decided, insightful decisions, judge, judged, judges, judging, judgment, judgment seat, judgments, renders judgment, will judge

### judge

#### Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

* In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
* After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called "judges" to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
* The term "judge" could also be called "decision-maker" or "leader" or "deliverer" or "governor," depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#en-governor), [judge](#en-judge), [law of Moses](#en-law of Moses))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:08
* Acts 07:27
* Luke 11:19
* Luke 12:14
* Luke 18:1-2
* Matthew 05:25
* Ruth 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H6414, H6416, H6419, H8199, G350, G1252, G1348, G2919, G2922, G2923

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

judge, judges, the judge, the judges, their judges, you judges

### kin

#### Related Ideas:

kindred, kinfolk, kinsman, relative

#### Definition:

The term "kin" refers to a person's blood relatives, considered as a group. The word "kinsman" refers specifically to a male relative.

* "Kin" can only refer to a person's close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as an aunts, uncles, or cousins.
* In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a "kinsman-redeemer."
* This term "kin" could also be translated as, "relative" or "family member."

#### Bible References:

* Romans 16:9-11
* Ruth 02:20
* Ruth 03:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H251, H1350, H1353, H1730, H4129, H4130, H4138, H4940, H7138, H7607, G1085, G4773

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kin, kindred, kinfolk, kinsfolk, kinsman, kinsmen, relative, relatives

### kind

#### Definition:

The terms "kind" and "kinds" refer to groups or classifications of things that are connected by shared characteristics.

* In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
* Often there are many different variations or species within each "kind." For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same "kind," but they are different species.
* The main thing that distinguishes each "kind" as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same "kind." Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

#### Picture showing Kinds:

<image: https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/k/Kinds.png>

#### Translation Suggestions

* Ways to translate this term could include "type" or "class" or "group" or "animal (plant) group" or "category."

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 01:21
* Genesis 01:24
* Mark 09:29
* Matthew 13:47

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2178, H4327, G1085

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kind, kinds

### king

#### Related Ideas:

kingly, kingship

#### Definition:

The term "king" refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

* A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
* When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
* In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
* Rarely the term "king" was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as "King Herod" in the New Testament.
* In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
* The "kingdom of God" refers to God's rule over his people.
* Jesus was called "king of the Jews," "king of Israel," and "king of kings."
* When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
* This term could also be translated as "supreme chief" or "absolute leader" or "sovereign ruler."
* The phrase "king of kings" could be translated as "king who rules over all other kings" or "supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers."

(See also: [authority](#en-authority), [Herod Antipas](#en-Herod Antipas), [kingdom](#en-kingdom), [kingdom of God](#en-kingdom of God))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 06:15-16
* 2 Kings 05:18
* 2 Samuel 05:03
* Acts 07:9-10
* Acts 13:22
* John 01:49-51
* Luke 01:05
* Luke 22:24-25
* Matthew 05:35
* Matthew 14:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936, G937

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

king, king's, kingly, kings, kingship, made ... king, set up ... king, set up kings

### know

#### Related Ideas:

knowledge, make known, unknowingly, unknown

#### Definition:

To "know" means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression "make known" is an expression that means to tell information.

* The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
* To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
* To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
* To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
* To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
* Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
* The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."
* If a person does something "unknowingly," he does it without knowing that he is doing it.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
* Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
* The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
* To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
* The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
* The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.
* To "train for" an activity is to learn now to do it well. To train for war is to learn by practice how to be a good fighter.

(See also: [law of Moses](#en-law of Moses), [reveal](#en-reveal), [understand](#en-understand), [wise](#en-wise))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
* 1 Samuel 17:46
* 2 Corinthians 02:15
* 2 Peter 01:3-4
* Deuteronomy 04:39-40
* Genesis 19:05
* Luke 01:77

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H502, H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H2713, H2372, H3045, H3046, H3925, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1834, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G5319, G2589, G2657, G4267, G4894, G5318

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

knew, know, know ... beforehand, knowing, knowledge, known, knows, made ... known, made known, make ... known, makes known, unknowingly, unknown

### labor

#### Related Ideas:

fellow laborers, forced labor, hard labor, hard-working, laborer, occupation, strive, struggle, toil

#### Definition:

The term "labor" refers to doing physical work of any kind.

* In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
* A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
* In English, the word "labor" is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
* Ways to translate "labor" could include "work" or "hard work" or "difficult work" or to "work hard."
* "Toil" is hard, unpleasant work, and to "toil" is to do hard, unpleasant work.
* An "occupation" is the work or labor that a person does to obtain food, clothing, shelter, and the other things he needs to live.
* Sometimes "strive" and "struggle" mean to work very hard to do something.

(See also: [hard](#en-hard), [labor pains](#en-labor pains))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:09
* 1 Thessalonians 03:05
* Galatians 04:10-11
* James 05:04
* John 04:38
* Luke 10:02
* Matthew 10:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H8104, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2716, G2872, G2873, G3449, G4866, G4904

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fellow laborers, forced labor, hard labor, hard-working, labor, labored, laborer, laborer's, laborers, laboring, labors, occupation, product of ... labor, products of ... labor, strive, strives, striving together, struggle, toil, toiled, toiling, toils

### law

#### Related Ideas:

lawbreaker, lawgiver, lawyer, principle

#### Definition:

A "law" is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A "principle" is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

* Often the term "law" refers to the "law of Moses." This is the commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
* God is the lawgiver, the one who made the laws and commanded people to obey them.
* A "lawyer" is a person who studies the law and understands it well.
* Both "law" and "principle" can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person's behavior.
* A person who "is principled" is a person who does what is good.

(See also: [law of Moses](#en-law of Moses))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 04:02
* Esther 03:8-9
* Exodus 12:12-14
* Genesis 26:05
* John 18:31
* Romans 07:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H5715, H7560, H7771, H8451, G1785, G3544, G3548, G3551, G3848, G4747

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

law, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawgiver, laws, lawyer, principle, principled, principles

### life

#### Related Ideas:

alive, come to life, conduct, exist, fresh, life-giving, lifetime, live, revive, survive, survivor

#### Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by "physical life" and "spiritual life."

#### 1. Physical life

* Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam's body, and he became a living being.
* A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
* Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
* It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
* The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
* In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."
* To "revive" is for someone who is dead or almost dead to live again, or to take something or someone who is dead or almost dead and make him live again.
* A person who "survives" has almost died for some reason but is still alive.
* The same Hebrew words can be translated "fresh" water or "living" water.
* Things that are "lifeless" either have never been alive or were once alive but are now dead.
* The way a person "conducts" himself or his life is the way he lives his life, most importantly the morally good or bad things he does.

#### 2. Spiritual life

* A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
* This life is also called "eternal life" to indicate that it does not end.
* The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
* Depending on the context, the term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
* The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
* The expression "spared their lives' could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
* The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
* Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally." The word "life-giving" can be translated as "something that causes to live" or "something that gives life."

(See also: [death](#en-death), [eternity](#en-eternity))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 01:03
* Acts 10:42
* Genesis 02:07
* Genesis 07:22
* Hebrews 10:20
* Jeremiah 44:02
* John 01:04
* Judges 02:18
* Luke 12:23
* Matthew 07:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2416, H2417, H2418, H2421, H2425, H2465, H2673, H3351, H3824, H3885, H4241, H5315, H5397, H5564, H6106, H7611, H8141, H8300, G326, G386, G390, G895, G979, G980, G981, G982, G1127, G1236, G1514, G2198, G2222, G2225, G2227, G2450, G3118, G4176, G4684, G4748, G4763, G4800, G4806, G5171, G5225, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alive, come to life, conduct, conducted, existed, fresh, keep ... alive, life, life-giving, lifeless, lifetime, live, lived, lives, living, revive, revived, survive, survived, survivor, survivors

### light

#### Related Ideas:

bright, brightness, enlighten, shine

#### Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term "light" in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth.

* Jesus said, "I am the light of the world" to express that he brings God's true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
* Christians are commanded to "walk in the light," which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
* The apostle John stated that "God is light" and in him there is no darkness at all.
* Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
* Jesus said that he was "the light of the world" and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
* "Walking in the light" represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms "light" and "darkness" even when they are used figuratively.
* It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, "walk as children of light" could be translated as, "live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight."
* Make sure that the translation of "light" does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#en-darkness), [holy](#en-holy), [righteous](#en-righteous), [true](#en-true))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 John 02:08
* 2 Corinthians 04:06
* Acts 26:18
* Isaiah 02:05
* John 01:05
* Matthew 05:16
* Matthew 06:23
* Nehemiah 09:12-13
* Revelation 18:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, G681, G796, G1391, G1645, G2985, G2986, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bright, brightness, enlighten, enlightened, light, lighting, lights, shining

### like

#### Related Ideas:

according to, alike, as, as if, compare, in the same way, just as, liken, likeness, likewise, resemble, similar, similarly, unlike

#### Definition:

The terms "like" and "likeness" refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

* To "compare" two things is to look at how they are the same or how they are different.
* The word "like" is also often used in a figurative expressions called a "simile" in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, "his clothes shined like the sun" and "the voice boomed like thunder."
* To "be like" or "sound like" or "look like" something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
* People were created in God's "likeness," that is, in his "image." It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are "like" or "similar to" qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
* To have "the likeness of" something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.
* The word "likewise" means "in the same way," referring to something that the speaker has just said.
* The word "unlike" means "not like."

#### Translation Suggestions

* In some contexts, the expression "the likeness of" could be translated as "what looked like" or "what appeared to be."
* The expression "in the likeness of his death" could be translated as "sharing in the experience of his death" or "as if experiencing his death with him."
* The expression "in the likeness of sinful flesh" could be translated as "being like a sinful human being" or to "be a human being." Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
* "In his own likeness" could also be translated as to "be like him" or "having many of the same qualities that he has."
* The expression "the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things" could be translated as "idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things."

(See also: [beast](#en-beast), [flesh](#en-flesh), [image of God](#en-image of God), [image](#en-image), [perish](#en-perish))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 01:05
* Mark 08:24
* Matthew 17:02
* Matthew 18:03
* Psalms 073:05
* Revelation 01:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1819, H1823, H3644, H4915, H7737, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4793, G4833, G5108, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

according to, alike, as, as if, be ... like, become ... like, compare, in the same way, is ... like, just as, like, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, resemble, resembled, similar to, similarly, the same, the same way, unlike

### lion

#### Related Ideas:

lioness

#### Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

* Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
* Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
* Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
* When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
* Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.
* A "lioness" is a female lion.

(See also: [David](#en-David), [leopard](#en-leopard), [Samson](#en-Samson), [sheep](#en-sheep))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
* 1 Kings 07:29
* Proverbs 19:12
* Psalms 017:12
* Revelation 05:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H738, H739, H744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G3023

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lion, lion's, lioness, lionesses, lions, lions'

### livestock

#### Definitions:

The term "livestock" refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

* Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
* In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
* Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
* This term could also be translated as "farm animals."

(See also: [cow](#en-cow), [donkey](#en-donkey), [goat](#en-goat), [horse](#en-horse), [sheep](#en-sheep))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 03:15-17
* Genesis 30:29
* Joshua 01:14-15
* Nehemiah 09:36-37
* Numbers 03:41

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H929, H1165, H4399, H4735

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

livestock

### locust

#### Related Ideas:

grasshopper, locust swarms

#### Definitions:

The term "locust" refers to a type of large, flying grasshopper that sometimes flies with many others of its kind in a very destructive swarm that eats all vegetation.

* Locusts and other grasshoppers are large, straight-winged insects with long, jointed back legs that give them the ability to jump a long distance way.
* In the Old Testament, swarming locusts were referred to figuratively as a symbol or picture of the overwhelming devastation that would come as a result of Israel's disobedience.
* God sent locusts as one of the ten plagues against the Egyptians.
* The New Testament says that locusts were a main source of food for John the Baptist while he was living in the desert.

(See also: [captive](#en-captive), [Egypt](#en-Egypt), [Israel](#en-Israel), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [plague](#en-plague))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 06:28
* Deuteronomy 28:38-39
* Exodus 10:3-4
* Mark 01:06
* Proverbs 30:27-28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H697, H1357, H1462, H1501, H2284, H3218, H5556, H6767, G200

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

grasshoppers, locust, locust swarms, locusts

### love

#### Related Ideas:

brotherly love

#### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.

1. When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.

In the ULB, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.

The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

In the figurative expression "Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated," the term "loved" refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as "chosen." Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term "hated" is used figuratively here to mean "rejected" or "not chosen."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
* Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
* Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
* In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
* Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
* Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#en-covenant), [death](#en-death), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice), [save](#en-save), [sin](#en-sin))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 13:07
* 1 John 03:02
* 1 Thessalonians 04:10
* Galatians 05:23
* Genesis 29:18
* Isaiah 56:06
* Jeremiah 02:02
* John 03:16
* Matthew 10:37
* Nehemiah 09:32-34
* Philippians 01:09
* Song of Solomon 01:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H1730, H2245, H2532, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5383, G5388

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

brotherly love, love, loved, loves, loving

### man of God

#### Facts:

The expression "man of God" is a respectful way of referring to a prophet of Yahweh. It is also used to refer to an angel of Yahweh.

* When referring to a prophet, this could also be translated as "man who belongs to God" or "man whom God has chosen" or "man who serves God."
* When referring to an angel this could also be translated as "messenger of God" or "your angel" or "heavenly being from God who looks like a man."

(See also: [angel](#en-angel), [honor](#en-honor), [prophet](#en-prophet))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 23:12-14
* 1 Kings 12:22
* 1 Samuel 09:9-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H376, H430, G444, G2316

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

man of God

### member

#### Definition:

The term "member" refers to one part of a complex body or group.

* The New Testament describes Christians as "members" of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
* Jesus Christ is the "head" of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
* Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called "members" of these groups.

(See also: [body](#en-body), [Pharisee](#en-Pharisee), [council](#en-council))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:15
* 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
* Numbers 16:02
* Romans 12:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, G1010, G3196, G3609

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

member, members

### messenger

#### Related Ideas:

courier, herald

#### Definitions:

The term "messenger" refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

* In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
* An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate "angel" as "messenger."
* John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah's coming and to prepare people to receive him.
* Jesus' apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.
* A "herald" or a "courier" is a messenger who carries messages from rulers to their subjects.

(See also: [angel](#en-angel), [apostle](#en-apostle), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 19:1-3
* 1 Samuel 06:21
* 2 Kings 01:1-2
* Luke 07:27
* Matthew 11:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H6735, H6737, G32, G652

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

couriers, herald, messenger, messengers

### mighty

#### Related Ideas:

Mighty One, mightily, mighty host, mighty men, mighty work

#### Definition:

The terms "mighty" and "might" refer to having great strength or power.

* Often the word "might" is another word for "strength." When talking about God, it can mean "power."
* The phrase "mighty men" often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David's band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called "mighty men."
* The phrase "the Might One" refers to God.
* The phrase "a mighty one" can refer to God or to a man.
* The phrase "mighty works" usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
* This term is related to the term "almighty," which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "mighty" could be translated as "powerful" or "amazing" or "very strong."
* The phrase "his might" could be translated as "his strength" or "his power."
* In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was "mighty in word and deed." This could be translated as "Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things" or "Moses spoke God's word powerfully and did many amazing things."
* Depending on the context, "mighty works" could be translated as "amazing things that God does" or "miracles" or "God doing things with power."
* The term "might" could also be translated as "power" or "great strength."
* Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in "It might rain."

(See also: [Almighty](#en-Almighty), [miracle](#en-miracle), [power](#en-power), [strength](#en-strength))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:22
* Genesis 06:4
* Mark 09:38-39
* Matthew 11:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H46, H47, H117, H202, H352, H386, H410, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mighty One, might, mightier, mightily, mighty, mighty host, mighty men, mighty one, mighty ones, mighty work, mighty works

### mind

#### Related Ideas:

expect, intention, likeminded, mindful, sober, think

#### Definition:

The term "mind" refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

* The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
* To "have the mind of Christ" means to think and act as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
* To "change his mind" means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.
* To "expect" something is to think that it will happen.
* To "think" can mean to use one's mind to form ideas.
* To "think" can also mean to have a belief or opinion about something.
* To "intend" or "have an intention" to do something is to decide or to plan to do that thing. That thing may be good or evil, and the person may or may not want to do it, but he plans to do it.
* A person who is "sober" is able to think clearly, especially in contrast to a person who has harmed his mind by drinking to much wine.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "mind" could also be translated as "thoughts" or "reasoning" or "thinking" or "understanding."
* The expression "keep in mind" could be translated as "remember" or "pay attention to this" or "be sure to know this."
* The expression "heart, soul, and mind" could also be translated as "what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about."
* The expression "call to mind" could be translated as "remember" or "think about."
* The expression "double-minded" could also be translated as "doubting" or "unable to decide" or "with conflicting thoughts."

(See also: [believe](#en-believe), [heart](#en-heart), [soul](#en-soul))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 10:27
* Mark 06:51-52
* Matthew 21:29
* Matthew 22:37
* James 04:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H226, H1079, G1380, H1843, H3629, H3820, H3824, H3825, H4093, H4150, H5162, H6419, H6725, H6734, H7217, H7725, G364, G1271, G1374, G1839, G2233, G2657, G3328, G3525, G3539, G3540, G3563, G4102, G4993, G5280, G5426, G5427, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

expect, expected, intention, likeminded, mind, minded, mindful, minds, sober, think, think carefully about, thinks, thought, thoughts

### mock

#### Related Ideas:

defy, laughingstock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, taunt

#### Definition:

The terms "mock," ridicule," "scoff at," and "taunt" all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

* Mocking often involves imitating people's words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
* The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
* A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
* The term "scoff at" can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
* A "mocker" is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.
* A person who "defies" another mockingly challenges that other person to do something the mocker believes the other person cannot do.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 03:04
* Acts 02:12-13
* Galatians 06:6-8
* Genesis 39:13-15
* Luke 22:63-65
* Mark 10:34
* Matthew 09:23-24
* Matthew 20:19
* Matthew 27:29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4426, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8437, H8591, H8595, G1592, G1701, G1702, G1703, G2301, G2606, G3456, G5512

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

defied, defy, laugh in mockery, laughingstock, mock, mocked, mocker, mockers, mockery, mocking, mocks, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at, scoffing, taunted, taunting song, taunts

### month

#### Related Ideas:

monthly

#### Definition:

The term "month" refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

* In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about 29 days. In this system there are 12 or 13 months in a year. Despite the year being 12 or 13 months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
* The "new moon," or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
* All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
* The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into 12 months, with the length of each month ranging from 28 to 31 days.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 20:34
* Acts 18:9-11
* Hebrews 11:23
* Numbers 10:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2320, H3391, H3393, G3376

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

month, monthly, months

### name

#### Related Ideas:

fame, nameless, notorious, reputation

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the word "name" was used in several figurative ways.

* In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
* The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
* Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
* The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved."
* People who are "nameless" are unimportant, so few people know about them or care about them.
* A person who is "notorious" is one who has a reputation for evil or foolishness.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
* Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
* The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
* The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
* The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
* The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](#en-call))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:12
* 2 Timothy 02:19
* Acts 04:07
* Acts 04:12
* Acts 09:27
* Genesis 12:02
* Genesis 35:10
* Matthew 18:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5344, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2028, G2564, G3140, G3141, G3686, G3687, G5122

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fame, name, name's, named, nameless, names, notorious, reputation

### nation

#### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

* A "nation" usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
* In the Bible, a "nation" could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
* Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
* Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
* The word translated as "nation" was also sometimes used to refer to "Gentiles" or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
* If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
* The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
* In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "nonJews."

(See also: [Assyria](#en-Assyria), [Babylon](#en-Babylon), [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Gentile](#en-Gentile), [Greek](#en-Greek), [people group](#en-people group), [Philistines](#en-Philistines), [Rome](#en-Rome))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
* 2 Chronicles 15:06
* 2 Kings 17:11-12
* Acts 02:05
* Acts 13:19
* Acts 17:26
* Acts 26:04
* Daniel 03:04
* Genesis 10:2-5
* Genesis 27:29
* Genesis 35:11
* Genesis 49:10
* Luke 07:05
* Mark 13:7-8
* Matthew 21:43
* Romans 04:16-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H523, H524, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

nation, nations

### noble

#### Related Ideas:

nobility, nobleman

#### Definition:

The term "noble" describes someone or something that is excellent or of high quality.

* A "nobleman" or a "noble" is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
* The "nobility" refers to the people who belong to a high political or social class.
* A man "of noble birth" is one who was born a nobleman.

Translation Suggestion

* The term "nobleman" could also be translated by, "king's official" or "government officer."

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
* Daniel 04:36
* Ecclesiastes 10:17
* Luke 19:12
* Psalm 016:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H193, H1419, H2715, H3358, H3513, H5081, H6440, H6579, H7261, H8282, H8269, G937, G2104

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

nobility, noble, nobleman, noblemen, nobles

### oak

#### Related Ideas:

terebinth

#### Definition:

An oak, or oak tree, is a tall shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

* Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks.
* The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
* The trunks of certain oak trees could bemeasured up to 6 meters around.
* Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Many translations will find it important to use the term "oak tree" rather than just the word "oak."
* If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, "an oak" could be translated as "an oak, which is a large shade tree like…," then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.
* See:

(See also: [holy](#en-holy))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:3-4
* Genesis 13:18
* Genesis 14:13-14
* Genesis 35:4-5
* Judges 06:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H352, H424, H427, H436, H437, H438

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oak, oaks, terebinths

### oath

#### Related Ideas:

swear, swear by

#### Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. A person who swears an oath commits himself to being faithful and truthful, and by doing so he is saying that God has the right to punish him if he breaks the oath.

* In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
* In the Bible, the term "swear" means to speak an oath.
* The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
* Sometimes these terms are used together, as in "swear an oath."
* Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
* Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
* God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
* A modern-day meaning of the word "swear" is "use foul language." This is not its meaning in the Bible.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
* To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
* Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
* To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
* Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelek](#en-Abimelek), [covenant](#en-covenant), [vow](#en-vow))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 21:23
* Genesis 24:03
* Genesis 31:51-53
* Genesis 47:31
* Luke 01:73
* Mark 06:26
* Matthew 05:36
* Matthew 14:6-7
* Matthew 26:72

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G331, G332, G3660, G3726, G3727, G3728, G3784

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oath, oath-taking, oaths, swear, swear by, swearing, swears, swears by, swore, swore an oath, sworn

### obey

#### Related Ideas:

follow, give ear, hear, hold securely, hold to, keep, listen, obedience, obedient

#### Definition:

The term "obey" means to do what is required or commanded. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. "Obedience" is the characteristic that an obedient person has.

* Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
* For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
* Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
* When someone in authority commands people not to do something, the people obey by not doing that.
* To "observe" a law or command is to obey it.
* Other words used to refer to obeying someone or something are: follow, give ear, hear, hold securely, hold to, keep, listen.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "obey" could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
* The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: [citizen](#en-citizen), [command](#en-command), [disobey](#en-disobey), [kingdom](#en-kingdom), [law](#en-law))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:32
* Acts 06:7
* Genesis 28:6-7
* James 01:25
* James 02:10
* Luke 06:47
* Matthew 07:26
* Matthew 19:20-22
* Matthew 28:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2388, H3349, H4928, H5341, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G2722, G2902, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5426, G5442

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

following, give ... ear, hear, heard, hold ... securely, hold to, keep, keeps, kept, listen, listened, listened to, obedience, obedient, obediently, obey, obeyed, obeying, obeys

### official

#### Related Ideas:

officer

#### Definition:

The terms "official" and "officer" refer to people who hold positions within a government or organization. Leaders within the government or organization give the official or officer certain authority and duties to perform as long as he remains in the position.

* A king often had many officials to serve him.
* When someone makes an "official visit," it means a person with authority is visiting a person or place as part of his job.
* An officer is a person who carries out the orders of an official or a judge and issues orders only to officers of lesser rank and to people subject to the government.

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 39:1
* Ester 01:03
* Jeremiah 01:18
* Matthew 09:18
* Acts 25:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5461, H5631, H6496, H7860, H8269, G758, G3175, G4173, G5257

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

officer, officers, official, officials

### olive

#### Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

* Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
* The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
* Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
* In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](#en-lamp), [the sea](#en-the sea), [Mount of Olives](#en-Mount of Olives))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
* Deuteronomy 06:10-12
* Exodus 23:10-11
* Genesis 08:11
* James 03:12
* Luke 16:06
* Psalms 052:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2132, H3323, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

olive, olives

### oppress

#### Related Ideas:

oppression, oppressive, oppressor, ruthless

#### Definition:

The terms "oppress" and "oppression" refer to treating people harshly. An "oppressor" is a person who oppresses people.

* The term "oppression" especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
* The term "oppressed" describes the people who are being harshly treated.
* Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.
* The term "ruthless" describes who show no pity or compassion to others. Oppressors are ruthless.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "oppress" could be translated as, "severely mistreat" or "cause to be heavily burdened" or "put under miserable bondage" or "rule harshly."
* Ways to translate "oppression" could include "heavy suppression and bondage" or "burdensome control."
* The phrase "the oppressed" could be translated as "oppressed people" or "people in terrible bondage" or "those who are treated harshly."
* The term "oppressor" could be translated as "person who oppresses" or "nation who controls and rules harshly" or "persecutor."

(See also: [bind](#en-bind), [enslave](#en-enslave), [persecute](#en-persecute))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:17-19
* Deuteronomy 26:07
* Ecclesiastes 04:1
* Job 10:03
* Judges 02:18-19
* Nehemiah 05:14-15
* Psalms 119:134

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H2556, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H5065, H6031, H6115, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, H8496, G2561, G2616, G2669

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oppress, oppressed, oppresses, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors, ruthless

### overseer

#### Related Ideas:

overseer, supervise, supervisor, visitation

#### Definition:

The term "overseer" refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people.

* In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
* In the New Testament, overseers were leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
* Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his "flock."
* The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
* In the New Testament, the terms "overseers," "elders," and "shepherds/pastors" are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.
* The word "supervisor" is another word for an overseer.
* The word "visitation" refers to an overseer coming to make sure that the workers over whom he has charge are working well.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Other ways to translate this term could be "caretaker" or "manager."
* When referring to a leader of a local group of God's people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "spiritual supervisor" or "someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers" or "person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church."

(See also: [church](#en-church), [elder](#en-elder), [pastor](#en-pastor), [shepherd](#en-shepherd))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
* 1 Timothy 03:02
* Acts 20:28
* Genesis 41:33-34
* Philippians 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3256, H6485, H6486, H6496, H7287, H7860, H8104, H8269, G1983, G1984, G1985

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oversee, overseeing, overseen, overseer, overseers, oversees, supervise, supervised, supervisor, supervisors, visitation

### palm

#### Related Ideas:

palm branch

#### Definition:

The term "palm" refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

* The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a "date." The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
* Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
* As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
* Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: [donkey](#en-donkey), [Jerusalem](#en-Jerusalem), [peace](#en-peace))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 06:29-30
* Ezekiel 40:14-16
* John 12:12-13
* Numbers 33:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3712, H8558, H8560, H8561, G5404

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

palm, palm branch, palms

### peace

#### Related Ideas:

peaceable, peaceful, peacemaker, quiet

#### Definition:

The term "peace" refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is "peaceful" feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

* "Peace" can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have "peaceful relations."
* To "make peace" with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
* A "peacemaker" is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
* To be "at peace" with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
* A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having "peace with God."
* The greeting "grace and peace" was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
* The term "peace" can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.
* A person who is "peaceable" acts in a way that enables him to live in peace with other people. He acts "peaceably."
* To "quiet" someone is to get them to be at peace. To quiet a quarrel is to get the people to stop quarreling and be at peace with each other.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
* Acts 07:26
* Colossians 01:18-20
* Colossians 03:15
* Galatians 05:23
* Luke 07:50
* Luke 12:51
* Mark 04:39
* Matthew 05:09
* Matthew 10:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, H8535, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

peace, peaceable, peaceably, peaceful, peacefully, peacemakers, quiet, quiets

### peace offering

#### Definitions:

A "peace offering" was one of several sacrificial offerings that God commanded the Israelites to make. It is sometimes called the "thanksgiving offering" or "fellowship offering."

* This offering involved sacrificing an animal that had no defects, sprinkling the animal's blood on the altar, and burning the animal's fat, as well as the rest of the animal separately.
* Added to this sacrifice was an offering of both unleavened and leavened bread, which was burned on top of the burnt offering.
* The priest and offerer of the sacrifice were permitted to share in eating the food that was offered.
* This offering symbolizes the fellowship of God with his people.

(See also: [burnt offering](#en-burnt offering), [fellowship](#en-fellowship), [fellowship offering](#en-fellowship offering), [grain offering](#en-grain offering), [priest](#en-priest), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice), [unleavened bread](#en-unleavened bread))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 13:8-10
* Ezekiel 45:16-17
* Joshua 08:30-32
* Leviticus 09:3-5
* Proverbs 07:13-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8002

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

peace offering, peace offerings

### people of God

#### Related Ideas:

God's people, people for God's possession

#### Definition:

The term "people of God" refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

* When God says "my people" he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
* God's people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
* In the Old Testament, "people of God" refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
* In the New Testament, "people of God" especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "people of God" could be translated as "God's people" or "the people who worship God" or "people who serve God" or "people who belong to God."
* When God says "my people" other ways to translate it could include "the people I have chosen" or "the people who worship me" or "the people who belong to me."
* Similarly, "your people" could be translated as "the people who belong to you" or "the people you chose to belong to you."
* Also "his people" could be translated as "the people who belong to him" or "the people God chose to belong to himself."

(See also: [Israel](#en-Israel), [people group](#en-people group))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:02
* Acts 07:34
* Acts 07:51-53
* Acts 10:36-38
* Daniel 09:24-25
* Isaiah 02:5-6
* Jeremiah 06:20-22
* Joel 03:16-17
* Micah 06:3-5
* Revelation 13:7-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God's people, my people, people for God's possession, people of God

### perish

#### Related Ideas:

imperishable, perishable

#### Definition:

The term "perish" means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster.

* The word "perish" can also be a metaphor for being punished in hell either presently or in the future.
* Something that is "imperishable" will never perish.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "die" or "be destroyed" or "be punished in hell" or "will be punished in hell."
* When perish is a metaphor, make sure that the translation of "perish" does not only mean "cease to exist."

(See also: [death](#en-death), [eternity](#en-eternity))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:23
* 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
* 2 Thessalonians 02:10
* Jeremiah 18:18
* Psalms 049:18-20
* Zechariah 09:5-7
* Zechariah 13:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6, H7, H622, H1197, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H7921, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G5356

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

imperishable, perish, perishable, perished, perishes, perishing

### pierce

#### Related Ideas:

gore, thrust through

#### Definition:

The term "pierce" means to stab something or to make a hole with a sharp, pointed object. It is also used figuratively to refer to causing someone deep emotional pain.

* A soldier pierced Jesus' side when he was hanging on the cross.
* In Bible times, a slave who was set free would have his ear pierced as a sign that he was choosing to continue working for his master.
* Simeon spoke figuratively when he told Mary that a sword would pierce her heart, meaning that she would experience deep grief because of what would happen to her son Jesus.
* To "thrust someone through" or "thrust a sword through someone" is to push a sword all the way through him so the sword comes out the other side.
* To "gore" is for an animal to thrust a horn into another animal or a person.

(See also: [cross](#en-cross), [Jesus](#en-Jesus), [servant](#en-servant), [Simeon](#en-Simeon))

#### Bible References:

* Job 16:13
* Job 20:23-25
* John 19:37
* Psalms 022:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1856, H1920, H2342, H2490, H2491, H2944, H3738, H5055, H5181, H5344, H5365, H6398, G1330, G1338, G1574, G2660, G3572, G4044

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gore, gored, holes, pierce, pierced, pierces, piercing, thrust ... through

### pillar

#### Related Ideas:

column

#### Definition:

The term "pillar" usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for "pillar" is "column."

* In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
* When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
* The word "pillar" sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
* It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a "carved image" and could be translated as "statue."
* The term "pillar" is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the "pillar of fire" that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the "pillar of salt" that Lot's wife became after she looked back at the city.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* As a structure supporting a building, the term "pillar" or "column" could be translated as "upright stone support beam" or "supporting stone structure."
* Other uses of "pillar" could be translated as "statue" or "pile" or "mound" or "monument" or "tall mass," depending on the context.

(See also: [found](#en-found), [god](#en-god), [image](#en-image))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 18:04
* Exodus 13:21
* Exodus 33:09
* Genesis 31:45
* Proverbs 09:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H352, H547, H2106, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G4769

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

column, columns, pillar, pillars

### pit

#### Related Ideas:

pitfall, quarry

#### Definition:

A "pit" is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground. A "pitfall" is a trap made of a pit that is hidden with a cover. A "quarry" is a pit from which people take valuable stones.

* People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
* A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
* Sometimes the phrase "the pit" refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to "the abyss."
* The term "pit" is also used figuratively in phrases such as, "pit of destruction" which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: [abyss](#en-abyss), [hell](#en-hell), [prison](#en-prison))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 37:21-22
* Job 33:18
* Luke 06:39
* Proverbs 01:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H875, H953, H1356, H1475, H2352, H4087, H4113, H4379, H6354, H7585, H7745, H7816, H7825, H7845, H7882, G12, G999, G5421

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

pit, pitfall, pits, quarry

### plead

#### Related Ideas:

appeal, ask earnestly, humble request, plea

#### Definitions:

The terms "plead" and "pleading" refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A "plea" is an urgent request.

* Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
* People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
* Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.
* The word translated "humble request" refers specifically to a humble request for favor or mercy.
* To "plead someone's cause" is to testify in court before a judge that the judge should rule in favor of the person whose cause it is.
* A "legal plea" or "cause" is what someone who is trying to get justice tells a judge in a court trial.
* An "earnest appeal" is a serious, humble request.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "plead" could also be translated as "beg" or "implore" or "urgently ask."
* The term "plea" could also be translated as "urgent request" or "strong urging."

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 08:3-5
* Judges 06:31
* Luke 04:39
* Proverbs 18:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1777, H2603, H3198, H4941, H6279, H6293, H6664, H6419, H7378, H7379, H7775, H8199, H8467, H8469, G1162, G1189, G1793, G2065, G3870, G3874

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appeal, asked ... earnestly, cause, earnest appeal, earnest appeals, earnestly appeal, earnestly appealed, humble request, humble requests, legal plea, moved by ... plea, plea, plea for favor, plead, plead ... cause, pleaded, pleading, pleadings, pleads, pleas

### plow

#### Related Ideas:

farmer, plowman, plowshare, unplowed

#### Definition:

A "plow" is a farm tool that is used for breaking up soil to prepare a field for planting.

* Plows have sharp, pointed prongs or blades that dig into the soil. They usually have handles that the farmer uses to guide the plow.
* A "plowshare" is the main cutting blade on a plow.
* In Bible times, plows were usually pulled by a pair of oxen or other work animals.
* Most plows were made of hard wood, except for the sharp points which were made of a metal, such as bronze or iron.
* A "plowman" or a "plower" is a person who uses a plow.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The terms "plowman" and "plower" can also be translated more generally as "farmer."

(See also: [bronze](#en-bronze), [cow](#en-cow))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 08:10-12
* Deuteronomy 21:04
* Luke 09:62
* Luke 17:07
* Psalm 141:5-7

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H406, H855, H2758, H2790, H5215, H5647, H5656, H5674, H6213, H6398, G722, G723

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

farmers, plow, plowed, plowers, plowing, plowman, plowmen, plows, plowshares, unplowed

### possess

#### Related Ideas:

belongings, dispossess, possession, property

#### Definitions:

The terms "possess" and "possession" usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

* In the Old Testament, "possess" is often used in the context of "possessing" or "taking possession of" an area of land.
* When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to "possess" the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
* Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as "their possession." This could also be translated as "their rightful place to live."
* The people of Israel were also called Yahweh's "special possession." This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.
* The term "dispossess" meant "take someone's property."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "possess" could also be translated as "own" or "have" or "have charge over."
* "Possessions" are also called "belongings" and "property."
* The phrase "take possession of" could be translated as "take control of" or "occupy" or "live on," depending on the context.
* When Yahweh calls the Israelites "my special possession" this could also be translated as "my special people" or "people who belong to me" or "my people whom I love and rule."
* The sentence, "they will become their possession" when referring to land, means "they will occupy the land" or "the land will belong to them."
* The phrase "as your possession" could also be translated as "as something that belongs to you" or "as a place where your people will live."
* The phrase "dispossess them" can be translated as "take their land" or "make them leave their land."

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [worship](#en-worship))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:70
* 1 Kings 09:17-19
* Acts 02:45
* Deuteronomy 04:5-6
* Genesis 31:36-37
* Matthew 13:44

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H270, H272, H2505, H2631, H3018, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H5157, H5159, H5459, G979, G1139, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, H3520, G4041, G4047, G4632, G5224, G5225

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

belongings, dispossess, possess, possessed, possesses, possessing, possession, possessions, property, took possession, valuable possessions

### power

#### Related Ideas:

ability, able, mastered, can, capable, could, impossible, incapable, powerful, won, unable

#### Definition:

The term "power" refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. "Powers" refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

* The "power of God" refers to God's ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
* God has complete power over everything that he has created.
* God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
* Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "power" could also be translated as "ability" or "strength" or "energy" or "ability to do miracles" or "control."
* Possible ways to translate the term "powers" could include "powerful beings" or "controlling spirits" or "those who control others."
* An expression like "save us from the power of our enemies" could be translated as "save us from being oppressed by our enemies" or "rescue us from being controlled by our enemies." In this case, "power" has the meaning of using one's strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [Jesus](#en-Jesus), [miracle](#en-miracle))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 01:05
* Colossians 01:11-12
* Genesis 31:29
* Jeremiah 18:21
* Jude 01:25
* Judges 02:18
* Luke 01:17
* Luke 04:14
* Matthew 26:64
* Philippians 03:21
* Psalm 080:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H410, H1368, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2632, H3027, H3201, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5807, H6109, H6184, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8592, H8633, G1410, G1411, G1415, G1743, G1754, G1832, G1849, G1850, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2480, G2904, G3168

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ability, able, am ... able, are ... able, are ... possible, be ... unable, be able, be mastered, can, cannot, capable, could, could not, impossible, incapable, is ... able, may ... be able, miraculous powers, possible, power, powerful, powerfully, powers, was ... able, were ... able, will ... be able, won

### praise

#### Related Ideas:

praiseworthy

#### Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person. Something that is praiseworthy is good and deserves to be praised.

* People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
* Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
* Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
* Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term to "praise" could also be translated as to "speak well of" or to "highly honor with words" or to "say good things about."
* The noun "praise" could be translated as "spoken honor" or "speech that honors" or "speaking good things about."

(See also: [worship](#en-worship))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 01:03
* Acts 02:47
* Acts 13:48
* Daniel 03:28
* Ephesians 01:03
* Genesis 49:8
* James 03:9-10
* John 05:41-42
* Luke 01:46
* Luke 01:64-66
* Luke 19:37-38
* Matthew 11:25-27
* Matthew 15:29-31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1288, H1289, H1319, H1984, H2142, H2167, H7121, H8416, G1392, G1843, G2127, G2128, G2129, G2980, G3170, G3853, G5485, G5567

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

praise, praised, praises, praiseworthy, praising, sing praise, sing praises

### pray

#### Related Ideas:

prayer

#### Definition:

The terms "pray" and "prayer" refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

* People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
* Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
* Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
* People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
* Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
* Talking to God is sometimes called "communing" with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
* This term could be translated as "talking to God" or "communicating with God." The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [god](#en-god), [forgive](#en-forgive), [praise](#en-praise))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 03:09
* Acts 08:24
* Acts 14:26
* Colossians 04:04
* John 17:09
* Luke 11:1
* Matthew 05:43-45
* Matthew 14:22-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H577, H1156, H2470, H3908, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7879, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heard ... prayer, pray, prayed, prayer, prayers, praying, prays, urgently pray

### priest

#### Related Ideas:

priesthood, priestly office

#### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

* In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
* The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
* The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
* Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
* The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
* In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
* Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
* In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
* In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
* The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
* Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
* The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#en-Aaron), [chief priests](#en-chief priests), [high priest](#en-high priest), [mediator](#en-mediator), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 06:41
* Genesis 14:17-18
* Genesis 47:22
* John 01:19-21
* Luke 10:31
* Mark 01:44
* Mark 02:25-26
* Matthew 08:4
* Matthew 12:04
* Micah 03:9-11
* Nehemiah 10:28-29
* Nehemiah 10:34-36
* Revelation 01:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

priest, priest's, priesthood, priestly, priestly office, priests, priests', served as a priest

### prince

#### Related Ideas:

princess

#### Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

* The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
* Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
* In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
* The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
* Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
* Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
* In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
* When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
* When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#en-angel), [authority](#en-authority), [Christ](#en-Christ), [demon](#en-demon), [lord](#en-lord), [power](#en-power), [ruler](#en-ruler), [Satan](#en-Satan), [Savior](#en-Savior), [spirit](#en-spirit))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:29-32
* Genesis 12:15
* Genesis 49:26
* Luke 01:52

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5461, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G3175

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

prince, princes, princess, princesses

### prison

#### Related Ideas:

custody, dungeon, imprison, imprisonment, prisoner

#### Definition:

The term "prison" refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A "prisoner" is someone who has been put in the prison.

* The term "prisoners" can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will.
* The term "imprisoned" means "kept in a prison" or "kept in captivity."
* Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.
* To "hold someone in custody" is to put him in a prison or other place from which he cannot escape. Sometimes people were held in custody while they waited to be judged in a trial.
* A "dungeon" is an underground prison that is dark and damp.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Another word for "prison" is "jail."
* The term "prison" could also be translated as "dungeon" in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
* The term "prisoners" can also be translated as "captives." Other ways to translate "imprisoned" could be "kept as a prisoner" or "kept in captivity" or "held captive" or "shut up."

(See also: [captive](#en-captive))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 25:04
* Ephesians 04:01
* Luke 12:58
* Luke 22:33-34
* Mark 06:17
* Matthew 05:26
* Matthew 14:03
* Matthew 25:34-36

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H953, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5084, G5438, G5439

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

custody, dungeon, held ... in custody, hold ... in custody, holding ... in custody, imprison, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments, imprisons, prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons

### promise

#### Related Ideas:

binding promise

#### Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

* The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
* Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
* A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
* To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](#en-covenant), [oath](#en-oath), [vow](#en-vow))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 03:15-16
* Genesis 25:31-34
* Hebrews 11:09
* James 01:12
* Numbers 30:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H530, H562, H632, H1696, H2778, H3709, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

makes binding promises, promise, promised, promises

### prophet

#### Related Ideas:

prophecy, prophesy, prophetic, seer

#### Definition:

A "prophet" is a man who speaks God's messages to people. A woman who does this is called a "prophetess."

* Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
* A "prophecy" is the message that the prophet speaks. To "prophesy" means to speak God's messages.
* Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
* Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
* In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as "the prophets."
* For example the phrase, "the law and the prophets" is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the "Old Testament."
* An older term for a prophet was "seer" or "someone who sees."
* Sometimes the term "seer" refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "prophet" could be translated as "God's spokesman" or "man who speaks for God" or "man who speaks God's messages."
* A "seer" could be translated as, "person who sees visions" or "man who sees the future from God."
* The term "prophetess" could be translated as, "spokeswoman for God" or "woman who speaks for God" or "woman who speaks God's messages."
* Ways to translate "prophecy" could include, "message from God" or "prophet message."
* The term "prophesy" could be translated as "speak words from God" or "tell God's message."
* The figurative expression, "law and the prophets" could also be translated as, "the books of the law and of the prophets" or "everything written about God and his people, including God's laws and what his prophets preached."
* When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as "false prophet (seer)" or "prophet (seer) of a false god" or "prophet of Baal," for example.

(See also: [Baal](#en-Baal), [divination](#en-divination), [god](#en-god), [false prophet](#en-false prophet), [fulfill](#en-fulfill), [law of Moses](#en-law of Moses), [vision](#en-vision))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
* Acts 03:25
* John 01:43-45
* Malachi 04:4-6
* Matthew 01:23
* Matthew 02:18
* Matthew 05:17
* Psalm 051:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5046, H5197, H7200, H7203, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

give ... prophecies, prophecies, prophecy, prophesied, prophesies, prophesy, prophesying, prophet, prophet's, prophetess, prophetic, prophets, seer, seer's, seers, seers'

### prostitute

#### Related Ideas:

prostitution

#### Definition:

The terms "prostitute" and "harlot" both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

* In the Bible, the word "prostitute" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
* The expression "play the harlot" means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
* To "prostitute oneself" to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
* In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
* This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this.

(See also: [adultery](#en-adultery), [god](#en-god), [sexual immorality](#en-sexual immorality), [god](#en-god))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 34:31
* Genesis 38:21
* Luke 15:30
* Matthew 21:31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G4204

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

act like a prostitute, acted like a prostitute, acted like prostitutes, prostitute, prostitute's, prostituted, prostitutes, prostitution

### proud

#### Related Ideas:

pride, prideful

#### Definition:

The terms "proud" and "prideful" refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

* A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
* Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
* The terms "proud" and "pride" can also be used in a positive sense, such as being "proud of" what someone else has achieved and being "proud of" your children. The expression "take pride in your work" means to find joy in doing your work well.
* Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of "pride."
* The term "prideful" is always negative, with the meaning of being "arrogant" or "conceited" or "self-important."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The noun "pride" could be translated as "arrogance" or "conceit" or "self-importance."
* In other contexts, "pride" could be translated as "joy" or "satisfaction" or "pleasure."
* To be "proud of" could also be translated as "happy with" or "satisfied with" or "joyful about (the accomplishments of)."
* The phrase "take pride in your work" could be translated as, "find satisfaction in doing your work well."
* The expression "take pride in Yahweh" could also be translated as "be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done" or "be happy about how amazing Yahweh is."

(See also: [arrogant](#en-arrogant), [humble](#en-humble), [joy](#en-joy))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 03:6-7
* 2 Corinthians 01:12
* Galatians 06:3-5
* Isaiah 13:19
* Luke 01:51

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G1391, G1392, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3173, G5187, G5229, G5243, G5244, G5308, G5309, G5426

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

pride, prideful, proud, proudly, source of pride

### provoke

#### Related Ideas:

provocation

#### Definitions:

The term "provoke" means to cause someone to experience a negative reaction or feeling.

* To provoke someone to anger means to do something that causes that person to be angry. This could also be translated as to "cause to become angry" or to "anger."
* When used in a phrase such as, "do not provoke him," this could be translated as "do not anger him" or "do not cause him to be angry" or "do not make him angry with you."

(See also: [anger](#en-anger))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 20:27-29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3707, H3708, H4784, H4843, H5006, H7065, H7069, H7107, H7264, G2042, G3863, G3947, G3949, G4292

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

provocation, provoke, provoke ... to anger, provoked, provoked ... to anger, provokes, provoking

### punish

#### Related Ideas:

bring down judgment, deal with, inflict punishment, judgment, punishment, unpunished

#### Definition:

The term "punish" means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term "punishment" refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

* Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
* God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
* God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
* Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person's punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
* The expression "leave someone unpunished" means to decide not to punish someone for their wrongdoing.
* The expression "go unpunished" means to sin and not be punished for it. God often allows people to go unpunished as he waits for them to repent.
* To "bring down judgment" on someone is to punish him after declaring him guilty of wrongful behavior.
* Sometimes "judgment" refers to punishment.
* Sometimes "deal with" means punish.

(See also: [justice](#en-justice), [repent](#en-repent), [righteous](#en-righteous), [sin](#en-sin))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:18
* 2 Thessalonians 01:09
* Acts 04:21
* Acts 07:59-60
* Genesis 04:15
* Luke 23:16
* Matthew 25:46

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2403, H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5352, H5414, H5771, H6031, H6213, H6485, H6486, H7451, H7561, H7999, H8011, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G2849, G2851, G2917, G2920, G3811, G5097

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bring down judgment, go ... unpunished, inflicted punishment, inflicting punishment, judgment, leave ... unpunished, punish, punished, punishes, punishing, punishment, unpunished

### purple

#### Definitions:

The term "purple" is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

* In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
* Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
* Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
* Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
* Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
* Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(See also: [ephod](#en-ephod), [Philippi](#en-Philippi), [royal](#en-royal), [tabernacle](#en-tabernacle), [temple](#en-temple))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 02:13-14
* Daniel 05:7
* Daniel 05:29-31
* Proverbs 31:22-23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H710, H711, H713, G4209, G4210, G4211

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

purple

### rage

#### Related Ideas:

enrage

#### Definitions:

Rage is excessive anger what is out of control. When someone rages, it means that person is expressing anger in a destructive way.

* Rage happens when the emotion of anger causes a person to lose self control.
* When controlled by rage, people commit destructive acts and say destructive things.
* When the "nations rage," their to ungodly people disobey God and rebel against him.
* To be "filled with rage" means to have an overwhelming feeling of extreme anger.
* "Senseless rage" is rage that comes from no good reason or that prevents the angry person from thinking clearly.
* To "enrage" someone means to make them extremely angry.
* To "enrage" against someone is to be extremely angry with someone.
* When someone is "enraged" he is extremely angry."

"Rage" can also be used figuratively. \* The term to "rage" can also mean to move powerfully, in descriptions such as a "raging" storm or ocean waves that "rage."

(See also: [anger](#en-anger), [self-control](#en-self-control))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:25
* Daniel 03:13
* Luke 04:28
* Numbers 25:11
* Proverbs 19:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H398, H1348, H1993, H2121, H2195, H2196, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2734, H2740, H3820, H5590, H5678, H7264, H7265, H7266, H7267, H7857, G454, G1693, G2372, G2830, G3710, G5433

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

enrage, enraged, rage, raged, rages, raging, senseless rage

### raise

#### Related Ideas:

arise, rise, risen

#### Definition:

**raise, raise up**

In general, the word "raise" means to "lift up" or "make higher."

* The figurative phrase "raise up" means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
* Sometimes "raise up" means to restore or rebuild.
* "Raise" has a specialized meaning in the phrase "raise from the dead." It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
* Sometimes "raise up" means to exalt someone or something or make someone or something truly great.

**rise, arise**

To "rise" or "arise" means to "go up" or "get up." The terms "risen," "rose," and "arose" express past action.

* When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as "he arose and went" or "he rose up and went."
* If something "arises" it means it "happens" or "begins to happen."
* Jesus predicted that he would "rise from the dead." Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, "He has risen!"
* A person who suddenly becomes important is said to "arise."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "raise" or "raise up" could be translated as "lift up" or "make higher."
* To "raise up" could also be translated as to "cause to appear" or to "appoint" or to "bring into existence."
* To "raise up the strength of your enemies" could be translated as, "cause your enemies to be very strong."
* The phrase "raise someone from the dead" could be translated as "cause someone to return from death to life" or "cause someone to come back to life."
* Depending on the context, "raise up" could also be translated as "provide" or to "appoint" or to "cause to have" or "build up" or "rebuild" or "repair."
* The phrase "arose and went" could be translated as "got up and went" or "went."
* Depending on the context, the term "arose" could also be translated as "began" or "started up" or "got up" or "stood up."

(See also: [resurrection](#en-resurrection), [appoint](#en-appoint), [exalt](#en-exalt))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 06:41
* 2 Samuel 07:12
* Acts 10:40
* Colossians 03:01
* Deuteronomy 13:1-3
* Jeremiah 06:01
* Judges 02:18
* Luke 07:22
* Matthew 20:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1804, H2210, H2224, H5375, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1127, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891, G5312

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

arise, arisen, arises, raise, raise up, raised, raises, raising, raising up, rise, rise up, risen, rises, rising, rose

### receive

#### Related Ideas:

abstain, receiver

#### Definition:

The term "receive" generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

* To "receive" can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in "he received punishment for what he did."
* There is also a special sense in which we can "receive" a person. For example, to "receive" guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
* To "receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
* To "receive Jesus" means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
* When a blind person "receives his sight" means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.
* The word "abstain" means to refuse to take or receive or have something.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "receive" could be translated as "accept" or "welcome" or "experience" or "be given."
* The expression "you will receive power" could be translated as "you will be given power" or "God will give you power" or "power will be given to you (by God)" or "God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you."
* The phrase "received his sight" could be translated as "was able to see" or "became able to see again."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [Jesus](#en-Jesus), [lord](#en-lord), [save](#en-save))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 05:09
* 1 Thessalonians 01:06
* 1 Thessalonians 04:01
* Acts 08:15
* Jeremiah 32:33
* Luke 09:05
* Malachi 03:10-12
* Psalms 049:14-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3557, H3925, H3947, H5144, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1184, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4047, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

abstain, receive, receive back, received, received ... in full, receiver, receives, receiving

### reed

#### Definitions:

The term "reed" refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

* The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called "bulrushes." They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
* These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
* The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(See also: [Egypt](#en-Egypt), [Moses](#en-Moses), [Nile River](#en-Nile River))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 14:15
* Luke 07:24
* Matthew 11:07
* Matthew 12:20
* Psalm 068:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H98, H100, H260, G4464, H5488, H6169, H7070, G2563

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reed, reeds

### refuge

#### Related Ideas:

refugee, shelter

#### Definition:

The term "refuge" refers to a place or condition of safety and protection. A "refugee" is someone who is seeking a safe place. A "shelter" refers to a place that can protect from weather or danger.

* In the Bible, God is often referred to as a refuge where his people can be safe, protected, and cared for.
* The term "city of refuge" in the Old Testament referred to one of several cities where a person who accidentally killed someone could go for protection from people who would attack them in revenge.
* A "shelter" is often a physical structure such as a building or roof that can provide protection to people or animals.
* Sometimes "shelter" means "protection," as when Lot said that his guests were "under the shelter" of his roof. He was saying that they should be safe because he was taking responsibility to protect them as members of his household.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "refuge" could be translated as "safe place" or "place of protection."
* "Refugees" are people leaving their home to escape from a dangerous situation, and could be translated as "aliens," "homeless people," or "exiles."
* Depending on the context, the term "shelter" could be translated as "something that protects" or "protection" or "protected place."
* If it refers to a physical structure, "shelter" could also be translated as "protective building" or "house of safety."
* The phrase "into safe shelter" could be translated as "into a safe place" or "into a place that will protect."
* To "find shelter" or to "take shelter" or to "take refuge" could be translated as to "find a place of safety" or to "put oneself in a protected place."

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 22:3-4
* Deuteronomy 32:37-38
* Isaiah 23:14
* Jeremiah 16:19
* Numbers 35:24-25
* Psalm 046:01
* Psalms 028:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2620, H4268, H4498, H4581, H4585, H4733, H4869

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

find refuge, refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, sheltered, sheltering, shelters, take refuge

### reign

#### Definition:

The term to "reign" means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

* The term "reign" is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
* God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
* When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
* This term could also be translated as "absolute rule" or "rule as king."

(See also: [kingdom](#en-kingdom))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 02:11-13
* Genesis 36:34-36
* Luke 01:30-33
* Luke 19:26-27
* Matthew 02:22-23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, G936, G2231, G4821

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reign, reigned, reigning, reigns, set ... to reign

### reject

#### Related Ideas:

deny, despise, refuse, rejection, scorn, set aside, stay away from, throw away

#### Definition:

To "reject" someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing. The term "reject" can also mean to "refuse to believe in" something. To reject God or his laws means to refuse to obey him.

* To "deny" what someone says is to say that it is not true.
* To "deny" someone is to say that one does not associate with that person.
* To "despise" or "scorn" people or things is to have no respect for them.
* An "object of scorn" is someone or something that people have no respect for.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, the term "reject" could also be translated by "not accept" or "stop helping" or "refuse to obey" or "stop obeying."
* In some languages the idea of "reject" is expressed as "push away" or "set aside" or "stay away from."
* In the expression "stone that the builders rejected," the term "rejected" could be translated as "refused to use" or "did not accept" or "threw away" or "got rid of as worthless."
* In the context of people who rejected God's commandments, rejected could be translated as "refused to obey" his commands or "stubbornly chose to not accept" God's laws.

(See also: [command](#en-command), [disobey](#en-disobey), [obey](#en-obey), [stiff-necked](#en-stiff-necked))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:12-14
* Hosea 04:6-7
* Isaiah 41:09
* John 12:48-50
* Mark 07:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H936, H937, H947, H959, H2151, H2186, H2778, H2781, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G114, G483, G550, G579, G580, G581, G593, G683, G720, G1609, G1848, G3868

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

denied, denies, deny, despise, despised, despises, refuse, refused, reject, rejected, rejecting, rejection, rejects, scorn, scorns, set ... aside, sets ... aside, stay away from, throw away, tossed aside

### remnant

#### Related Ideas:

remaining

#### Definition:

The term "remnant" literally refers to people or things that are "remaining" or "left over" from a larger amount or group.

* Often a "remnant" refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
* Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
* Paul talks about there being a "remnant" of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
* The term "remnant" implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.
* An "escaped remnant" is a small number of people who did not die when most of their people did die in a war.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* A phrase such as "the remnant of this people" could be translated as "the rest of these people" or "the people who remain faithful" or "the people who are left."
* The "whole remnant of people" could be translated by "all the rest of the people" or "the remaining people."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:17
* Amos 09:12
* Ezekiel 06:8-10
* Genesis 45:07
* Isaiah 11:11
* Micah 04:6-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3498, H3499, H4422, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8300, G2640, G3005

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

escaped remnant, remain, remained, remaining, remains, remnant

### report

#### Related Ideas:

account, bring news, give an account, news, rumor

#### Definition:

The term to "report" means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A "report" is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

* "Report" could also be translated as "tell" or "explain" or "tell the details of."
* The expression "Report this to no one" could be translated as, "Don't talk about this with anyone" or "Don't tell anyone about this."
* Ways to translate "a report" could include "an explanation" or "a story" or "a detailed account," depending on the context.
* A "rumor" is a report that no one knows for sure is true.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:22-23
* John 12:38
* Luke 05:15
* Luke 08:34-35
* Matthew 28:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1319, H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H5608, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8435, G189, G191, G312, G518, G987, G1225, G1310, G1334, G1834, G2036, G2163, G3004, G3056, G3140, G3141, G3377

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

account, accounts, bring ... report, brought ... news, brought ... report, gave ... a full account, give ... a full account, news, report, reported, reports, rumor, rumors, spread ... about

### rest

#### Related Ideas:

at ease, pause, refresh, relief, restless

#### Definition:

The term to "rest" literally means to stop working. Usually it means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. A "rest" is what someone has when he stops working. To "rest secure" is to feel safe. To "rest" an object on something means to "place" or "put" it there. An object that is "resting" somewhere is simply in that place. A boat that "comes to rest" somewhere has "stopped" or "landed" there. The phrase "the rest of" refers to the remainder of something.

* God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the "Sabbath" day.
* To be "at ease" is to feel safe or comfortable.
* To "pause" is to stop doing something for a while.
* To "refresh" someone is to give him rest and whatever else he needs so he can get his strength back.
* "Relief" is the rest a person has when a problem becomes less severe or ends.
* If someone is "restless," he feels anxious or bored and cannot rest.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When Jesus said, "I will give you rest," this could also be translated as " I will cause you to stop carrying your burden" or "I will help you be at peace."
* God said, "they will not enter my rest," and this statement could be translated as "they will not experience my blessings of rest" or "they will not experience the peace that comes from trusting in me."
* The term "the rest" could be translated as "those that remain" or "all the others" or "everything that is left."

(See also: [remnant](#en-remnant), [Sabbath](#en-Sabbath))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 06:41
* Genesis 02:03
* Jeremiah 06:16-19
* Matthew 11:29
* Revelation 14:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3427, H3498, H3499, H3885, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5162, H5183, H5315, H5564, H6314, H6960, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7663, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7951, H7961, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2838, G4520

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

at ease, be at rest, give ... rest, pause, refresh, refreshed, relief, rest, rest secure, rested, rested secure, resting, resting place, resting places, restless, rests

### restore

#### Related Ideas:

bring back, mend, recover, restoration, reverse

#### Definition:

The terms "restore" and "restoration" refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

* When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been "healed."
* When a broken relationship is restored, it has been "reconciled." God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
* When property is restored, it has been "repaired" or "replaced" or "given back" to its owner.
* When people have been restored to their home country, they have been "brought back" or "returned" to their country.
* A person who "recovers" from sickness becomes healthy again.
* A person who "recovers" a possession either finds it when it has been lost or gets it back from someone who has stolen it.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "restore" could include "renew" or "repay" or "return" or "heal" or "bring back."
* Other expressions for this term could be "make new" or "make like new again."
* Depending on the context, "restoration" could be translated as "renewal" or "healing" or "reconciliation."

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 5:10
* Acts 3:21
* Acts 15:15-18
* Isaiah 49:5-6
* Jeremiah 15:19-21
* Lamentations 05:22
* Leviticus 6:5-7
* Luke 19:8
* Matthew 12:13
* Psalm 80:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2421, H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bring back, mending, recover, restoration, restore, restored, restorer, restores, restoring, reverse

### return

#### Definition:

The term "return" means to go back or to give something back.

* To "return to" a place or person means to bo back to that place or person again.
* To "return to" an activity means to start doing that activity again.
* When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they started to worship them again.
* When the Israelites returned to Yahweh, they repented and worshiped Yahweh again.
* To "return" land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: [turn](#en-turn))

#### Bible References:

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290, G4762

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

return, return back, returned, returning, returns

### right hand

#### Related Ideas:

righthand side

#### Definition:

The figurative expression "right hand" refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

* The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
* The Bible describes Jesus as sitting "at the right hand of" God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
* A person's right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph's son Ephraim).
* To "serve at the right hand" of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Sometimes the term "right hand" literally refers to a person's right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus' right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
* Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term "right hand" does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
* The expression "at the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of" or "in the place of honor beside" or "in the position of strength" or "ready to help."
* Ways to translate "with his right hand" could include "with authority" or "using power" or "with his amazing strength."
* The figurative expression "his right hand and his mighty arm" uses two ways of emphasizing God's power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be "his amazing strength and mighty power."
* The expression "their right hand is falsehood" could be translated as, "even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies" or "their place of honor is corrupted by deception" or "they use lies to make themselves powerful."

(See also: [accuse](#en-accuse), [evil](#en-evil), [honor](#en-honor), [mighty](#en-mighty), [punish](#en-punish), [rebel](#en-rebel))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:33
* Colossians 03:01
* Galatians 02:09
* Genesis 48:14
* Hebrews 10:12
* Lamentations 02:03
* Matthew 25:33
* Matthew 26:64
* Psalms 044:03
* Revelation 02:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3225, H3231, G1188

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

right hand, right hands, righthand side

### righteous

#### Related Ideas:

right, rightly, righteousness, rightful, upright

#### Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

* These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
* Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
* When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" can refer to sin or the condition of being sinful.

* These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
* Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
* Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.
* "Unrighteousness" can be an abstract noun that refers to words or actions that are unrighteous.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

* The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
* A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
* Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."
* God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."
* When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."
* The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."
* Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good

Sometimes "the righteous" was used figuratively and referred to "people who think they are good" or "people who seem to be righteous."

The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."
* The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."
* The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."

If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."

Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."

* The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."
* The phrase "the upright" could be translated as "people who are upright" or "upright people."

(See also: [evil](#en-evil), [faithful](#en-faithful), [good](#en-good), [holy](#en-holy), [integrity](#en-integrity), [justice](#en-justice), [law](#en-law), [law of Moses](#en-law of Moses), [obey](#en-obey), [pure](#en-pure), [sin](#en-sin), [lawful](#en-lawful))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 19:16
* Job 01:08
* Psalms 037:30
* Psalms 049:14
* Psalms 107:42
* Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
* Isaiah 48:1-2
* Ezekiel 33:13
* Malachi 02:06
* Matthew 06:01
* Acts 03:13-14
* Romans 01:29-31
* 1 Corinthians 06:09
* Galatians 03:07
* Colossians 03:25
* 2 Thessalonians 02:10
* 2 Timothy 03:16
* 1 Peter 03:18-20
* 1 John 01:09
* 1 John 05:16-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G824, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts rightly, do right, does what is right, in the right, made ... appear ... righteous, right treatment, righteous, righteously, righteousness, rightful, that are right, that is right, unrighteous, unrighteously, unrighteousness, upright, uprightly, uprightness, what is ... right, what was right

### robe

#### Related Ideas:

cloak, coat, skirt, wings

#### Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

* Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
* Robes can be long or short.
* Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.
* The edges of a robe are called its "wings." When one person covers another person with his "wings," he covers him with that part of his robe.
* A "cloak" is a long outer garment that hangs loosely from the shoulders. It covers the back and hangs loosely in the front.
* A "skirt" is a woman's garment that hangs loosely from the waist and covers the legs.

(See also: [royal](#en-royal), [tunic](#en-tunic))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 28:4-5
* Genesis 49:11-12
* Luke 15:22
* Luke 20:46
* Matthew 27:27-29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H145, H155, H899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7897, H8008, H8071, G1746, G2067, G2440, G4749, G4016, G5511

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cloak, cloaks, coat, fancy robes, robe, robed, robes, skirt, skirts, wings

### rod

#### Related Ideas:

measuring rod

#### Definition:

The term "rod" refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

* A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
* In Psalm 23, King David used the terms "rod" and "staff" as metaphors to refer to God's guidance and discipline for his people.
* A shepherd's rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
* Another metaphorical expression, "rod of iron," refers to God's punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
* In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.
* In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.

(See also: [staff](#en-staff), [sheep](#en-sheep), [shepherd](#en-shepherd))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:21
* 1 Samuel 14:43-44
* Acts 16:23
* Exodus 27:9-10
* Revelation 11:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2415, H4294, H4731, H7626, G2563, G4463, G4464

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

measuring rod, rod, rods

### ruler

#### Related Ideas:

overrule, rule

#### Definition:

The term "ruler" is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who "rules," and his authority is his "rule."

* In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a "ruler," as in the phrase "appointed him ruler over Israel."
* God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
* In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a "ruler."
* Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a "governor."
* Depending on the context, "ruler" could be translated as "leader" or "person who has authority over."
* The action to "rule" means to "lead" to "have authority over." It is means the same thing as "reign" when it refers to the ruling of a king.
* To "overrule" people or their plans is to use one's higher authority to prohibit people from doing what they have planned.

(See also: [authority](#en-authority), [governor](#en-governor), [king](#en-king), [synagogue](#en-synagogue))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 03:17-18
* Acts 07:35-37
* Luke 12:11
* Luke 23:35
* Mark 10:42
* Matthew 09:32-34
* Matthew 20:25
* Titus 03:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5633, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G746, G752, G757, G758, G932, G936, G1018, G1203, G1299, G1778, G1785, G2232, G2233, G2525, G2888, G2961, G3545, G3841, G4165, G4291

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

overruled, overrules, rule, ruled, ruler, rulers, rules, ruling, rulings

### run

#### Related Ideas:

flee, flow, move swiftly, runner

#### Definition:

Literally the term "run" means "move very quickly on foot," usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking. To "run after" or "pursue" someone or something is to move as quickly as possible to try to catch that person or thing. To run away from someone or something is to "flee."

This main meaning of "run" is also used in figurative expressions such as the following:

* To "run in such a way as to win the prize" refers to persevering in doing God's will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win.
* To "run in the path of your commands" means to gladly and quickly obey God's commands.
* To "run after other gods" means to persist in worshiping other gods.
* "I run to you to hide me" means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things.

The following figurative uses are about non-living things that are said to run.

* Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to "run." This could also be translated as, "flow."
* The border or boundary of a country or region is said to "run along" a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country’s border "is next to" the river or other country or by saying that the country "borders" the river or other country."
* Rivers and streams can "run dry," which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as "have dried up" or "have become dry."
* The days of a feast can "run their course," which means they "have passed by" or "are finished" or "are over."

(See also: [god](#en-god), [persevere](#en-persevere), [refuge](#en-refuge), [turn](#en-turn))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:18
* Galatians 02:02
* Galatians 05:07
* Philippians 02:16
* Proverbs 01:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H213, H386, H1065, H1272, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H2648, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G413, G1377, G1601, G1530, G1532, G1998, G2701, G3729, G4063, G4370, G4390, G4710, G4890, G4936, G5143, G5240, G5343

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

caused ... to flee, fled, flee, fleeing, flees, flow, flows, moving swiftly, ran, run, runner, runners, running, runs

### sacrifice

#### Related Ideas:

offering

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "sacrifice" and "offering" refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

* The word "offering" generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term "sacrifice" refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
* Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
* The names of the different offerings, such as "burnt offering" and "peace offering," indicated what kind of offering was being given.
* Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
* Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.
* The figurative expression "offer yourselves as a living sacrifice" means, "live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him."

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "offering" could also be translated as "a gift to God" or "something given to God" or "something valuable that is presented to God."
* Depending on the context, the term "sacrifice" could also be translated as "something valuable given in worship" or "a special animal killed and presented to God."
* The action to "sacrifice" could be translated as to "give up something valuable" or to "kill an animal and give it to God."
* Another way to translate "present yourself as a living sacrifice" could be "as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar."

(See also: [altar](#en-altar), [burnt offering](#en-burnt offering), [drink offering](#en-drink offering), [god](#en-god), [fellowship offering](#en-fellowship offering), [freewill offering](#en-freewill offering) [peace offering](#en-peace offering), [priest](#en-priest), [sin offering](#en-sin offering), [worship](#en-worship))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:06
* Acts 07:42
* Acts 21:25
* Genesis 04:3-5
* James 02:21-24
* Mark 01:43-44
* Mark 14:12
* Matthew 05:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H4635, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

burn ... sacrifices, offer, offered, offering, offerings, sacrifice, sacrificed, sacrifices, sacrificing

### save

#### Related Ideas:

make well, preserve, safe, salvation

#### Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

* In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
* In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," then God, through Jesus' death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
* People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term "salvation" refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

* In the Bible, "salvation" usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
* The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "save" could include "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."
* In the expression "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."

The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."

The term "salvation" could also be translated using words related to "save" or "rescue," as in "God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)" or "God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies)."

* "God is my salvation" could be translated as "God is the one who saves me."
* "You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: [cross](#en-cross), [deliver](#en-deliver), [punish](#en-punish), [sin](#en-sin), [Savior](#en-Savior))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 49:18
* Genesis 47:25-26
* Psalms 080:03
* Jeremiah 16:19-21
* Micah 06:3-5
* Luke 02:30
* Luke 08:36-37
* Acts 04:12
* Acts 28:28
* Acts 02:21
* Romans 01:16
* Romans 10:10
* Ephesians 06:17
* Philippians 01:28
* 1 Timothy 01:15-17
* Revelation 19:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4581, H4931, H5337, H5338, H5756, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G1295, G1508, G1515, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be made well, brought safely, brought safely through, place of safety, preserve, safe, safely, safety, salvation, save, saved, saves, saving

### seek

#### Related Ideas:

go to find, look out for, search, try

#### Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. The past tense is "sought." It can also mean "try hard" or "make an effort" to do something.

* To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
* To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
* To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
* To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
* To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
* To "search out" something is to look for the truth about that thing.
* To "seek favor" means to "try to get favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."
* To "charge someone for something" is to hold that person responsible for the damage that person has done.

(See also: [justice](#en-justice), [true](#en-true))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 10:14
* Acts 17:26-27
* Hebrews 11:06
* Luke 11:09
* Psalms 027:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H2713, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7760, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2045, G2052, G2212, G3987, G4648

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

diligently seek, go to find, look out for, looked for, looking for, looks for, search, search carefully, search for, searched, searched for, searched out, searches ... out, searches for, searching, searching for, seek, seek ... out, seeking, seeks, sought, tried, try, trying

### seize

#### Related Ideas:

seizure

#### Definition:

The term "seize" means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

* When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
* When used figuratively, a person can be described as being "seized with fear." This means that the person was suddenly "overcome by fear." If a person was "seized with fear" it could also be stated that the person "suddenly became very afraid."
* In the context of labor pains that "seize" a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains "overcome" or "suddenly come upon" the woman.
* This term could also be translated as "take control of" or "suddenly take" or "grab."
* The expression "seized and slept with her" could be translated as "forced himself on her" or "violated her" or "raped her." Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.
* The term "seizure" refers to the action of taking someone or something by force.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 16:19-21
* Exodus 15:14
* John 10:37-39
* Luke 08:29
* Matthew 26:48

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H270, H1204, H1497, H1589, H2254, H2388, H2488, H3027, H3423, H3680, G3860, H3920, H3947, H4672, H4685, H5337, H5367, H5375, H5860, H5927, H7760, H8610, G724, G726, G1949, G2638, G2666, G2902, G2983, G3346, G4023, G4084, G4815, G4884, G4912

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

seize, seized, seizes, seizing, seizure

### servant

#### Related Ideas:

assistant, attendant, hired worker, maidservant, office, serve, service

#### Definition:

The word "servant" refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. Some servants were slaves, and the surrounding text usually makes it clear whether or not a particular servant was a slave. In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master's household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

* A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
* In ancient times, some people became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
* In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
* In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
* In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
* Christians are also called "slaves to righteousness," which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave's commitment to obey his master.

The word "serve" means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to "worship."

* In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
* To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
* People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
* The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.

The word "service" refers to the work that a servant does. It may also refer to worship.

The word "office" refers to the position or job that a servant has.

(See also: [commit](#en-commit), [enslave](#en-enslave), [household](#en-household), [lord](#en-lord), [obey](#en-obey), [righteous](#en-righteous), [covenant](#en-covenant), [law](#en-law))

#### Bible References

* Acts 04:29-31
* Acts 10:7-8
* Colossians 01:7-8
* Colossians 03:22-25
* Genesis 21:10-11
* Luke 12:47-48
* Mark 09:33-35
* Matthew 10:24-25
* Matthew 13:27-28
* 2 Timothy 02:3-5
* Acts 06:2-4
* Genesis 25:23
* Luke 04:8
* Luke 12:37-38
* Luke 22:26-27
* Mark 08:7-10
* Matthew 04:10-11
* Matthew 06:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H327, H519, H519, H4931, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5656, H5657, H5659, H5673, H6402, H6635, H7916, H8120, H8198, H8278, H8334, H8335, G1199, G1247, G1248, G1249, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2038, G2322, G2324, G2615, G2999, G3000, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3814, G3816, G4342, G5256, G5257

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

female servant, female servants, hired servant, hired servants, hired worker, maidservants, male servant, male servants, office, offices, one who serves, servant, servant girl, servant girls, servant's, servants, servants', serve, served, serves, service, services, serving

### set apart

#### Related Ideas:

distinct, make a distinction, treat differently

#### Definition:

The term "set apart" means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to "set apart" people or things means to make them "set apart." This also means to "treat" them "differently." When something is "distinct," it is different from other things.

* The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
* The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
* A believer who is "set apart" for service to God is "dedicated to" fulfilling God's will.
* One meaning of the term "holy" is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
* To "sanctify" someone means to set apart that person for God's service.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate to "set apart" could include to "specially select" or to "separate from among you" or to "take aside to do a special task."
* To "be set apart" could be translated as "be separated (from)" or "be specially appointed (for)."

(See also: [holy](#en-holy), [sanctify](#en-sanctify), [appoint](#en-appoint))

#### Bible References:

* Ephesians 03:17-19
* Exodus 31:12-15
* Judges 17:12
* Numbers 03:11-13
* Philippians 01:1-2
* Romans 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2764, H4390, H5144, H5674, H6395, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G2564

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be distinct, making a distinction, set ... apart, sets ... apart, treat ... differently, treating ... differently

### shadow

#### Related Ideas:

overshadow, shade

#### Definition:

The word "shadow" literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. The shadow has a shape similar to the shape of the object that blocks the light.

* The word "overshadow" means to block the light from above and cause a shadow to appear on something.
* The word "shade" means a dark area where the sunlight is blocked, perhaps by a cloud or a trees.

The word "shadow" also has several figurative meanings.

* The "shadow of death" means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
* Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
* Sometimes "shadow" is used as another word for "darkness."
* The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God's wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate "shadow" in these contexts could include "shade" or "safety" or "protection."
* It is best to translate "shadow" literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](#en-darkness), [light](#en-light))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 20:09
* Genesis 19:08
* Isaiah 30:02
* Jeremiah 06:04
* Psalms 017:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2927, H6738, H6751, H6752, H6754, H6757, G644, G1982, G2683, G4639

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

overshadow, overshadowed, shade, shadow, shadows

### sheep

#### Related Ideas:

ewe, ram, sheepfold, sheepshearer, sheepskin

#### Definition:

A "sheep" is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a "ram." A female sheep is called a "ewe." The plural of "sheep" is also "sheep."

* A baby sheep is called a "lamb."
* The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
* People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
* Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
* In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.
* A "sheepfold" is a place where sheep are kept safe. It has a fence or wall around it to keep the sheep from wandering out and to keep dangerous animals from getting in.
* A "sheepshearer" is a person who cuts the wool of sheep.

(See also: [Israel](#en-Israel), [lamb](#en-lamb), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice), [shepherd](#en-shepherd))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:32
* Genesis 30:32
* John 02:14
* Luke 15:05
* Mark 06:34
* Matthew 09:36
* Matthew 10:06
* Matthew 12:12
* Matthew 25:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ewe, ewes, ram, ram's, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### shepherd

#### Definition:

* A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb to "shepherd" means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water.

Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people's spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.

* In the Old Testament, God was called the "shepherd" of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them.
* David was a shepherd who looked after sheep. God made David king over Israel to take care of the people of Israel in some ways like a shepherd takes care of sheep.
* In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the "good shepherd." The apostle Peter also referred to Jesus as "the Chief Shepherd" over the Church.
* Also, in the New Testament, the term "shepherd" was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as "pastor" is the same word that is translated as "shepherd." The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

#### Translation Suggestions

* When used literally, the action "shepherd" could be translated as "take care of sheep" or "watch over sheep."
* The person "shepherd" could be translated as "person who takes care of sheep" or "sheep tender" or "sheep caregiver."
* When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include "spiritual shepherd" or "spiritual leader" or "one who is like a shepherd" or "one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep" or "one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep" or "one who takes care of God's sheep."
* In some contexts, "shepherd" could be translated as "leader" or "guide" or "caregiver."
* The spiritual expression to "shepherd" could be translated as to "take care of" or to "spiritually nourish" or to "guide and teach" or to "lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)."
* In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for "shepherd" in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believe](#en-believe), [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [church](#en-church), [Moses](#en-Moses), [pastor](#en-pastor), [sheep](#en-sheep), [spirit](#en-spirit))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 49:24
* Luke 02:09
* Mark 06:34
* Mark 14:26-27
* Matthew 02:06
* Matthew 09:36
* Matthew 25:32
* Matthew 26:31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G750, G4165, G4166

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chief shepherd, herdsman, herdsmen, keeper, shepherd, shepherd's, shepherded, shepherding, shepherds

### shield

#### Related Ideas:

shielded

#### Definition:

A shield was an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. To "shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

* Shields were often circular or oval, were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal, andt were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
* Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: Metaphor)
* Paul talked about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that having faith in Jesus and living out that faith in obedience to God will protect believers from the spiritual attacks of Satan.

(See also: [faith](#en-faith), [obey](#en-obey), [Satan](#en-Satan), [spirit](#en-spirit))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 14:26
* 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
* 2 Samuel 22:36
* Deuteronomy 33:29
* Psalms 018:35

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2653, H4043, H5437, H5526, H6793, H7982, G2375

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

shield, shielded, shields

### sign

#### Related Ideas:

demonstration, evidence, mark, marker, omen, proof, remind, reminder, signal

#### Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

"Reminders" are signs that "remind" people by helping them remember something, often something that was promised:

The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.

God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.

Signs can reveal or point to something:

An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.

Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.

Signs can prove that something is true:

* The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.

The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

A "signal flag" is a flag that a king would raise as a sign so that people could see it and come to him or go into battle.

* An "omen" is an event that people think tells that something else will happen in the future.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on its context, "sign" could also be translated as "signal" or "symbol" or "mark" or "evidence" or "proof" or "gesture."
* To "make signs with the hands" could also be translated as "motion with the hands" or "gesture with the hands" or "make gestures."
* In some languages, there may be one word for a "sign" that proves something and a different word for a "sign" that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#en-miracle), [apostle](#en-apostle), [Christ](#en-Christ), [covenant](#en-covenant), [circumcise](#en-circumcise))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:18-19
* Exodus 04:8-9
* Exodus 31:12-15
* Genesis 01:14
* Genesis 09:12
* John 02:18
* Luke 02:12
* Mark 08:12
* Psalms 089:5-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H226, H852, H926, H2368, H2865, H3824, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5162, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, H7725, H8074, H8540, G364, G1271, G1382, G1730, G1732, G1770, G1839, G2298, G4102, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5059, H5172, G5280, G5480, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

demonstration, evidence, mark, marker, omen, omens, proof, remind, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, reminds, sign, signal, signal flag, signs

### silver

#### Related Ideas:

money

#### Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

* The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
* Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple.The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
* In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
* Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
* Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#en-tabernacle), [temple](#en-temple))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
* 1 Samuel 02:36
* 2 Kings 25:13-15
* Acts 03:06
* Matthew 26:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

money, silver

### sin

#### Related Ideas:

sinful, sinner

#### Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

* Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
* Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
* Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
* A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
* Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
* The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
* To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
* Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebelling against God."
* Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
* The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
* Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
* In expressions like "slaves to sin" or "ruled by sin," the term "sin" could be translated as "disobedience" or "evil desires and actions."
* Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
* The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: [disobey](#en-disobey), [evil](#en-evil), [flesh](#en-flesh), [tax](#en-tax))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
* 1 John 01:10
* 1 John 02:02
* 2 Samuel 07:12-14
* Acts 03:19
* Daniel 09:24
* Genesis 04:07
* Hebrews 12:02
* Isaiah 53:11
* Jeremiah 18:23
* Leviticus 04:14
* Luke 15:18
* Matthew 12:31
* Romans 06:23
* Romans 08:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H6588, H7683, H7686, G93, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sin, sinful, sinned, sinner, sinners, sinning, sins

### sister

#### Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person’s sister or the sister of that other person.

* In the New Testament, "sister" is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
* Sometimes the phrase "brothers and sisters" is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
* In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, "sister" refers to a female lover or wife.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
* Other ways to translate this could include "sister in Christ" or "spiritual sister" or "woman who believes in Jesus" or "fellow woman believer."
* If possible, it is best to use a family term.
* If the language has a feminine form for "believer," this may be a possible way to translate this term.
* When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of "loved one" or "dear one."

(See also: [brother](#en-brother) [in Christ](#en-in Christ), [spirit](#en-spirit))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
* Deuteronomy 27:22
* Philemon 01:02
* Romans 16:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H269, G27, G79

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sister, sister's, sisters, sisters'

### skull

#### Related Ideas:

scalp

#### Definition:

The term "skull" refers to the bony, skeletal structure of the head of a person or animal.

* Sometimes the term "skull" means "head," as in the phrase "shave your skull."
* The term "Place of the Skull" was another name for Golgotha, where Jesus was crucified.
* This term could also be translated as "head" or "head bone."
* The "scalp" is the skin that covers the top of the skull.

(See also: [crucify](#en-crucify), [Golgotha](#en-Golgotha))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 09:35-37
* Jeremiah 02:16
* John 19:17
* Matthew 27:32-34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1538, H6936, H7218, G2898

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

scalps, skull, skulls

### slaughter

#### Definition:

The term "slaughter" refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called "slaughter."

* When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
* The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
* 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
* "Weapons of slaughter" could be translated as "weapons for killing."
* The expression "the slaughter was very great" could be translated as "a large number were killed" or "the number of deaths was very great" or "a terribly high number of people died."
* Other ways to translate "slaughter" could include "kill" or "slay" or "killing."

(See also: [angel](#en-angel), [cow](#en-cow), [disobey](#en-disobey), [Ezekiel](#en-Ezekiel), [servant](#en-servant), [slain](#en-slain))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 21:10-11
* Hebrews 07:01
* Isaiah 34:02
* Jeremiah 25:34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G2871, G4967, G4969

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

slaughter, slaughtered, slaughtering, slaughters

### son

#### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

* "Son" was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
* The term "son" can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
* Sometimes "sons of God" was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
* God called Israel his "firstborn son." This refers to God's choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God's message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
* The phrase "son of" often has the figurative meaning "person having the characteristics of." Examples of this include "sons of the light," "sons of disobedience," "a son of peace," and "sons of thunder."
* The phrase "son of" is also used to tell who a person's father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
* Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
* When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
* When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term "descendant" could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the "descendant of David" or in genealogies where sometimes "son" referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
* Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.
* The figurative expression "son of" could also be translated as "someone who has the characteristics of" or "someone who is like" or "someone who has" or "someone who acts like."

(See also: [Azariah](#en-Azariah), [descendant](#en-descendant), [father](#en-father), [firstborn](#en-firstborn), [Son of God](#en-Son of God), [sons of God](#en-sons of God))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:15
* 1 Kings 13:02
* 1 Thessalonians 05:05
* Galatians 04:07
* Hosea 11:01
* Isaiah 09:06
* Matthew 03:17
* Matthew 05:09
* Matthew 08:12
* Nehemiah 10:28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1247, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

son, son's, sons

### soul

#### Related Ideas:

person

#### Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person. It is the part of a person that continues living after the body dies.

* The terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
* When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
* The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means,"I am tired."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
* In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
* Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
* Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
* In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: [spirit](#en-spirit))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 02:08
* Acts 02:27-28
* Acts 02:41
* Genesis 49:06
* Isaiah 53:10-11
* James 01:21
* Jeremiah 06:16-19
* Jonah 02:7-8
* Luke 01:47
* Matthew 22:37
* Psalms 019:07
* Revelation 20:4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5315, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

person, persons, soul, souls

### sow

#### Related Ideas:

plant, plantation, transplanted

#### Definition:

A "plant" is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To "plant" something is to put it in the ground so that it can grow. To "sow" is to scatter seeds on the ground so they can go into the ground and grow. A "sower" is a person who sows seeds.

* Sometimes people plant seeds or plants by making holes in the soil and placing seeds or a plant in each hole.
* When someone plants seeds by sowing, he takes handfuls of seeds and scatters them on the ground.
* The term "sow" can be used figuratively, as in "a person will reap what he sows." This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, and if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.
* A "plantation" is a large field where people plant crops.
* To "transplant" something is to move it from one place and plant it in another place.

#### Translations Suggestions

* The term "sow" could be translated as "plant" if that word can include planting seeds by scattering them.
* The term "sower" could be translated as "planter" or "farmer" or "person who scatters seeds."
* The expression "a person reaps what he sows" could be translated as "just as a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, a person's good actions bring good results and a person's evil actions bring evil results."

(See also: [evil](#en-evil), [good](#en-good), [reap](#en-reap))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 06:08
* Luke 08:05
* Matthew 06:25-26
* Matthew 13:04
* Matthew 13:19
* Matthew 25:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H3759, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G4687, G4703, G5452

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

place ... planted, plant, plantation, planted, planting, plants, replanted, sow, sowed, sowing, sown, sows, transplanted

### spear

#### Related Ideas:

javelin, spearmen

#### Definition:

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

* Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
* A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
* Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
* Similar weapons are the "javelin" or "lance." A javelin is a light spear that is thrown.
* Make sure that the translation of "spear" is different from the translation of "sword," which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: [prey](#en-prey), [Rome](#en-Rome), [sword](#en-sword), [warrior](#en-warrior))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 13:19-21
* 2 Samuel 21:19
* Nehemiah 04:12-14
* Psalm 035:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1265, H2595, H3591, H4294, H6767, H7013, H7420, G3057

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

javelin, spear, spearmen, spears

### spirit

#### Related Ideas:

ghost, spiritual

#### Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

* The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
* A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
* In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
* In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
* For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
* God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
* Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
* The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
* Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
* In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
* Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
* The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
* Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
* The figurative expression "spiritual milk" could also be translated as "basic teachings from God" or "God's teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does)."
* The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
* The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: [angel](#en-angel), [demon](#en-demon), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [soul](#en-soul), [divination](#en-divination))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:05
* 1 John 04:03
* 1 Thessalonians 05:23
* Acts 05:09
* Colossians 01:09
* Ephesians 04:23
* Genesis 07:21-22
* Isaiah 04:04
* Mark 01:23-26
* Matthew 26:41
* Philippians 01:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H178, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G4861, G5326, G5427

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ghost, spirit, spirits, spiritual, spiritually

### staff

#### Related Ideas:

club, walking stick

#### Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

* When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
* God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
* Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
* The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.
* A club is a thick, heavy stick used as a weapon to beat people.

(See also: [Pharaoh](#en-Pharaoh), [power](#en-power), [sheep](#en-sheep), [shepherd](#en-shepherd))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 04:1-3
* Exodus 07:09
* Luke 09:03
* Mark 06:7-9
* Matthew 10:8-10
* Matthew 27:29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6418, H7626, G2563, G3586, G4464

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clubs, staff, staffs, walking stick, walking sticks

### stone

#### Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To "stone" someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A "stoning" is an event in which someone was stoned.

* In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
* God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
* In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
* Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
* In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](#en-adultery), [commit](#en-commit), [crime](#en-crime), [death](#en-death), [Lystra](#en-Lystra), [testimony](#en-testimony))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:57-58
* Acts 07:59-60
* Acts 14:05
* Acts 14:19-20
* John 08:4-6
* Luke 13:34
* Luke 20:06
* Matthew 23:37-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H68, H69, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H4676, H4678, H5619, H6443, H6697, H6872, H7275, H7671, G2642, G2991, G3034, G3035, G3036, G3037, G4348, G5586

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

stone, stoned, stones, stoning

### strength

#### Related Ideas:

strengthen, strong, stronger, strongest

#### Definitions:

The term "strength" refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To "strengthen" someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

* "Strength" can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
* A person has "strength of will" if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
* One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his "strength" because God helped him to be strong.
* If a physical structure like a wall or building is being "strengthened," people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

#### Translation Suggestions

* In general, the term "strengthen" can be translated as "cause to be strong" or "make more powerful."
* In a spiritual sense, the phrase "strengthen your brothers" could also be translated as "encourage your brothers" or "help your brothers to persevere."

The following examples show the meaning of these terms in longer expressions and how they can be translated.

"puts strength on me like a belt" means "causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist."

* "in quietness and trust will be your strength" means "acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong."
* "will renew their strength" means "will become stronger again."
* "by my strength and by my wisdom I acted" means "I have done all this because I am so strong and wise."
* "strengthen the wall" means "reinforce the wall" or "rebuild the wall."
* "I will strengthen you" means "I will cause you to be strong"
* "in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength" means "Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us."
* "the rock of your strength" means "the faithful one who makes you strong"
* "with the saving strength of his right hand" means "he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand."
* "of little strength" means "not very strong" or "weak."
* "with all my strength" means "using my best efforts" or "strongly and completely."

(See also: [faithful](#en-faithful), [persevere](#en-persevere), [right hand](#en-right hand), [save](#en-save))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 18:19-21
* 2 Peter 02:11
* Luke 10:27
* Psalm 021:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1368, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2389, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4392, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5794, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6099, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8623, H8624, H8631, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1415, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

become strong, made ... strong, made ... stronger, make ... strong, makes ... strong, strength, strengthen, strengthened, strengthening, strengthens, strong, stronger, strongest

### strong drink

#### Definition:

The term "strong drink" refers to drinks that have been fermented and have alcohol in them.

* Alcoholic drinks are made from either grain or fruit and have undergone fermentation.
* Kinds of "strong drink" include grape wine, palm wine, beer, and apple cider. Distilled alcoholic drinks had not been invented yet. In the Bible, grape wine was the most frequently mentioned strong drink.
* Priests and anyone who took a special vow such as the "Nazirite vow" were not permitted to drink fermented drinks.
* This term could also be translated as "fermented drink" or "alcoholic drink."

(See also: [grape](#en-grape), [Nazirite](#en-Nazirite), [vow](#en-vow), [wine](#en-wine))

#### Bible References:

* Isaiah 05:11-12
* Leviticus 10:09
* Luke 01:14-15
* Numbers 06:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5435, H7941, H8248, G4608

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

strong drink, strong drinks

### stronghold

#### Related Ideas:

battlement, city wall, fortification, fortified, fortress

#### Definition:

The terms "stronghold" and "fortress" both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term "fortified" describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

* Often, strongholds and fortresses were manmade structures with defensive walls. They could also have been places with natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
* People fortified strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that made it difficult for an enemy to break through.
* "Stronghold" or "fortress" could be translated as "securely strong place" or "strongly protected place."
* The term "fortified city" could be translated as "securely protected city" or "strongly built city."
* These ideas were also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him.
* Another figurative meaning for the term "stronghold" referred to something that someone wrongly trusted in for security, such as a false god or other thing that was worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as "false strongholds."
* This term should be translated differently from "refuge," which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.
* A "city wall" was tall, strong wall around a city that was meant to keep enemies out of the city.
* A "battlement" is a low wall along the top of a city wall that soldiers could hide behind and shoot through at their enemies below.

(See also: [god](#en-god), [god](#en-god), [refuge](#en-refuge), [Yahweh](#en-Yahweh))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 10:04
* 2 Kings 08:10-12
* 2 Samuel 05:8-10
* Acts 21:35
* Habakkuk 01:10-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H759, H1001, H1002, H1003, H1219, H1225, H2388, H4013, H4026, H4581, H4526, H4679, H4685, H4686, H4692, H4694, H4869, H5794, H5797, H5800, H6438, H7682, G3794, G3925

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

battlements, city wall, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses, stronghold, strongholds

### sword

#### Related Ideas:

dagger, swordsmen

#### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

* In ancient times the length of a sword’s blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
* Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
* Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
* Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.
* A "dagger" is a short sword used to stab people who are close by.

#### Translation Suggestions

* A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain.
* One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
* Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
* If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
* A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [James (brother of Jesus)](../names/jamesbrotherofjesus.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [tongue](#en-tongue), [word of God](#en-word of God))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 12:02
* Genesis 27:40
* Genesis 34:25
* Luke 02:33-35
* Luke 21:24
* Matthew 10:34
* Matthew 26:55
* Revelation 01:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H19, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dagger, sword, swords, swordsmen

### teach

#### Related Ideas:

educated, teaching, untaught

#### Definition:

To "teach" someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to "provide information" in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s "teaching" is or his "teachings" are what he has taught.

* A "teacher" is someone who teaches. The past action of "teach" is "taught."
* When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
* Jesus' disciples called him "Teacher" as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
* The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
* The phrase "what you have been taught" could also be translated as, "what these people have taught you" or "what God has taught you," depending on the context.
* Other ways to translate "teach" could include "tell" or "explain" or "instruct."
* Often this term can be translated as "teaching people about God."
* A person who is "educated" has been taught formally.
* A person who is "untaught" has not been taught.
* A "teaching" is the information that someone teaches.

(See also: [instruct](#en-instruct), [teacher](#en-teacher), [word of God](#en-word of God))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 01:03
* Acts 02:40-42
* John 07:14
* Luke 04:31
* Matthew 04:23
* Psalms 032:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H502, H995, H2094, H2449, H2596, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, H8451, G1317, G1319, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G2312, G2567, G3811

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

educated, taught, teach, teaches, teaching, teachings, untaught

### tent

#### Related Ideas:

camp, encamp, tentmaker

#### Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

* Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
* For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constucted from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
* The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
* The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
* When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
* The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies."
* To "camp" is to sleep in tents or other temporary shelters.
* To "encamp" is for an army to set up camp near a place they will attack.

(See also: [Abraham](#en-Abraham), [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [curtain](#en-curtain), [Paul](#en-Paul), [Sinai](#en-Sinai), [tabernacle](#en-tabernacle), [tent of meeting](#en-tent of meeting))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 05:10
* Daniel 11:45
* Exodus 16:18
* Genesis 12:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H167, H168, H2918, H3407, H4908, H6898, G3925, G4633, G4636

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

camp, camped, camping, camps, encamp, encamped, encampments, encamps, tent, tentmakers, tents

### test

#### Related Ideas:

put to the test

#### Definition:

The term "test" refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

* God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
* God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
* Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
* To "put to the test" can mean, "challenge something or someone to prove its value."
* In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
* Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term to "test" could also be translated as, to "challenge" or to "cause to experience difficulties" or to "prove."
* Ways to translate "a test" could be, "a challenge" or "a difficult experience."
* To "put to the test" could be translated as to "test" or to "set up a challenge" or to "force to prove oneself."
* In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, "trying to force God to prove his love."
* In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term "test" can mean "tempt."

(See also: [tempt](#en-tempt))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:01
* 1 Thessalonians 05:21
* Acts 15:10
* Genesis 22:01
* Isaiah 07:13
* James 01:12
* Lamentations 03:40-43
* Malachi 03:10
* Philippians 01:10
* Psalm 026:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1305, H2713, H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G350, G1252, G1263, G1381, G1382, G1598, G1957, G2983, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G3985, G3986, G4451, G4828

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

put ... to the test, test, tested, testing, tests

### the sea

#### Facts:

In the Bible, the "Great Sea" or "western sea" refers to what is now called the "Mediterranean Sea," which was the largest body of water known to the people of Bible times.

* The Mediterranean Sea is bordered by : Israel (east), Europe (north and west), and Africa (south).
* This sea was very important in ancient times for trade and travel since it bordered so many countries. Cities and people groups located on the coast of this sea were very prosperous because of how easy it was to access goods from other countries by boat.
* Since the Great Sea was located to the west of Israel, it was sometimes referred to as the "western sea."

(See also: [Israel](#en-Israel), [people group](#en-people group), [prosper](#en-prosper))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 47:15-17
* Ezekiel 47:18-20
* Joshua 15:3-4
* Numbers 13:27-29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H314, H1419, H3220

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea

### thorn

#### Related Ideas:

thistle, thornbush

#### Definitions:

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

* A "thorn" is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A "thornbush" is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
* A "thistle" is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
* Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
* A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus' head before he was crucified.
* If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: [crown](#en-crown), [fruit](#en-fruit), [spirit](#en-spirit))

#### Bible References:

* Hebrews 06:7-8
* Matthew 13:07
* Matthew 13:22
* Numbers 33:55

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H329, H1863, H2312, H2336, H4534, H5285, H5518, H5544, H6791, H6796, H6975, H7063, H7898, G173, G174, G4647, G5146

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

thistle, thistles, thorn, thorn hedge, thornbush, thornbushes, thorns

### thresh

#### Related Ideas:

beat out

#### Definition:

The terms "thresh" and "threshing" refer to the first part of the process of separating wheat grain from the rest of the wheat plant.

* Threshing the wheat plant loosens the grain from the straw and the chaff. Afterwards the grain is "winnowed" to completely separate the grain from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
* In Bible times, a "threshing floor" was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
* A "threshing cart" or "threshing wheel" was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
* A "threshing sledge" or "threshing board" was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.
* To "beat out" is to separate the grain from the straw either by spreading the stalks on the ground and hitting them with a stick or board or by holding the base of a bundle of stalks and hitting the heads on a hard surface.

(See also: [chaff](#en-chaff), [grain](#en-grain), [winnow](#en-winnow))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
* 2 Kings 13:07
* 2 Samuel 24:16
* Daniel 02:35
* Luke 03:17
* Matthew 03:12
* Ruth 03:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, H2742, G248

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

beat ... out, beaten ... out, floors for threshing, thresh, threshed, threshes, threshing, threshing floor, threshing sledges

### threshold

#### Related Ideas:

doorway

#### Definition:

The term "threshold" refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

* Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
* Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
* This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
* If there is no term for this, "threshold" could also be translated as "doorway" or "opening" or "entranceway," depending on the context.

(See also: [gate](#en-gate), [tent](#en-tent))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 09:17-19
* Ezekiel 09:03
* Isaiah 06:04
* Proverbs 17:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4670, H5592

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

doorways, threshold, thresholds

### time

#### Definitions:

In the Bible the term "time" was often used to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to "age" or "epoch" or "season."

* In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a "time" of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
* In the phrase "time, times, and half a time" the term "time" means "year." This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
* "Time" can mean "occasion" in a phrase like "third time." The phrase "many times" can mean "on many occasions."
* To be "on time" means to do something when expected or needed, not late.
* Depending on the context, the term "time" could be translated as, "season" or "time period" or "moment" or "event" or "occurrence."

(See also: [age](#en-age), [tribulation](#en-tribulation))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:07
* Daniel 12:1-2
* Mark 11:11
* Matthew 08:29
* Psalms 068:28-29
* Revelation 14:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H116, H227, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H4592, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8160, H8462, H8543, G744, G530, G1074, G1208, G1441, G1597, G1626, G2034, G2119, G2121, G2250, G2540, G3461, G3568, G3764, G3819, G3999, G4181, G4183, G4218, G4287, G4340, G4455, G5151, G5305, G5550, G5551, G5610

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

time, times

### tomb

#### Related Ideas:

burial place, grave, gravediggers

#### Definition:

The terms "tomb" and "grave" refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A "burial place" is a more general term that also refers to this.

* The Jews buried bodies in natural caves, in caves that they dug in the side of a hill, or in holes that they dug in the ground.
* In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
* If in the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include "cave" or "hole in the side of a hill."
* A gravedigger is a person who digs a grave to put a dead body in it.
* The phrase "the grave" is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#en-bury), [death](#en-death))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:29-31
* Genesis 23:06
* Genesis 50:05
* John 19:41
* Luke 23:53
* Mark 05:1-2
* Matthew 27:53
* Romans 03:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

burial place, grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs

### trample

#### Related Ideas:

tread, trod, trodden

#### Definition:

To "tread" on something is to step on it. To "trample" something is to step on it and smash it with the feet.

* An example of "trampling" is the smashing down of grass by the feet of people running in a field.
* In ancient times, wine was sometimes made by treading on grapes, or trampling grapes, to remove the juice from them.
* The term "trample" is also used figuratively in the Bible to mean "destroy" or "defeat" or "humiliate."
* Other ways that "trample" could be translated include "crush with the feet" or "smash down with the feet" or "stomp on and crush" or "smash into the ground."

(See also: [grape](#en-grape), [humiliate](#en-humiliate), [punish](#en-punish), [rebel](#en-rebel), [thresh](#en-thresh), [wine](#en-wine))

#### Bible References:

* Hebrews 10:29
* Psalms 007:5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H947, H1758, H1792, H1869, H3381, H4001, H4823, H5674, H1790, H7429, H7512, H7533, G2662, G3961

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

trample, trample over, trampled, tramples, trampling, trampling place, tread, treader, treading down, trod, trodden

### tremble

#### Related Ideas:

shake

#### Definition:

To "tremble" means to shake or quiver out of fear or extreme distress.

* This term is also used figuratively to mean "be very afraid."
* Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to "tremble." It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
* The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
* This term could be translated as "be afraid" or "fear God" or "shake," depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#en-earth), [fear](#en-fear), [lord](#en-lord))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 07:15
* 2 Samuel 22:44-46
* Acts 16:29-31
* Jeremiah 05:22
* Luke 08:47

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5425, H5568, H6206, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, G1790, G4579, G5141, G5156, G5425

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

shake, shakes, shook, tremble, trembled, trembles, trembling

### tribe

#### Related Ideas:

tribal

#### Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

* People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
* In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
* A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#en-clan), [nation](#en-nation), [people group](#en-people group), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:19
* 2 Kings 17:16-18
* Genesis 25:16
* Genesis 49:17
* Luke 02:36-38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H523, H4294, H4940, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tribal, tribe, tribes

### tribute

#### Definition:

The term "tribute" refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and for good relations between their nations.

* A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.
* In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers sometimes paid a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
* Often the tribute would include things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "tribute" could be translated as "official gifts" or "special tax" or "required payment."

(See also: [gold](#en-gold), [king](#en-king), [ruler](#en-ruler), [tax](#en-tax))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:1-2
* 2 Chronicles 09:22-24
* 2 Kings 17:03
* Luke 23:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H814, H1093, H4061, H4503, H4530, H4853, H4864, H6066, H7862, G5411

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tribute

### trouble

#### Related Ideas:

troublesome

#### Definition:

A "trouble" is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To "trouble" someone means to "bother" that person or to cause him distress. Something that is "troubling" causes people to feel distressed. Someone who is troublesome causes problems. To be "troubled" means to feel upset or anxious or distressed about something.

A "tumult" is a group of people making much noise because they are troubled or unhappy.

* Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
* In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
* The Old Testament use of "trouble" also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "trouble" or "troubles" could also be translated as "danger" or "painful things that happen" or "persecution" or "difficult experiences" or "distress."
* The term "troubled" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "undergoing distress" or "feeling terrible distress" or "worried" or "anxious" or "distressed" or "terrified" or "disturbed."
* "Don't trouble her" could also be translated as "don't bother her" or "don't criticize her."
* The phrase "day of trouble" or "times of trouble" could also be translated as "when you experience distress" or " when difficult things happen to you" or "when God causes distressing things to happen."
* Ways to translate "make trouble" or "bring trouble" could include "cause distressing things to happen" or "cause difficulties" or "make them experience very difficult things."

(See also: [afflict](#en-afflict), [persecute](#en-persecute))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:18-19
* 2 Chronicles 25:19
* Luke 24:38
* Matthew 24:06
* Matthew 26:36-38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1672, H2196, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6087, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G318, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G2906, G3636, G3926, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

trouble, troubled, troubles, troublesome, troubling

### true

#### Related Ideas:

certain, certainly, certainty, indeed, real, sure, surely, truly, truth, truthful, truthfulness, truths

#### Definition:

The term "truth" refers to one or more concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said. Such concepts are said to be "true."

* True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
* The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
* To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
* The word "truly" is used to emphasize what the speaker is saying. "Truly" is sometimes translated as "surely" or "certainly."
* Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
* Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
* God's word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.
* The word "certainty" refers to a truth about which one can be certain that it is true.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
* Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
* The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
* The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
* To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."

(See also: [believe](#en-believe), [faithful](#en-faithful), [fulfill](#en-fulfill), [obey](#en-obey), [prophet](#en-prophet), [understand](#en-understand))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
* 1 John 01:5-7
* 1 John 02:08
* 3 John 01:08
* Acts 26:24-26
* Colossians 01:06
* Genesis 47:29-31
* James 01:18
* James 03:14
* James 05:19
* Jeremiah 04:02
* John 01:9
* John 01:16-18
* John 01:51
* John 03:31-33
* Joshua 07:19-21
* Lamentations 05:19-22
* Matthew 08:10
* Matthew 12:17
* Psalm 026:1-3
* Revelation 01:19-20
* Revelation 15:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H530, H543, H551, H571, H3330, H5229, H6664, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G281, G803, G804, G1103, G3483, G4103, G4137, G5198, G5199

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

certainly, certainty, for certain, indeed, real, sure, surely, true, truly, truth, truthful, truthfulness, truths

### trumpet

#### Related Ideas:

trumpet call, trumpeter

#### Definition:

The term "trumpet" refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

* A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
* Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
* The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#en-angel), [assembly](#en-assembly), [earth](#en-earth), [horn](#en-horn), [Israel](#en-Israel), [wrath](#en-wrath))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
* 2 Kings 09:13
* Exodus 19:12-13
* Hebrews 12:19
* Matthew 06:02
* Matthew 24:31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

trumpet, trumpet call, trumpet's, trumpeters, trumpets

### trust

#### Related Ideas:

entrust, trustworthiness, trustworthy

#### Definition:

To "trust" something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called "trust." A "trustworthy" person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of "trustworthiness."

* Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
* Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
* To "trust in" Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
* A "trustworthy saying" refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.
* For one person to "entrust" something to a second person is for the first person to give that thing to the second person and expect that the second person will do what the first person tells him to do.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "trust" could include "believe" or "have faith" or "have confidence" or "depend on."
* The phrase "put your trust in" is very similar in meaning to "trust in."
* The term "trustworthy" could be translated as "dependable" or "reliable" or "can always be trusted."

(See also: [believe](#en-believe), [confidence](#en-confidence), [faith](#en-faith), [faithful](#en-faithful), [true](#en-true))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
* 1 Timothy 04:09
* Hosea 10:12-13
* Isaiah 31:1-2
* Nehemiah 13:13
* Psalm 031:05
* Titus 03:8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H530, H539, H540, H571, H982, H1556, H2620, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3860, G3982, G4100, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

entrust, entrusted, entrusting, trust, trusted, trusting, trusts, trustworthiness, trustworthy

### turn

#### Related Ideas:

apostasy, apostate

#### Definition:

To "turn" means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

* The term "turn" can also mean "turn around" to look behind or to face a different direction.
* To "turn back" or "turn away" means to "go back" or "go away" or "cause to go away."
* To "turn away from" something can mean either to stop doing it or to not start doing it.
* To "turn away from" someone means either to refuse to have anything to do with him or to reject him.
* To "turn toward" someone means to look directly at that person.
* To "turn and leave" or "turn his back to leave" means to "go away."
* To "turn back to" means to "start doing something again."
* To "turn away from" means to "stop doing something."
* To "avoid" something is to stay away from it.
* "Apostasy" is the act of turning away from God.
* An "act of apostasy" is an action that someone does to show that he no longer wants to obey God or because he no longer obeys God.
* The term "apostate" describes people who have turned away from God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "turn" can be translated as "change direction" or "go" or "move."
* In some contexts, "turn" could be translated as "cause" (someone) to do something. To "turn (someone) away from" could be translated as "cause (someone) to go away" or "cause (someone) to stop."
* The phrase "turn away from God" could be translated as "stop worshiping God."
* The phrase "turn back to God" could be translated as "start worshiping God again."
* When enemies "turn back," it means they "retreat." To "turn back the enemy" means to "cause the enemy to retreat."
* Used figuratively, when Israel "turned to" false gods, they "started to worship" them. When they "turned away" from idols, they "stopped worshiping" them.
* When God "turned away from" his rebellious people, he "stopped protecting" or "stopped helping" them.
* The phrase "turn the hearts of the fathers to their children" could be translated as "cause fathers to care for their children again."
* The expression "turn my honor into shame" could be translated as "cause my honor to become shame" or "dishonor me so that I am shamed" or "shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me."
* "I will turn your cities into ruin" could be translated as "I will cause your cities to be destroyed" or "I will cause enemies to destroy your cities."
* The phrase "turn into" could be translated as "become." When Moses' rod "turned into" a snake, it "became" a snake." It could also be translated as "changed into."

(See also: [god](#en-god), [leper](#en-leper), [worship](#en-worship))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 11:02
* Acts 07:42
* Acts 11:21
* Jeremiah 36:1-3
* Luke 01:17
* Malachi 04:06
* Revelation 11:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3363, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5157, G5290

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts of apostasy, apostasy, apostate, turn, turn ... away, turned, turned ... away, turned ... away ... in disgust, turned ... back, turning, turning ... away, turns, turns ... away, turns ... away from

### unleavened bread

#### Definition:

The term "unleavened bread" refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

* When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
* Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, "unleavened bread" represents the removal of sin from a person's life in order to live in a way that honors God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate this term could include "bread with no yeast" or "flat bread that did not rise."
* Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term "yeast, leaven."
* In some contexts, the term "unleavened bread" refers to the "Feast of Unleavened Bread" and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#en-bread), [Egypt](#en-Egypt), [feast](#en-feast), [Passover](#en-Passover), [servant](#en-servant), [sin](#en-sin), [yeast](#en-yeast))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
* 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
* Acts 12:03
* Exodus 23:14-15
* Ezra 06:21-22
* Genesis 19:1-3
* Judges 06:21
* Leviticus 08:1-3
* Luke 22:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4682, G106

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

unleavened bread

### vine

#### Related Ideas:

grapevine

#### Definition:

The term "vine" refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word "vine" in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

* In the Bible, the word "vine" almost always means "grapevine."
* The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
* Jesus called himself the "vine" and called his people the "branches." In this context, the word "vine" could also be translated as "grapevine stem" or "grape plant stem."

(See also: [grape](#en-grape), [vineyard](#en-vineyard))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 40:09
* Genesis 49:11
* John 15:01
* Luke 22:18
* Mark 12:03
* Matthew 21:35-37

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

grapevine, vine, vines

### vineyard

#### Related Ideas:

vine grower

#### Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

* A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
* God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit.
* Vineyard could be also translated as "grapevine garden" or "grape plantation."
* A vine grower is a person who works in a vineyard.

(See also: [grape](#en-grape), [Israel](#en-Israel), [vine](#en-vine))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 09:20-21
* Luke 13:06
* Luke 20:15
* Matthew 20:02
* Matthew 21:40-41

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G290

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

vine growers, vineyard, vineyards

### virgin

#### Related Ideas:

virginity

#### Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

* The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
* Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
* Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin.
* If a person has their "virginity", it means they have never had sexual relations.

(See also: [Christ](#en-Christ), [Isaiah](#en-Isaiah), [Jesus](#en-Jesus), [Mary](#en-Mary))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 24:15-16
* Luke 01:27
* Luke 01:35
* Matthew 01:23
* Matthew 25:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1330, H1331, G3932, G3933

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

virgin, virginity, virgins

### vision

#### Definitions:

The term "vision" refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

* Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
* God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

#### Translation Suggestion

* The phrase "saw a vision" could be translated as "saw something unusual from God" or "God showed him something special."
* Some languages may not have separate words for "vision" and "dream." So a sentence such as "Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind" could be translated as something like "Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things."

(See also: [dream](#en-dream))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:10-12
* Acts 10:3-6
* Acts 10:11
* Acts 12:9-10
* Luke 01:22
* Luke 24:23
* Matthew 17:9-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2372, H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G3701, G3705, G3706

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

vision, visions

### voice

#### Related Ideas:

rumbling, sound

#### Definition:

The term “voice” refers to sound that a person makes when speaking or singing. The term "voice" is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

* God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn't have a voice in the same way a human being does.
* This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert…."
* To "hear someone's voice" could also be translated as "hear someone speaking."
* Sometimes the word "voice" isused for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the "voice" of the heavens proclaims God's mighty works. This could also be translated as "their splendor shows clearly how great God is."

(See also: [call](#en-call), [preach](#en-preach), [splendor](#en-splendor))

#### Bible References:

* John 05:36-38
* Luke 01:42
* Luke 09:35
* Matthew 03:17
* Matthew 12:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

rumblings, sound, sounds, voice, voices

### vow

#### Definition:

A vow is a promise that a person makes to God. The person promises to do a certain thing in order to specially honor God or to show devotion to him.

* After a person makes a vow, he is obligated to fulfill that vow.
* The Bible teaches that a person may be judged by God if he doesn't keep his vow.
* Sometimes a person may ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow.
* But God is not required to fulfill a request that a person asks for in his vow.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "vow" could be translated as "solemn promise" or "promise made to God."
* A vow is a special kind of oath that is made to God.

(See also: [promise](#en-promise), [oath](#en-oath))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 07:27-28
* Acts 21:23
* Genesis 28:21
* Genesis 31:12-13
* Jonah 01:14-16
* Jonah 02:9-10
* Proverbs 07:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5087, H5088, G2171

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

vow, vowed, vows

### walk

#### Definition:

The term "walk" is often used in a figurative sense to mean "live."

* "Enoch walked with God" means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
* To "walk by the Spirit" means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
* To "walk in" God's commands or God's ways means to "live in obedience to" his commands, that is, to "obey his commands" or "do his will."
* When God says he will "walk among" his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
* To "walk contrary to" means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
* To "walk after" means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate "walk" literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
* Otherwise, figurative uses of "walk" could also be translated by "live" or "act" or "behave."
* The phrase "walk by the Spirit" could be translated by, "live in obedience to the Holy Spirit" or "behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit" or "do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you."
* To "walk in God's commands" could be translated by "live by God's commands" or "obey God's commands."
* The phrase "walked with God" could be translated as, "lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [honor](#en-honor))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 Kings 02:04
* Colossians 02:07
* Galatians 05:25
* Genesis 17:01
* Isaiah 02:05
* Jeremiah 13:10
* Micah 04:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4748

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

walk, walk around, walked, walking, walking around, walks

### warrior

#### Related Ideas:

armed group, army, footmen, garrison, host, soldier, troop

#### Definitions:

The terms "warrior" and "soldier" both can refer to someone who fights in an army. But there are also some differences.

* Usually the term "warrior" is a general, broad term to refer to a man who is gifted and courageous in battle.
* The term "soldier" more specifically refers to someone who belongs to a certain army or who is fighting in a certain battle.
* Roman soldiers in Jerusalem were there to keep order and to carry out duties such as executing prisoners. They guarded Jesus before crucifying him and some were ordered to stand guard at his tomb.
* The translator should consider whether there are two words in the project language for "warrior" and "soldier" that also differ in meaning and use.
* An army is a large organized group of people who are trained to fight against the armies of other countries or kingdoms.
* The phrase "armed groups" refers to the tribes of Israel which were organized in fighting groups as they left Egypt.
* The term "footmen" refers to soldiers who march. They do not ride on a horse or in a chariot.
* A "garrison" is either a fort in which soldiers are stationed or a group of soldiers who are stationed in the fort.
* The term "host" can refer to an army or any very large group of people.
* A "troop" is a large group of soldiers.

These ideas can also be used in figurative ways. \* Yahweh is figuratively described as a "warrior." \* The "host of heaven" is a metaphor that sees the stars in the sky as an army that rivals the army of Yahweh of hosts.

(See also: [courage](#en-courage), [crucify](#en-crucify), [Rome](#en-Rome), [tomb](#en-tomb), [Yahweh of hosts](#en-Yahweh of hosts))

#### Bible References:

* [1 Chronicles 21:05](rc://en/tn/help/1ch/21/05s
* Acts 21:33
* Luke 03:14
* Luke 23:11
* Matthew 08:8-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H352, H510, H1368, H1416, H1995, H2389, H2428, H2502, H3715, H3898, H4674, H5333, H5971, H6518, H6635, H6951, H7273, H7916, G3925, G4686, G4753, G4754, G4757, G4961

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

armed group, armed groups, armies, army, army's, fellow soldier, footmen, garrison, garrisons, host, hosts, soldier, soldiers, soldiers', troop, troops, warrior, warriors

### watch

#### Related Ideas:

keep watch, watch out, watchful, watchman

#### Definition:

The term "watch" means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings.

* To "keep watch" or "keep close watch" can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
* To "watch out" means to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
* To "be watchful" means to be alert and aware of what is happening.
* A "watchman" was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

These ideas can also be used figuratively.

* To "watch" or "keep watch" means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to "be ready."
* The command to "watch your life and doctrine closely" means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Other ways of translating "watch" could include "pay close attention to" or "be diligent" or "be very careful" or "be on guard."
* Other words for "watchman" are "sentry" or "guard."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:06
* Hebrews 13:17
* Jeremiah 31:4-6
* Mark 08:15
* Mark 13:33-34
* Matthew 25:10-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H821, H2370, H4931, H5027, H5234, H5341, H6486, H6485, H6822, H6836, H7181, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1983, G2334, G2657, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5426, G5438, G5442

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

keep ... watch, kept ... watch, watch, watch out, watched, watchful, watching, watchman, watchmen

### water

#### Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, "water" also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

* The term "waters" refers to bodies of water or many sources of water.
* The term "waters" can also be a general reference to a large amount of water.
* To "water" livestock and other animals means to provide water for them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
* The phrase "draw water" means "pull water up from a well with a bucket."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* "Streams of living water will flow from them" could be translated as "the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water." Instead of "blessings" the term "gifts" or "fruits" or "godly character" could be used.
* When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase "living water" could be translated as "water that gives life" or "lifegiving water." In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
* Depending on the context, the term "waters" or "many waters" could be translated as "great suffering (that surrounds you like water)" or "overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)" or "large amounts of water."

(See also: [life](#en-life), [spirit](#en-spirit), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [power](#en-power))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:36-38
* Exodus 14:21
* John 04:10
* John 04:14
* John 04:15
* Matthew 14:28-30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2222, H3384, H4325, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

water, watered, watering, waters

### well

#### Related Ideas:

cistern

#### Definition:

The terms "well" and "cistern" refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

* A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
* A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
* Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A "broken cistern" happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
* Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people's homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
* Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
* Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
* Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
* Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.
* These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "well" could include "deep water hole" or "deep hole for spring water" or "deep hole for drawing water."
* The term "cistern" could be translated as "stone water pit" or "deep and narrow pit for water" or "underground tank for holding water."

(See also: [Jeremiah](#en-Jeremiah), [prison](#en-prison), [strife](#en-strife))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:17
* 2 Samuel 17:17-18
* Genesis 16:14
* Luke 14:4-6
* Numbers 20:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H875, H953, H1360, H4002, H4599, H4726, H4841, G4077, G5421

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cistern, cisterns, well, wells

### wheat

#### Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions "grain" or "seeds," it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

* The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
* After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called "straw" and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
* After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
* People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](#en-barley), [chaff](#en-chaff), [grain](#en-grain), [seed](#en-seed), [thresh](#en-thresh), [winnow](#en-winnow))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 27:36-38
* Exodus 34:21-22
* John 12:24
* Luke 03:17
* Matthew 03:12
* Matthew 13:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1250, H2406, G4621

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

wheat

### wine

#### Related Ideas:

new wine, wineskin

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "wine" refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in "wineskins," which were containers made out of animal skin.

* The term "new wine" referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term "wine" also referred to unfermented grape juice.
* To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
* In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
* Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
* A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as "fermented grape juice" or "fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes" or "fermented fruit juice."
* Ways to translate "wineskin" could include "bag for wine" or "animal skin wine bag" or "animal skin container for wine."

(See also: [grape](#en-grape), [vine](#en-vine), [vineyard](#en-vineyard), [winepress](#en-winepress))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 05:23
* Genesis 09:21
* Genesis 49:12
* John 02:3-5
* John 02:10
* Matthew 09:17
* Matthew 11:18

smashed

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

new wine, wine, wines, wineskin, wineskins

### winepress

#### Definition:

During Bible times, a "winepress" was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

* In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
* Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
* The term "winepress" is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God's wrath being poured out on wicked people.

(See also: [grape](#en-grape), [wrath](#en-wrath))

#### Bible References:

* Isaiah 63:02
* Mark 12:01
* Matthew 21:33
* Revelation 14:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1660, H6333, G3025, G5276

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

winepress, winepresses

### wise

#### Related Ideas:

wisdom, wisely, wiser, wisest

#### Definition:

The term "wise" describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. "Wisdom" is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

* Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
* People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
* A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.
* "Sound wisdom" is wisdom that enables people who have it to succeed in doing good.
* In the Bible, the phrase "worldly wisdom" refers to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate "wise" could include "obedient to God" or "sensible and obedient" or "God-fearing."
* "Wisdom" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "wise living" or "sensible and obedient living" or "good judgment."
* It is best to translate "wise" and "wisdom" in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#en-obey), [fruit](#en-fruit))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:03
* Colossians 03:15-17
* Exodus 31:06
* Genesis 03:06
* Isaiah 19:12
* Jeremiah 18:18
* Matthew 07:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H998, H1350, H1847, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3925 H6195, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sound wisdom, wisdom, wise, wisely, wiser, wisest

### womb

#### Related Ideas:

pregnant

#### Definition:

The term "womb" refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

* This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct.
* A more modern term for womb is "uterus."
* Some languages use a word like "belly" to refer to a woman's womb or uterus.
* Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.
* A woman is pregnant" if she has a baby growing her her womb."

#### Picture showing location of a Womb:

<image: https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/w/Womb.png>

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 25:23
* Genesis 25:24-26
* Genesis 38:27-28
* Genesis 49:25
* Luke 02:21
* Luke 11:27
* Luke 23:29
* Matthew 19:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H990, H2030, H4578, H7356, H7358, G1064, G2836, G3388

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

pregnant, womb, wombs

### word

#### Definition:

A "word" refers to something that someone has said. In the Bible, it almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.

* An example of this is when the angel told Zechariah, "You did not believe my words," which means, "You did not believe what I said."
* Sometimes "word" refers to speech in general, such as "powerful in word and deed" which means "powerful in speech and behavior."
* Often in the Bible "the word" refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in "the word of God" or "the word of truth."
* A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called "the Word." For these last two meanings, see [word of God](#en-word of God)

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Different ways of translating "word" or "words" include "teaching" or "message" or "news" or "a saying" or "what was said."

(See also: [word of God](#en-word of God))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:02
* Acts 08:04
* Colossians 04:03
* James 01:18
* Jeremiah 27:04
* John 01:03
* John 01:14
* Luke 08:15
* Matthew 02:08
* Matthew 07:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H2656, H2706, H4405, H4406, H7878, H8052, G518, G1024, G1310, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G5023, G5537, G5542

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

word, words, message, messages

### work

#### Related Ideas:

act, deed, fellow worker

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "work," "deed," and "act" are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

* God's "works" and the "work of his hands" are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms "deeds" and "acts" are also used to refer to God's miracles in expressions such as "mighty acts" or "marvelous deeds."
* The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called "good fruit."
* The term "work" can also refer to "service" or "ministry."
* People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
* The term "fellow worker" means someone who does a ministry along with someone else.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "works" or "deeds" could be "actions" or "things that are done."
* When referring to God's "works" or "deeds" and the "work of his hands," these expressions could also be translated as "miracles" or "mighty acts" or "amazing things he does."
* The expression "the work of God" could be translated as "the things that God is doing" or "the miracles God does" or "the amazing things that God does" or "everything God has accomplished."
* The expression "your work in the Lord" could also be translated as "what you do for the Lord."
* The expression "examine your own work" could also be translated as "make sure what you are doing is God's will" or "make sure that what you are doing pleases God."
* The expression "the work of the Holy Spirit" could be translated as "the empowering of the Holy Spirit" or "the ministry of the Holy Spirit" or "the things that the Holy Spirit does."

(See also: [fruit](#en-fruit), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [miracle](#en-miracle))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:12
* Acts 02:8-11
* Daniel 04:37
* Exodus 34:10-11
* Galatians 02:15-16
* James 02:17
* Matthew 16:27-28
* Micah 02:07
* Romans 03:28
* Titus 03:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1576, H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4639, H4659, H5673, H5949, H5998, H6213, H6466, H6468, G1754, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2716, G3173

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

act, action, actions, activities, acts, deed, deeds, fellow worker, fellow workers, work, works

### worship

#### Related Ideas:

worshiper

#### Definition:

To "worship" means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

* When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
* Often people bow down when they worship someone.
* Some people worshiped false gods.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "worship" could be translated as "bow down to" or "honor and serve" or "honor and obey."
* In some contexts, it could also be translated as "humbly praise" or "give honor and praise."

(See also: [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice), [praise](#en-praise), [honor](#en-honor))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 02:18-19
* Deuteronomy 29:18
* Exodus 03:11-12
* Luke 04:07
* Matthew 02:02
* Matthew 02:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5457, H5647, H7812, G1391, G2151, G2152, G2323, G2356, G2999, G3000, G3008, H3372, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

worship, worshiped, worshiper's, worshipers, worshiping, worships

### wrong

#### Related Ideas:

defraud, hurt, mistreat, wrongdoer, wrongdoing

#### Definition:

To "wrong" someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

* Wrongdoing is the act of doing what is wrong. It can also refer to a behavior that is wrong.
* The term "defraud" means to illegally take money from someone by lying to them. Another word for this is "cheat."
* The terms "hurt" is more general and means to "cause someone harm in some way." It often has the meaning of "physically injure."
* The term "mistreat" means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
* Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as "do wrong to" or, "treat unjustly" or "cause harm to" or treat in a harmful way" or "injure."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:26
* Exodus 22:21
* Genesis 16:05
* Luke 06:28
* Matthew 20:13-14
* Psalms 071:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H816, H2248, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4347, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H5932, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, H8604, G91, G92, G93, G264, G824, G983, G984, G1536, G1651, G1727, G1908, G2556, G2559, G2607, G3076, G3077, G3762, G4122, G4550, G5195, G5196

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

defraud, hurt, hurting, hurts, mistreat, mistreated, wrong, wrongdoer, wrongdoing, wronged, wrongfully, wronging, wrongs

### year

#### Definition:

When used literally, the term "year" in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

* A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
* In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
* In the Bible, the term "year" is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, "the year of Yahweh" or "in the year of drought" or "the favorable year of the Lord." In these contexts, "year" could be translated as "time" or "season" or "time period."

(See also: [month](#en-month))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 23:31
* Acts 19:8-10
* Daniel 08:01
* Exodus 12:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7620, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

year, years

### yoke

#### Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

* The term "yoke" is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
* Paul used the term "yokefellow" to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as "fellow worker" or "fellow servant" or "coworker."
* The term "yoke" is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
* In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
* Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, "oppressive burden" or "heavy load" or "bond," depending on the context.

(See also: [bind](#en-bind), [burden](#en-burden), [oppress](#en-oppress), [persecute](#en-persecute), [servant](#en-servant))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:10
* Galatians 05:01
* Genesis 27:40
* Isaiah 09:04
* Jeremiah 27:04
* Matthew 11:30
* Philippians 04:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3627, H4132, H5674, H5923, H6776, G2086, G2218

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

yoke, yoked, yoked ... together, yokes